SCIENCE AND CIVILISATION IN CHINA

The Chymists are a strange Class of Mortals, impelled by an incomprehensible Impulse to take their Pleasure amid Smoke and Vapour, Fume and Flame, Poisons and Poverty—yet among all these Evils, I seem to live so sweetly that may I die if I would change places with the Persian King!

Johann Beccher
Physica Subterranea, 1703

Quasi nimirum in Fatis esset, Sal hoc admirabile non minus in philosophia quam bello strepitus aderet, omniaque sonitu suo implere. (As if ordained by Fate, Nitre, that admirable salt, hath made as much noise in Philosophy as in War, all the world being filled with its thunder).

John Mayow
Tractatus Quinque Medico-Physici, 1674

For it is now certainly known that the great Kings of the uttermost East, have had the use of the canon many hundreds of years since, and even since their first civilitie and greatnesse, which was long before Alexander's time. But Alexander pierc'd not so far into the East.

Sir Walter Raleigh
History of the World, 1614

Dr John Bell of Antermony asked the Khang-Hsi Emperor's Tartar General of Artillery: 'How long the Chinese had known the use of gunpowder? He replied, above 2000 years, in fire-works, according to their records; but that it's application to the purposes of war, was only a late introduction. As the veracity and candour of this gentleman were well known, there was no room to question the truth of what he advanced on the subject.'

John Bell's 1 Jan. 1721
Travels from St. Petersburg in Russia to Diverse Parts of Asia, 1763

And though it be very true that man is but the Minister of Nature, and can but duely apply Agents to Patients (the rest of the Work being done by the applyed Bodies themselves), yet by his skill in making these Applications, he is able to perform such things as do not only give him a Power to master Creatures otherwise much stronger than himselfe; but may enable one man to do such wonders, as another man shall think he cannot sufficiently admire. As the poor Indians lookt upon the Spaniards as more than Men, because the Knowledg they had of the Properties of Nitre, Suplphur and Charcoal duely mixt, enabled them to Thunder and Lighten so fatally, when they pleas'd.

Robert Boyle
Some Considerations touching the Usefulnesse of Experimental Philosophy, propos'd in a Familiar Discourse to a Friend, by way of Invitation to the Study of it, 1663

中國科學技術史

李約瑟著

冀朝鼎

SCIENCE AND CIVILISATION IN CHINA

BY

JOSEPH NEEDHAM, F.R.S., F.B.A.

SOMETIME MASTER OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, DIRECTOR OF THE EAST ASIAN HISTORY OF SCIENCE LIBRARY, CAMBRIDGE, HONORARY PROFESSOR OF ACADEMIA SINICA

With the collaboration of

HO PING-YÜ (HO PENG YOKE), Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF CHINESE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF HONGKONG

LU GWEI-DJEN, Ph.D.

FELLOW OF ROBINSON COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
ASSOCIATE DIRECTOR OF THE EAST ASIAN HISTORY OF SCIENCE LIBRARY

and

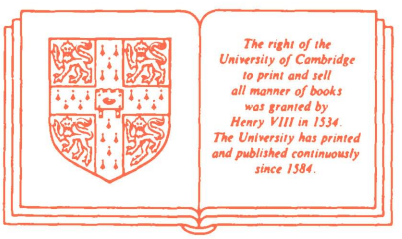
WANG LING, Ph.D.

EMERITUS PROFESSORIAL FELLOW, DEPARTMENT OF FAR EASTERN HISTORY, INSTITUTE OF ADVANCED STUDIES, AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY, CANBERRA

VOLUME 5

CHEMISTRY AND CHEMICAL TECHNOLOGY

Part 7: MILITARY TECHNOLOGY; THE GUNPOWDER EPIC



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE

LONDON NEW YORK NEW ROCHELLE

MELBOURNE SYDNEY

Published by the Press Syndicate of the University of Cambridge
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge CB2 1RP
32 East 57th Street, New York, NY 10022, USA
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia

First published 1986

Printed in Great Britain at
the University Press, Cambridge

British Library cataloguing in publication data
Needham, Joseph
Science and civilisation in China.
Vol. 5: Chemistry and chemical technology
Pt. 7: Military technology: the gunpowder epic.
1. Science—China—History 2. Technology—
China—History
I. Title II. Ho, Ping-Yü III. Lu, Gwei-Djen
IV. Wang, Ling
509'.51 Q127.C5

Library of Congress cataloguing in publication data
(Revised for volume 5, part 7)'
Needham, Joseph, 1900–
Science and civilization in China.
Includes bibliographies.
Contents: v. 1. Introductory orientations. – v. 2.
History of scientific thought. – [etc.]' – v. 5. Chemistry
and chemical technology. – [etc.] – pt. 7. Military
technology, with the collaboration of Ho Ping-Yü,
Lu Gwei-Djen, and Wang Ling. – [etc.]
1. China – Civilization – Collected works.
2. Science – China – History – Collected works.
3. Technology – China – History – Collected works.
4. Science and civilization – Collected works.
I. Wang, Ling. II. Title.
DS721.N39 509.51 54-4723

ISBN 0 521 30358 3

AO

To
the memory of
FU SSU-NIEN

eminent scholar of history and philology,
then at Lichuang in Szechuan, and most friendly
welcomer to war-time China,
who led a discussion one evening while we were
there on the history of gunpowder in China;

and to
YÜ TA-WEI

physicist, then
Ping-kung-shu Shu-chang (Intendant-General of Arsenals)
1942–1946
whose 'field coffee' I used to drink with him in his
office, and with whom we had a happy reunion in 1984,

this volume is dedicated.

CONTENTS

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations are used in the text and footnotes. For abbreviations used for journals and similar publications in the bibliographies, see pp. 584 ff.

BN	Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.
CC	Chia Tsu-Chang & Chia Tsu-Shan (*1*), *Chung-Kuo Chih Wu Thu Chien* (Illustrated Dictionary of Chinese Flora), 1958.
CCL	*Chê Chiang Lu* (Biographies of [Chinese] Engineers, Architects, Technologists and Master-Craftsmen). 1 to 6 See Chu Chhi-Chhien & Liang Chhi-Hsuing (*1* to *6*); 7 See Chu Chhi-Chhien, Liang Chhi-Hsuing & Liu Ju-Lin (*1*); 8, 9 See Chu Chhi-Chhien & Liu Tun-Chên (*1*, *2*).
CCT	Chao Shih-Chên, *Chhê Chhung Tau* (Illustrated Account of Muskets, Field Artillery and Mobile Shields, etc.), Ming, *c.* +1585.
CHHS	Chhi Chi-Kuang, *Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu* (New Treatise on Military and Naval Efficiency), Ming, +1560, pr. +1562, often repr.
CHS	Pan Ku, (and Pan Chao) *Chhien Han Shu* (History of the Former Han Dynasty), H/Han, *c.* +100.
CHSK	Ting Fu-Pao (ed.), *Chhüan Han San-Kuo Chin Nan-Pei-Chhao Shih* (Complete Collection of Poetry from the Han, Three Kingdom, Chin and Northern and Southern Kingdoms), Peking, *c.* 1935. Index by Tshai Chin-Chung, Harvard–Yenching Institute, Paping, 1941 repr. Taipei, 1966.
CHTP	Chêng Jo-Tsêng, *Chhou Hai Thu Pien* (Illustrated Seaboard Strategy and Tactics), Ming, +1562, repr. +1572, +1594, +1624, etc.
CKKCSL	*Chung-Kuo Kho Chi Shih Liao* (Materials on the History of Science and Technology in China), a journal.
CSHK	Yen Kho-Chün (ed.), *Chhüan Shang-Ku San-Tai Chhin Han San-Kuo Liu Chhao Wên* (Complete Collection of prose literature (including fragments) from remote antiquity through the Chhin and Han Dynasties, the Three Kingdoms, and the Six Dynasties), 1836.
CLPT	Thang Shen-Wei *et al.* (ed.), *Chêng Lei Pên Jahao* (Reorganised Pharmacopoeia), Sung, ed. of +1249.

CTS Liu Hsü, *Chiu Thang Shu* (Old History of the Than Dynasty), Wu Tai, +945.

CYMTYL Attrib. Chêng Ssu-Yuan, *Chen Yuan Miao Tao Yao Lüeh* (Classified Essentials of the Mysterious Tao of the True Origin of Things), Ascr. Chin (+3rd) but probably mostly Thang (+8th and +9th).

DSB *Dictionary of Scientific Biography* (16 vols.), ed. C.G. Gillespie et al., (Scribner, New York, 1970).

HCC Hsü Tung, *Hu Chhien Ching* (Tiger Seal Manual, a Military Encyclopaedia), Sung, begun +962, finished +1004.

HCT *Huo Chhi Thu* (Illustrated Account of Gunpowder Weapons and Firearms), running-head title of the Hsiang-yeng edition of the *Huo Lung Ching*, q.v.

HHPT Su Ching *et al.* (ed.), *Hsin Hsiu Pên Tshao* (Newly Improved Pharmacopoeia), Thang, +659.

HHS Fan Yeh & Ssuma Piao, *Hou Han Shu* (History of the Later Han Dynasty), +450.

HKPY *Huo Kung Pei Yao* (Essential Knowledge for the Making of Gunpowder Weapons), alternative title of Pt. 1 of the *Huo Lung Ching*, q.v.

HKTC Wei Yuen & Lai Tsê-Hsü, *Hai Kuo Thu Chih* (Illustrated Record of the Maritime [Occidental] Nations), Chhing, 1844, enlarged 1847, further enlarged, 1852, abridged edition, 1855.

HLC Chiao Yü, *Huo Lung Ching* (The Fire-Drake (Artillery) Manual). Ming, +1412, but probably continuing information dating from the previous half-century, perhaps back to +1300. In three parts. The first part of the back is fancifully attributed to Chuko Wu-Hou (Chuko Liang, +3d cent.) & Liu Chi (+1311 to +1375). The latter appears as editor but was perhaps co-author. The second part of the book is attributed to Liu Chi, but Mao Hsi-Ping (+1632) was probably the writer. The third part is by Mao Yuan-I (fl. +1628) and has a preface by Chuko Kuang-Lung dated +1644.

HSCH/TCTC Liu Shih-Chi: *Hsü Sung Chung-Hsing Pien Nien Tzu Chih Thung Chien* (Continuation of the 'Mirror of History for Aid in Government' for the Sung dynasty from its Restoration Onwards), i.e. The Southern Sung from +1126. Sing, *c.* +1250.

HTCTC/CP Li Tao *Hsü Tzu Chih Thung Chien Chhang Phien* (Continuation of the 'Comprehensive Mirror (of History) for Aid in Government), dealing with events from +960 to +1126, i.e. the Northern Sung dynasty, Sung, +1183.

HTS Ouyang Hsiu & Sung Chhi, *Hsin Thang Shu* (New History of the Thang Dynasty), Sung, +1061.

HWHTK Wang Chhi (ed.) *Hsü Wên Hsien Thung Khao* (Continuation of the 'Comprehensive Study of (the History of) Civilisation'), Ming, +1586, pr. +1603.

LPSC (TC) Chhi Chi-Kuang, *Lien Ping Shih Chi Tsa Chi* (Miscellaneous Records concerning Military Training and Equipment), an appendix to *Lien Ping Shih Chi*, Ming, +1568, pr. +1571.

MCPT Shen Kua, *Mêng Chhi Pi Than* (Dream Pool Essays), Sung, +1089.

NKKZ *Nihon Kagaku Koten Zenshi* (Collection of Works concerning the History of Science and Technology in Japan), 12 vols., 1944; 10 vols. 1978.

PL Ho Ju-Piu, *Ping Lu* (Records of Military Art). Ming, +1606, pr. +1628, later eds. +1630, +1632.

PPT/NP Ko Hung, *Pao Phu Tzu (Nei Phien)*, (Book of the Preservation-of-Solidarity Master; Inner Chapters), Chin, *c.* +320.

PTKM Li Shih-Chen. *Pên Tshao Kang Mu* (The Great Pharmacopoeia), Ming, +1569.

PTKMSI Chao Hsüeh-Min, *Pên Tshao Kang Mu Shih I* (Supplementary Amplifications for the 'Great Pharmacopoeia' of Li Shih-Chen), Chhing, begun *c.* +1760, first prepared +1765, prolegomena added +1780, last date in text 1803. First pr. 1871.

R Read, Bernard E. *et al.*, Indexes, translations and précis of certain chapters of the *Pên Tshao Kang Mu* of Li Shih-Chen. If the reference is to a plant see Read (1); if to a mammal, see Read (2); if to a bird see Read (3); if to a reptile see Read (4 or 5); if to a mollusc see Read (5); if to a fish see Read (6); if to an insect see Read (7).

RARDE Royal Armament Research and Development Establishment, Fort Halstead, Kent.

SCP Chao Shih-Chên, *Shen Chhi Phu* (Treatise on Extraordinary (lit. Magical) Weapons, i.e. Muskets), Ming, +1598.

SF Thao Tsung-I (ed.), *Shuo Fu* (Florilegium of (Unofficial) Literature), Yuan, *c.* +1368.

SKCS *Ssu Khu Chhüan Shu* (Complete Library of the Four Categories), Chhing, +1782; here the reference is to the *tshung-shu* collection printed as a selection from one of the seven imperially commissioned MSS.

SKCS/TMTY Chi Yün (ed.), *Ssu Khu Chhüan Shu Tsung Mu Thi Yao* (Analytical Catalogue of the *Complete Library of the Four Categories*), +1782; the great bibliography of the imperial MS collection

ordered by the Chhien-Lung emperor of Chhing in +1772.

STTH Wang Chhi, *San Tshai Thu Hui* (Universal Encyclopaedia), Ming, +1609.

TCKM Chu Hsi *et al.* (ed.), *Thung Chien Kang Mu* ((Short View of the) *Comprehensive Mirror* (*of History*), *for Aid in Government*), classified into Headings and Subheadings); the *Tzu Chih Thung Chien* condensed, a general history of China, Sung, +1189; with later continuations.

TKKW Sung Ying-Hsing, *Thien Kung Khai Wu* (The Exploitation of the Works of Nature), Ming, +1637.

TPKC Li Fang (ed.) *Thai-Phing Kuang Chi* (Copious Records collected in the Thai-Phing reign-period), Sung, +978.

TPYC Li Chhüan, *Thai Pai Yin Ching* (Manual of the White and Gloomy Planet (of War, Venus)), treatise on military and naval affairs, Thang, +759.

TPYL Li Fang (ed.), *Thai-Phing Yü Lan* (the Thai-Phing reign-period Imperial Encyclopaedia), Sung, +983.

TSCC Chhen Mêng-Lei et al. (ed.), *Thu Shu Chi Chhêng*; the Imperial Encyclopaedia of +1726). Index by Giles, L. (2). References to 1884 ed. given by chapter (chüan) and page. References to 1934 photolitho reproduction given by tshê (vol.) and page.

TT Wieger, L. (6), *Taoïsme*, vol. 1, Bibliographie Générale of the works continued in the Taoist-Patrology, *Tao Tsang*).

TTSLT *Thai Tsu Shih Lu Thu* (Veritable Records of the Great Ancestor (Nurhachi, d. +1626, retrospectively emperor of the Chhing), with illustrations). Ming, +1635, revised in Chhing, +1781.

WCTY Tsêng Kung-Liang (ed.), *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* (The Most Important Affairs to the Military Classics—a military encyclopaedia). Sung, +1044.

WCTY/cc Tsêng Kung-Liang (ed.), *Wu Ching Tsung Tao (Chhien Chi)*, military encyclopaedia, first section, Sung, +1044.

WHTK Ma Tuan-Lin, *Wên Hsien Thung Khao* (Comprehensive Study of (the History of) Civilisation), Yuan, +1319.

WPC Mao Yuan-I, *Wu Pei Chih* (Treatise on Armament Technology), Ming, +1628.

WPHLC Attrib. Chiao Yü, *Wu Pei Huo Lung Ching* (The Fire-Drake Manual and Armament Technology), Ming, after +1628, but containing much material from earlier versions of the *Huo Lung Ching*.

YCLH Chang Ying (ed.), *Yuan Chien Lei Han* (encyclopaedia), Chhing, +1710.

YH Wang Ying-Lin, *Yü Hai* (Ocean of Jade, an encyclopaedia of quotations). Sung, +1267 but not pr. till Yuan, +1337/+1340, or perhaps +1351.

YHSF Ma Kuo-Han (ed.), *Yü Han Shan Fang Chi I Shu* (Jade-Box Mountain Studio Collection of (reconstituted and sometimes fragmentary) Lost Books), 1853.

AUTHOR'S NOTE

This volume has been forty-three years in the gestating. On 4th June 1943 Huang Hsing-Tsung[1a] and I landed at Lichuang[2] in Szechuan after a rather adventurous journey down the Min-chiang and the Yangtse River from Wu-thung-chhiao[3].[b] There, near the delightful little town, were the Chinese–German Thung-Chi[4] University, and also the evacuated National Institutes of History and Sociology of Academia Sinica. These were then headed by two very famous scholars, Fu Ssu-Nien[5] and Thao Mêng-Ho[6] respectively, whom I was honoured to meet. Also in the neighbourhood were the evacuated National Archaeological Museum directed by Li Chi[7], and the Institute for the History of Chinese Architecture under Liang Ssu-Chhêng[8]. One evening the talk turned to the history of gunpowder in China, and Fu Ssu-Nien himself copied out for us the earliest printed passages on its composition from the *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* of +1044, a book which we did not then possess.[c] It was at Lichuang also that I first met Wang Ling[9] (Wang Ching-Ning[10]), who was destined to be my initial collaborator in the writing of *Science and Civilisation in China*, from 1948 to 1957, in Cambridge. At that time, he was a young research worker in the History Institute of Academia Sinica, and made the history of gunpowder, in all its ramifications, a lifelong study. Later on, he pursued a distinguished career as research professor of the Institute of Advanced Studies at the Australian National University at Canberra.

Of the other two collaborators whose names are on the title-page of this volume, Ho Ping-Yü[11], now Professor of Chinese at Hongkong University, has the great merit of having written the first draft of it. Having grown up in Singapore, he became an eminent historian of science, and later professor at Kuala Lumpur and Brisbane successively, since when he has produced many excellent books of his own. Finally, Lu Gwei Djen[12] was one of the first who converted me to Chinese studies from 1937 onwards, at which time we planned the present series of volumes; and when, twenty years later, she returned from UNESCO in Paris to Cambridge, she succeeded Wang Ling as my chief collaborator. This she still is. For the present book we have together checked all the battle accounts and the entries in the military encyclopaedias.

With the production of this volume, it will be been that all three of the fun-

[a] My first colleague in the Sino-British Science Cooperation Office, and in recent years our collaborator in Botany and Nutritional Science.

[b] There are fuller accounts in Needham & Needham (1), pp. 4off., 119, and Huang Hsing-Tsung (1), pp. 45 ff.

[c] See pp. 117–26 below.

[1] 黃興宗 [2] 李庄 [3] 五通橋 [4] 同濟 [5] 傅斯年
[6] 陶孟和 [7] 李濟 [8] 梁思成 [9] 王鈴 [10] 王靜寧
[11] 何丙郁 [12] 魯桂珍

damental inventions enumerated by Francis Bacon in +1620 have now been dealt with in detail. We quoted the *Novum Organon* fully in Vol. 1[a], but the passage is well worth reproducing in shortened form here.[b]

> Discoveries are to be seen nowhere more conspicuously than in those three which were unknown to the ancients, and of which the origin, though recent, is obscure and inglorious; namely printing, gunpowder, and the magnet. For these three have changed the whole face and state of things throughout the world, the first in literature, the second in warfare, the third in navigation; whence have followed innumerable changes; insomuch that no empire, no sect, no star, seems to have exerted greater power and influence in human affairs, than these three mechanical discoveries.

So, looking back, we dealt with the magnetic compass first, in Vol. 4, pt. 1, then with paper and printing, by the care of our valued collaborator, Professor Chhien Tshun-Hsün[1], in Vol. 5, pt. 1, and now finally with gunpowder in Vol. 5, pt. 7. Francis Bacon died without knowing that every one of the discoveries which he singled out had been Chinese. And although we have not been able to identify the personal name of any individual as the *fons et origo* of the three discoveries, no doubt whatever can remain about the people in the midst of whom they first came into being.

The present volume is the middle one of three on military technology. It is appearing ahead of the others simply because it is now ready. The first (Vol. 5, pt. 6), after an introduction, will deal with (b) Chinese literature on the art of war, (c) basic concepts of the classical Chinese theory of war, (d) distinctive features of Chinese military thought, (e) projectile weapons, the bow and crossbow, (f) ballistic machinery—pre-gunpowder artillery, and (g) early poliorcetics—the siege and defence of cities. I owe a great deal of gratitude to my collaborators in these subjects, Wang Ching-Ning, Robin Yates, Krzysztof Gawlikowski and Edward McEwen.

The third part (Vol. 5, pt. 8) wil deal with (i) close-combat weapons, (j) chariot warfare, (k) cavalry techniques, including the invention of the stirrup and its spread, (l) armour and caparison, (m) camps and formations, (n) signalling and other forms of communication; and the whole will end with some comparisons and conclusions. Here my principal collaborators have been Wang Ching-Ning, Robin Yates, the late Lo Jung-Pang[2] and Albert Dien. Professor Robin Yates of Harvard is taking charge of the general editing of both these.

It is natural enough that the present volume should take its place among the military three because the finding of the gunpowder mixture in the middle of the +9th century was no doubt the greatest of all Chinese military inventions. The gunpowder rocket might indeed turn out, as we venture to say in this volume, to be the greatest single invention ever made by man, for if the sun cools or over-

[a] P. 19.

[b] Montagu ed. (Latin), vol. 9, pp. 381–2; Ellis & Spedding ed. (English), p. 300. It is in Bk. 1 of the original work, Aphorism 129.

[1] 錢存訓 [2] 羅榮邦

heats, and we have to go somewhere else, the rocket will be our only means of doing so, since it is the sole vehicle known to man capable of navigating in outer space. Not of course the gunpowder rocket, as the Chinese military engineers knew it in the middle of the +12th century, but the rocket vehicles of today and tomorrow, powered by liquid fuels, or more probably by sub-atomic nuclear reactions.

In the same way, the story we tell here is far more exciting than it could have been if warlike applications alone had been in question. Quite apart from the application of explosions in mining, quarrying, and the building of human lines of communication—all civil engineering tasks—gunpowder, the first chemical explosive known to man, had a vital role in the development of all heat engines. Mechanical engineers were therefore also involved. Not everyone realises that before the steam-engine came into its heyday, Christiaan Huygens and Denis Papin in the late +17th century tried to make successful gunpowder-engines; and although they could never get them to work, it put them in mind of simple water and condensible steam. Hence Thomas Newcomen's success in +1712.

We have also tried to tell the story of the internal-combustion engine, which followed upon his triumph, though long afterwards; and how by 1830 Luigi de Cristoforis suggested fuelling it with petrol. The oldest internal-combustion engine was of course the cannon, but from the engineering point of view its piston was not tethered, and the work it did was not useful work. With petrol and similar fuels the internal-combustion engine came into its own, permitting, among other things, the successful aviation of today. But petrol was nothing else than the old Greek Fire, first distilled from petroleum by Callinicus in +7th-century Byzantium. This was the greatest incendiary predecessor of gunpowder; and in fact the first use of the latter in warfare was as a slow-match in the ignition-chamber of a Chinese Greek-Fire projector. This event we date at +919. So the wheel had at last come full circle, and the only tragic aspect of the affair was the centuries of time it had taken for men to see the beneficent uses of a discovery, and the celerity with which its evil uses were found out and put into practice.

We end this volume with an excursus on the travel of the knowledge of gunpowder from east to west. Perhaps the most extraordinary fact is that all the stages, from the incendiary uses of the mixture right through to the metal-barrel hand-gun or bombard, with the projectile fully occluding the bore, were passed through in China, before Europeans knew of the mixture itself. Probably there were three comings. Roger Bacon by +1260 or so was able to study fire-crackers, doubtless brought west by some of his brother friars; and the Arabian military engineers in the Chinese service must have let Ḥasan al-Rammāḥ know about bombs and rockets by +1280. Then, within the following twenty years, came the cannon, quite possibly directly overland through Russia.

The preparation of this volume has been accompanied by many changes in our group. First I must refer to the much-lamented death of Peter Burbidge in

May 1985. He had been not only Executive Vice-Chairman of the East Asian History of Science Trust, but also from 1984 onwards the presiding genius, and benign protector, of all our volumes, the publication of which he guided as Production Director of the Cambridge University Press. At our weekly meetings we have missed him tremendously. But we are fortunate that Colin Ronan, our collaborator in the *Shorter Science and Civilisation in China* series, has taken over as Project Co-ordinator.

Next, this volume has been passing through the press alongside the erection of a new and permanent building for the East Asian History of Science Library, on the basis of funds most generously subscribed both in Hongkong and Singapore. We owe particular gratitude to Dr Mao Wên-Chi[1], Chairman of the East Asian History of Science Foundation Ltd. in Hongkong, with its members and benefactors; and to the outstandingly liberal beneficence of Tan Sri Tan Chin Tuan[2] of the Overseas Chinese Banking Corporation in Singapore.

Similarly, our East Asian history of Science Board, Inc. of New York, headed by Mr John Diebold, has concentrated rather on raising funds for the endowment and research necessitated by the *Science and Civilisation in China* project, and it is due to them that the National Science Foundation, the Luce Foundation and the Mellon Foundation, have contributed generously to this end. And here Japan has also joined in, for the National institute for Research Advancement (NIRA) of Tokyo has given a noble benefaction directed mainly for Vol. 7. Our deepest thanks are due to this organisation, directed by Dr Shimokobe Atsushi[3]. One cannot be too grateful for such help in the payment of necessary emoluments and research expenses for our far-flung collaborators.

As usual, we would like also to thank those who have been of special help to us in the preparation of this volume. Thus we are glad to number among our friends Mr Howard Blackmore, formerly Deputy Keeper of the Armouries at H.M. Tower of London, who gave us valuable criticism throughout; Dr Nigel Davies, who arranged for experimental trials of gunpowders containing different nitrate percentages, at the Royal Armament Research and Development Establishment at Fort Halstead in Kent; and Dr Graham Hollister-Short, who greatly helped us in our work on the old gunpowder triers or testers, precursors of the gunpowder-engines, as also with the history of blasting in mines and quarries. Similarly, Dr Nakaoka Tetsurō[4] gave us much help with the Japanese context of the *Mōko Shūrai Ekotoba* (p. 177), the only surviving picture of a +13th-century bursting bomb-shell. A special debt is owing to De Clayton Bredt of Brisbane, the discoverer of the +10th-century painting of a fire-lance, who read through the whole volume and offered numerous amendments.

Next we wish to record our indebtedness to all the staff of the East Asian History of Science Library. In particular we want to thank Mrs Liang Chung Lien-Chu[5] who has attended to all the cross-references, as well as checking the

[1] 毛文奇 [21] 陳振傳 [3] 下河邊淳 [4] 中岡哲郎 [5] 梁鍾連杼

proofs of Bibliographies A and B. When we have had occasion to seek linguistic help, we have turned, as before, to Prof. D.M. Dunlop for Arabic, the late Dr Charles Sheldon and Dr Ushiyama Teruyo[1] for Japanese, and Prof. Shackleton Bailey for Sanskrit.

So now let us pull the lanyard and fire off this unpowder volume (to use an appropriate analogy) upon the Republic of Learning, not indeed with the intention of doing any damage, but rather hoping that it may help those still looking for enlightenment about the history of gunpowder-weapons and heat-engines. War may or may not have been a decisive factor in human evolution and social progress, but what cannot be denied is that the steam-engine and the internal-combustion engine have been this, and all were children of the cannon. And that in turn was one development of the fire-lance, while the other was the rocket, on which all space travel depends. Gunpowder-engines and the steam-engine no less than the rocket vehicle were thoughts springing from the European Scientific Revolution—but all the previous developments, through eight preceding centuries, had been Chinese.

[1] 牛山耀代

them.'[a] Knowing but refraining, this is the lesson that humanity must at all costs learn, for the price is survival, continued existence, itself, no less.[b]

(19) Gunpowder as Propellant (II); the Development of the Rocket

Now at long last we come to the problem of the rocket. It is a peculiarly difficult one for many reasons, not least because a device changed fundamentally while a name did not. 'Fire-arrow' (*huo chien*[2]), as we have seen (pp. 11 ff.), was a term applied in Thang times and much earlier to the incendiary arrow; but in the days of the Mongolian dynasty, the Yuan, it had come to mean the rocket. Nobody noticed the change, and no-one gave a thought to the difficulties which in the course of centuries it would cause for historians of technology. Thus rockets were certainly in use in warfare by about +1280, but that is just the time when Ḥasan al-Rammāḥ[c] was calling them 'arrows of China' (*sahm al-Khiṭāi*), which implies that they had already been known and used there for some time previously (p. 41 above). Their presence in Marcus Graecus, at a roughly similar date, is rather less certain; his 'ignis volantis in aere' may have been rockets, but were much more probably fire-lances.[d] At another point earlier on (pp. 153, 226) we were driven to the conclusion that the rocket is almost certainly not described in the *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* of +1044; the 'gunpowder whip-arrow' (*huo yao pien chien*[3]) was rather an incendiary javelin projected by two men. Yet the rockets are present in full force by +1340, so it is somewhere in those three centuries that we have to look to find their origin. We believe that it is to be sought essentially in the 'ground-rat' or 'earth-rat' (*ti lao shu*[4]), a firework first used for scaring troops and upsetting cavalry, then applied, with stick (the arrow shaft) and balance-weight, to long-distance trajectories.[e] But exactly when?

[a] *Wei yu Tao chih shih nêng wei chih; i nêng nêng chih erh pu wei chih*![1] (*Kuan Yin Tzu*, p. 20*a*; *Wên Shih Chen Ching*, ch. 7, p. 1*b*).

[b] To decide what to refrain from will of course necessitate great judgment. The Tokugawa Japanese knew, but refrained, in our view for the wrong reasons, and under conditions unrepeatable today. But Perrin's admiration for them was not wholly unjustified. Nor are we maintaining that pacifist reason and feeling have always been justified; later we may say something on war as an instrument of human progress. Meanwhile it may be noted that the history of pacifist philosophy in China has been told by Tomkinson (1).

Today, when many find it hard to distinguish 'terrorists' from 'freedom-fighters', we are witnessing an unprecedented 'democratisation', or better, universalisation, of sophisticated explosives and highly developed firearms. One can only hope that it is a phase which will give way to the just, equitable and healthy society of the future.

[c] Cf. Reinaud & Favé (2), pp. 314 ff.; Partington (5), p. 203.

[d] We shall remember the case of the *fei huo chhiang*[5] (p. 225 above) which must mean 'flying-fire spears' and not 'flying fire-spears'. It does not therefore attest the presence of rockets in +1232, as has so often been thought (e.g. von Romocki (1), vol. 1, pp. 46 ff.; Feldhaus (1), col. 853), though by that time they may well have existed (cf. p. 512 below). Davis (10) got it right.

[e] See pp. 477 ff. below. Of course, it may have originated as a recreational firework.

[1] 惟有道之士能爲之, 亦能能之而不爲之 [2] 火箭 [3] 火藥鞭箭
[4] 地老鼠 [5] 飛火鎗

Many things make this search difficult. For example, there was the secrecy generally surrounding arsenal and military supplies (cf. pp. 24, 93);[a] and there happens to be a dearth of battle accounts between +1100 and +1300 which mention rockets or anything similar. They do not seem to have been used in the wars between the Sung and the Chin Tartars which culminated in the fall of Khaifêng (+1126). Yet the fire-lance, as we have noted (p. 223) was already in use by +950, and over the centuries the strong backward pressure on the arms of the wielder, the recoil, must have become well known. Moreover, during fights a chance sword-cut which hacked off the haft of a fire-lance would have released its flame-throwing tube to fly swishing backwards, perhaps up into the air.[b] And there is another close connection here, in that fire-lances were occasionally rocket-propelled (cf. p. 484 below). We shall suggest that the rocket originated, as it were, from the tube of the fire-lance filled with gunpowder, but detached from its handle, and therefore free to travel in whatever direction chance dictated.

In these circumstances the best plan will be to describe first the several types of rocket weapon at the time when they first come fully into the limelight, and then to look again at their history with a view to sketching out as far as we can their probable origin and development. Here it will be desirable to follow the most logical order of arrangement possible, and this we try to do in the following sub-sections. Such order cannot be found in the military compendia of the Yuan and Ming themselves, where the weapons are all jumbled up with juxtapositions which are sometimes quite confusing; each text and each illustration have to be carefully studied before one can decide to what genus and species the weapon in question belongs.[c]

(i) *The* ti lao shu[4] *(ground-rat or earth-rat) in military use*

This contraption we met with at a much earlier point when speaking of civilian firework displays (p. 134), concluding that it was a tube of bamboo filled with low-nitrate gunpowder and having a hole in the septum at one end, then lit and allowed to rush violently about all over the floor or the ground, in a rudimentary form of rocket-propulsion. The thing could just as easily be made by floats to skate over the surface of water, when it was called *shui shu*[5]; and it took other

[a] To take a concrete case, gunpowder weapons are completely excluded from Wang Ying-Lin's *Yü Hai* encyclopaedia, though compiled as late as +1267.

[b] We owe this point to Dr Nigel Davies of RARDE.

[c] There is quite a literature on the origin and development of rockets in China, but most of it is misleading when not positively wrong, as for instance the paper of Strubell (1).

At an earlier point (p. 108) we drew attention to the possible significance of the fact that in the Germanic languages gunpowder is called *kraut*, normally a vegetable drug, like *yao*[1] in *huo yao*[2]. Now we find that the Dutch word for rocket is *vuurpijlen*, as if it was a direct translation from *huo chien*[3], i.e. fire-arrow. It was Winter (5), p. 10, who drew attention to this. Such strange similarities are at least worth meditating.

[1] 藥 [2] 火藥 [3] 火箭 [4] 地老鼠 [5] 水鼠

forms also, as we shall see (p. 514 below). Within the military realm we find it mostly enclosed in weak-casing bombs which released a dozen or more of these mini-rockets to annoy the enemy's horsemen—and foot soldiers too. This was perhaps the most primitive form and first appearance of jet-propulsion in warfare.

Perhaps the type-specimen is the 'water-melon bomb' (*hsi kua phao*[1]),[a] and significantly it appears in the oldest stratum of the *Huo Lung Ching* (Fig. 190), which would date it to the first half of the +14th century at least. Here we translate the relevant passage:[b]

The 'water-melon bomb' is the most efficacious weapon for defending city-walls, best used from a high position when (the enemy) is below. Inside the bomb there are one or two hundred small (iron) calthrops, and fifty to sixty 'fire-rats' (*huo lao shu*[2]). [On the surface of each fire-rat tube three little hooks are fastened, and each such tube has a fuse going to it. All these are put into the bomb first before it is filled with gunpowder, and this should be packed in it loosely, not pressed down. The bomb is now sealed, two layers of hempen cloth with twenty layers of strong paper being glued over it, after which it is dried in the sun. The circumference of the bomb is divided into three parts, and three small holes are bored to take in three fuses. Another hole is bored directly at the top, and a small two-inch long bamboo tube is put in. A fuse goes right into the bomb through this, to make the bomb explode evenly, and the four fuses are connected together (at the top).]

When the enemy appears below the city wall the main fuse is lit, then when the burning reaches the point of junction with the four subsidiary fuses, one throws it down into the midst of the enemy. The four fuses are necessary to prevent the flame going out as the bomb is dropped. [At the moment of explosion, even the coating can cause some damage, but in a trice the calthrops are scattered all over the ground, while the fire-rats rush about in confusion, burning the soldiers. Thus the attackers can only run away, and as they do so the calthrops hurt their feet and injure them when they fall over. They never dare to come back beneath those city walls again.][c]

Thus it would seem that each fire-rat had its own fuse and was not just ignited by the flames of the main explosion. The illustration is instructive, first because it shows inside each mini-rocket a rectangle which we think indicates the bored cavity that gives equal burning; and secondly because the three hooks on each fire-rat are clearly shown. These evidently were designed to attach themselves to the clothing and accoutrements of men and horses, causing lesions and other damage as they burnt themselves out.

Another projectile of similar type was the 'rumbling-thunder bomb' (*hung lei phao*[3]), also in the oldest stratum of the *Huo Lung Ching*.[d] It was more like a grenade in size,[e] and contained poisons as well as gunpowder, but it had its

[a] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 8*a*, *b*; *HKPY*, *ibid.*; Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 13*a*.

[b] Passages in square brackets belong to the enlarged version in *WPC*, ch. 122, pp. 24*b*, 25*a*, *b*, and *PL*, ch. 12, pp. 16*a*, *b*, 17*a*.

[c] Tr. auct.

[d] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 13*a*, *b*; *HKPY*, *ibid.*; Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 15*b*.

[e] Because it used sun-dried mule droppings as the spherical moulds or matrices round which to wrap the cloth and paper, after which they were broken up and taken out through the fuse hole.

[1] 西瓜砲 [2] 火老鼠 [3] 轟雷砲

Fig. 190. The origin of rockets; the 'water-melon bomb' (*hsi kua phao*), containing a number of hooked 'earth-rats or ground-rats' (*ti lao shu*) or 'fire-rats' (*huo lao shu*), i.e. mini-rockets. From *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 8*a*.

ground-rats (*ti shu*[1]) made of carton tubes, and its iron calthrops, so it was quite similar in conception (Fig. 191). If carefully made, it 'caused the enemy to become dizzy and disheartened', and could be used either on land or afloat. In the beginning these weapons could have had an element of real surprise, since an enemy would expect attack from above or horizontally rather than at ground level from objects originally thought of as toys.

[1] 地鼠

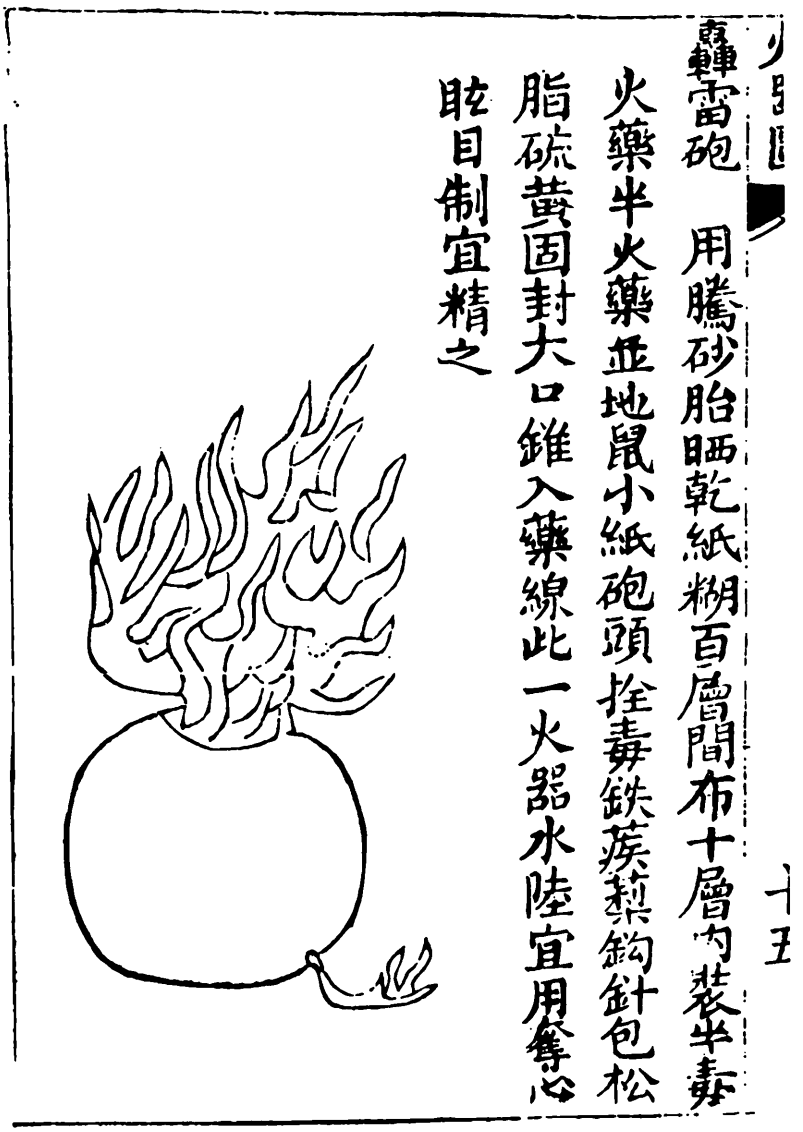


Fig. 191. Another bomb containing mini-rockets along with calthrops and poisons (*HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 13*a*, here from *HCT*, p. 15*b*). It also belongs to the oldest stratum of the *Huo Lung Ching*.

Rather larger was the 'bandit-burning vision-confusing magic fireball' (*shao tsei mi mu shen huo chhiu*[1]), but again on the same principle, yet not described till the +17th century.[a] It has a clay matrix, over which were pasted many layers of paper with persimmon glue to make a casing, then filled with gunpowder, calthrops, ground-rats and fire-crackers, with the addition of 'flying sand' and 'magic smoke' composition. The *Huo Lung Ching* says:

[a] *HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 3, pp. 3*a* ff.; *WPC*, ch. 130, pp. 8*a*, *b*, 9*a*.

[1] 燒賊迷目神火毬

Troops carry these bombs in bags made of oiled string. In combat the soldiers light them, and throw them into the enemy's position or camp; as they explode, the (iron) calthrops are thrown about underfoot, causing wounds, while the ground-rats rush in all directions and get into the enemy's armour, hopping and bouncing up and down, so as to bring about alarm and confusion. Opportunity should be taken of this to press the attack by fire, using guns and bombards. In this way the troops of the enemy never fail to be defeated.[a]

Finally the ground-rats occur again, this time fitted with sharp little spikes, in a device called the 'fire-brick' (*huo chuan*[1]), though very different from our meaning of the term.[b] It was just a bomb (Fig. 192) made in elongated rectangular shape and filled with individually fused mini-rockets amidst the gunpowder. On ignition the brick was hurled into the enemy's camp to set it alight and sow confusion.[c]

(ii) *Rocket arrows*

The classical 'fire-arrow' (*huo chien*[2]) is shown in the *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* (+1044)[d] with the explanation that it is sent on its way from bow or crossbow, the amount of gunpowder attached to it depending on the strength of the bow.[e] Therefore it is clearly an incendiary arrow using a low-nitrate composition. But the *huo chien*[2] in the *Huo Lung Ching* is entirely different, for it is a perforating shock-weapon rocket-propelled. The name might remain the same, but the device was something entirely different.

Some time between +1150 and +1350 it occurred to someone who had seen ground-rats leave the ground and fly a short distance through the air, that if such a tube were attached to a feathered stick, i.e. the arrow-shaft, it would propel it with sufficient force to enable one to dispense with bow and crossbow altogether. This was a fundamental discovery. The oldest stratum of the *Huo Lung Ching* says:[f]

One uses a bamboo stick 4 ft 2 in. long, with an iron (or steel) arrow-head 4·5 in. long [smeared with poison; and some smear that on the rocket-tube too.] Behind the feathering there is an iron weight (*thieh chui*[3]) 0·4 in. long. At the front end there is a carton tube bound on to the stick, where the 'rising gunpowder' (*chhi huo*[4]) is lit [and it is oiled to prevent its getting wet.] When you want to fire it off, you use a frame shaped like a dragon, or else conveniently a tube of wood or bamboo to contain it [or launcher boxes of different kinds].

[a] Tr. auct.

[b] *HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 3, pp. 6*b*, 7*a*; *WPC*, ch. 130, pp. 18*a*, *b*, 19*a*, *b*.

[c] One of the two specifications stipulates also poisonous smoke-producing material. Two centuries later (*c.* +1565) the fire-brick is mentioned again by Chhi Chi-Kuang (*Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu*, ch. 18, p. 26*a*; *Lien Ping Shih Chi, Tsa Chi*, ch. 5, p. 29*b*), but now classed with obsolete weapons no longer made in the arsenals. Wang Ming-Hao still talks about it too at the end of the century (*Huo Kung Wên Ta*, p. 1296).

[d] Ch. 13, p. 3*a*, *b*.

[e] Even the nock on the end of the arrow is depicted.

[f] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 22*a*, *b*; *HKPY*, *ibid.*; Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 20*a*. Sentences in square brackets come from *WPC*, ch. 126, pp. 4*b*, 5*a*. Tr. auct.

[1] 火磚 [2] 火箭 [3] 鐵墜 [4] 起火

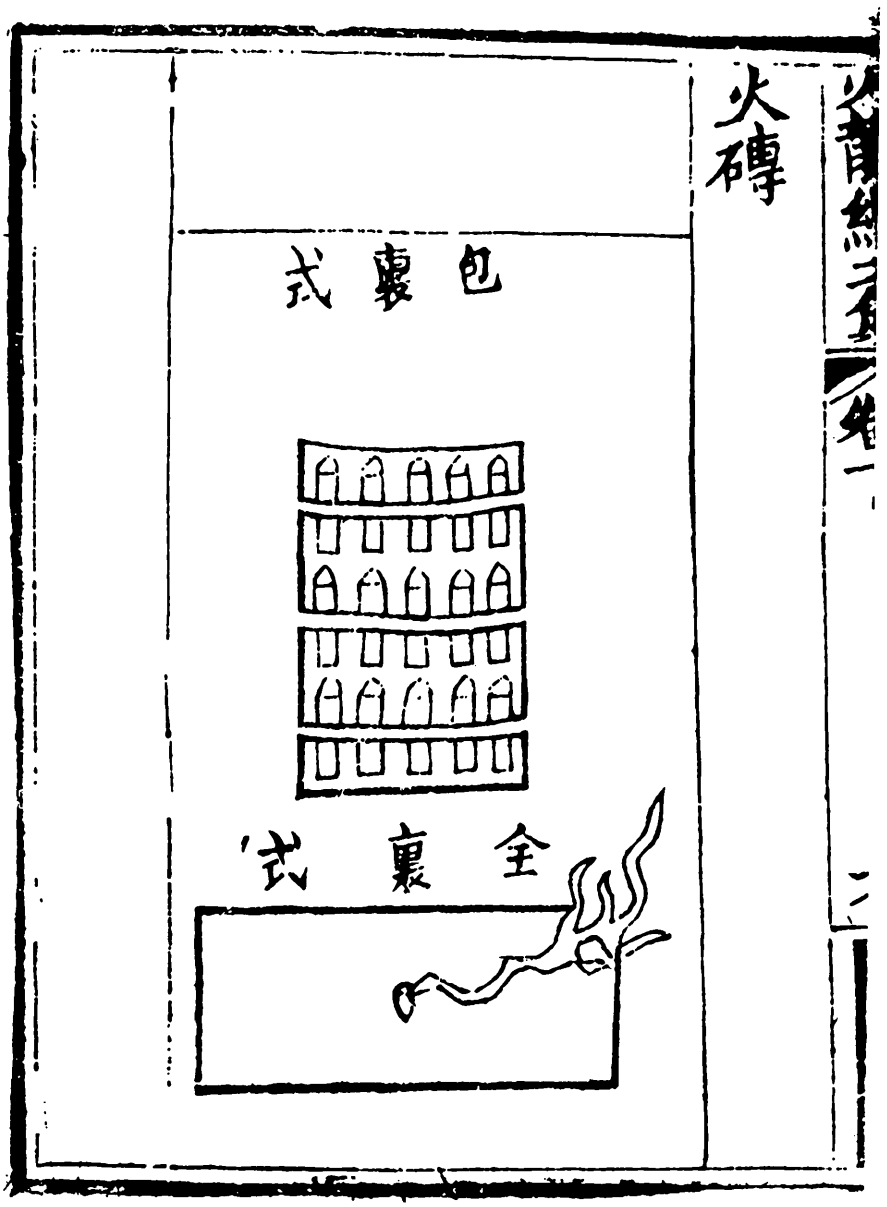


Fig. 192. The 'fire-brick' (*huo chuan*) bomb, filled with the mini-rockets bearing sharp little spikes. From *HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 3, p. 6*b*.

The illustration (Fig. 193) shows two launching cylinders, one with a dragon head. Very significant is the mention of the balance-weight at the tail; it must soon have been obviously necessary to make up for the weight of the rocket-tube, and as the gunpowder burnt away it would have added force to the rocket's velocity. This was a second aspect of the invention. A passage from the *Wu Pei*

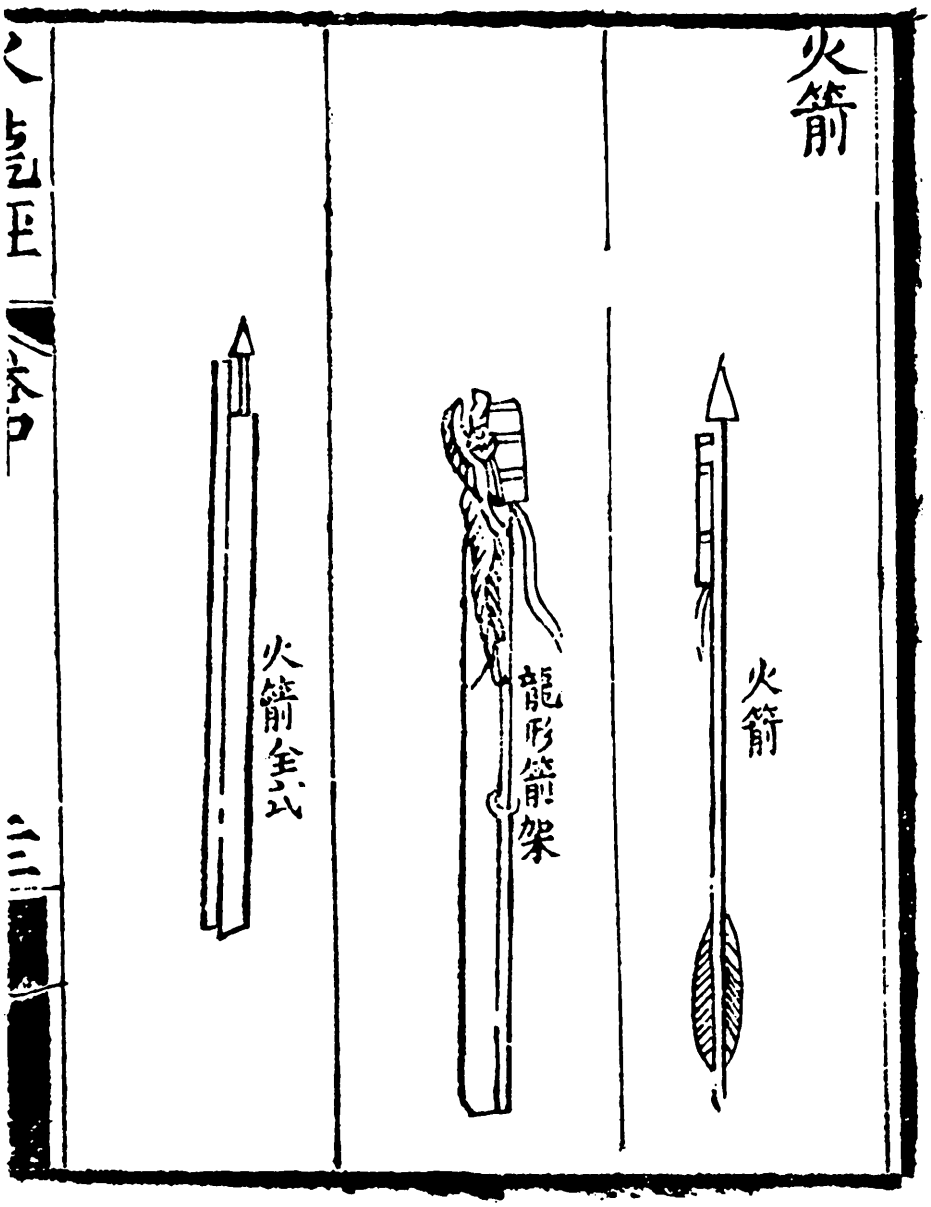


Fig. 193. The oldest illustration of rocket-arrows, from *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 22*a*. Although this must date from the neighbourhood of +1350, there is good reason to think that the rocket-arrow had been known and used at least a century and a half earlier. Here we see also two launching cylinders, the middle one with a carved dragon head.

Chih spells it out more clearly.[a] It says: 'An iron weight (*thieh chui*[1]) is fixed at the rear end (of the rocket-arrow), behind the feathering, of such a mass that the fulcrum of the balance is situated just four finger-breadths (*ssu chih*[2]) away from the mouth of the rocket-tube.' Davis and Ware called this the centre of gravity;[b] unfortunately the text did not specify whether the point was to be forward of the rocket-tube's orifice or aft of it.

The *Wu Pei Chih*, besides reproducing the early picture, gives further information. First, it describes several different kinds of rocket war-heads.[c] But secondly, and much more important, it illustrates the drill necessary for boring out a cavity in the gunpowder within the rocket-tube so that it would burn equally as it flew.[d] This was another great discovery, the third, and it must have been made early on in the rocket's development. In one illustration (Fig. 194)[e] the cavity is shown within the rocket-tube; in another (Fig. 195)[f] the drill is diagrammatically drawn.[g] The accompanying text says that the rocket-arrow is most valuable in land engagements, and not at all inferior to the bird-beak musket (cf. p. 432). It can be very deadly. But the centre of the charge must be bored out, for the 'fuse-eye' (*hsien yen*[3]),[h] either with an awl or a bow-drill; the artisans prefer the latter, but the result is not so good. It goes on:

If the hole is straight-sided (i.e. parallel with the walls of the tube) the arrow will fly straight; if it is slanting the arrow will go off at a tangent. If the hole is too deep the rocket will lose too much flame at the rear, if it is too shallow it won't have enough strength, so the arrow will fall to the ground too soon. If the rocket-tube is 5 in. long, the cavity must extend into it some 4 in. The shaft has to be absolutely straight, and the (rocket-tube and end-weight of the) arrow must balance perfectly when suspended 2 in. from the neck, or throat (*ching*[8] i.e. the nozzle), of the rocket-tube, while the feathering should be almost as long as the rocket-tube itself.[i]

[a] *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 12*a*, tr. auct.

[b] (1), p. 532. Chinese engineers from Thang times onwards had had plenty of experience with counterweighting, as in the hydro-mechanical link-work escapement of clocks (Vol. 4, pt. 2, pp. 459–60; Needham, Wang & Price (1), pp. 50–1). The steelyard, or balance of unequal arms, was both ancient and prevalent in China (Vol. 4, pt. 1, pp. 24 ff.).

[c] Ch. 126, pp. 5*b*, 6*a*, *b*, 7*a*. Thus there was the 'flying knife rocket-arrow' (*fei tao chien*[4]), the 'flying spear' (*fei chhiang chien*[5]), the 'flying sword' (*fei chien chien*[6]) and the 'swallow-tail' (*yen wei chien*[7]). We refrain from reproducing them.

[d] This is the principle of 'concentric burning', used in order to keep the area of combustion surface as near as possible constant. Cf. Anon. (161), Vol. 1, pp. 580–1, Vol. 2, pp. 363–4.

[e] From *Ping Lu* (+1606), ch. 12, p. 44*a*, equivalent exactly to *WPC*, ch. 126, p. 2*b*.

[f] *WPC*, ch. 126, p. 3*a*; *PL*, ch. 12, p. 46*b*.

[g] This was the 'thorn' of early European rocket-makers. Kyeser was perhaps the first to mention it (+1405), and of course it is in Schmidlap (+1591) and many others. Cf. Ley (2), pp. 60 ff., 63.

[h] The technical term at that time for the cavity.

[i] *WPC*, ch. 126, p. 3*b*, 4*a*, tr. auct. adjuv. Davis & Ware (1), p. 532. The passage is a good deal older than might be supposed, for it is verbally identical with what the great general Chhi Chi-Kuang said in his *Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu* of +1560 (ch. 15, p. 14*a*, *b*).

[1] 鐵錘 [2] 四指 [3] 線眼 [4] 飛刀箭 [5] 飛槍箭
[6] 飛劍箭 [7] 燕尾箭 [8] 頸

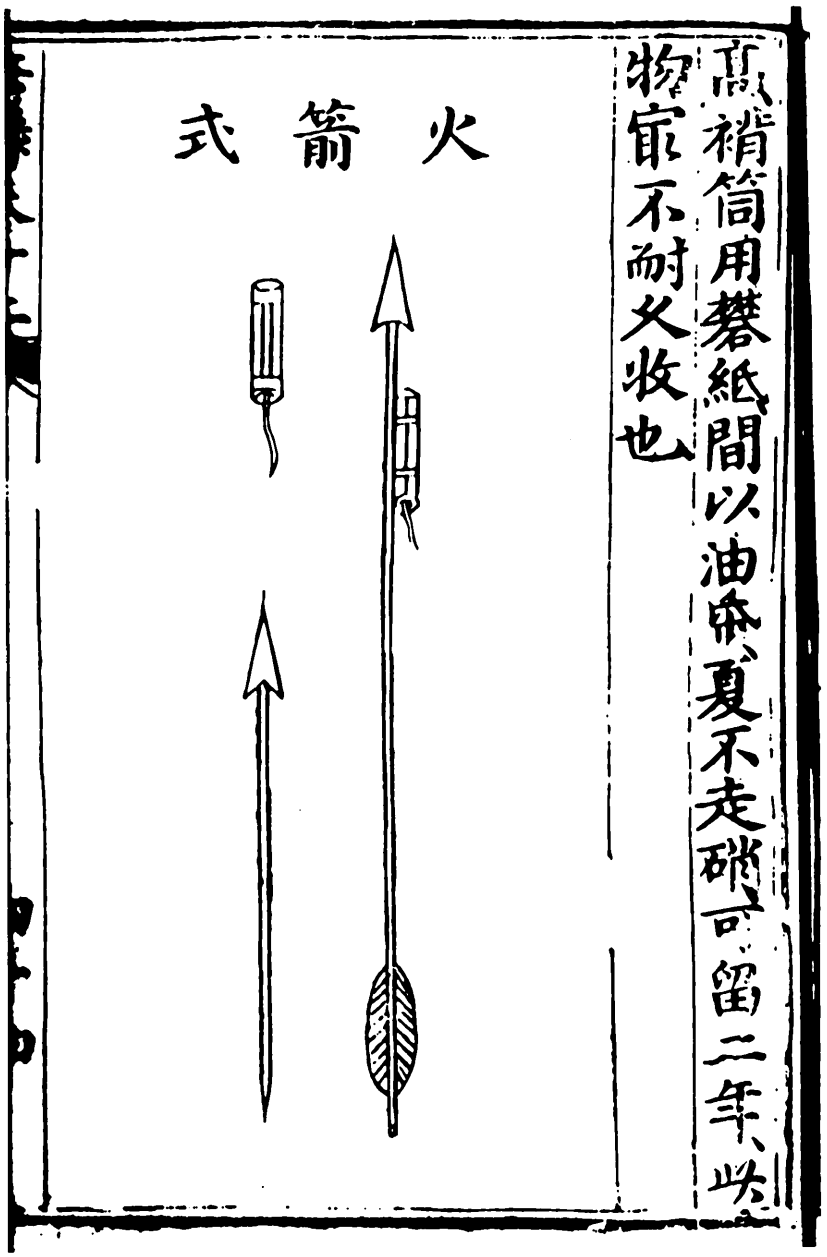


Fig. 194. A picture of the rocket-arrow from *PL*, ch. 12, p. 44*a*, important because it shows the cylindrical cavity within the rocket tube which was needed for even and equal combustion during flight.

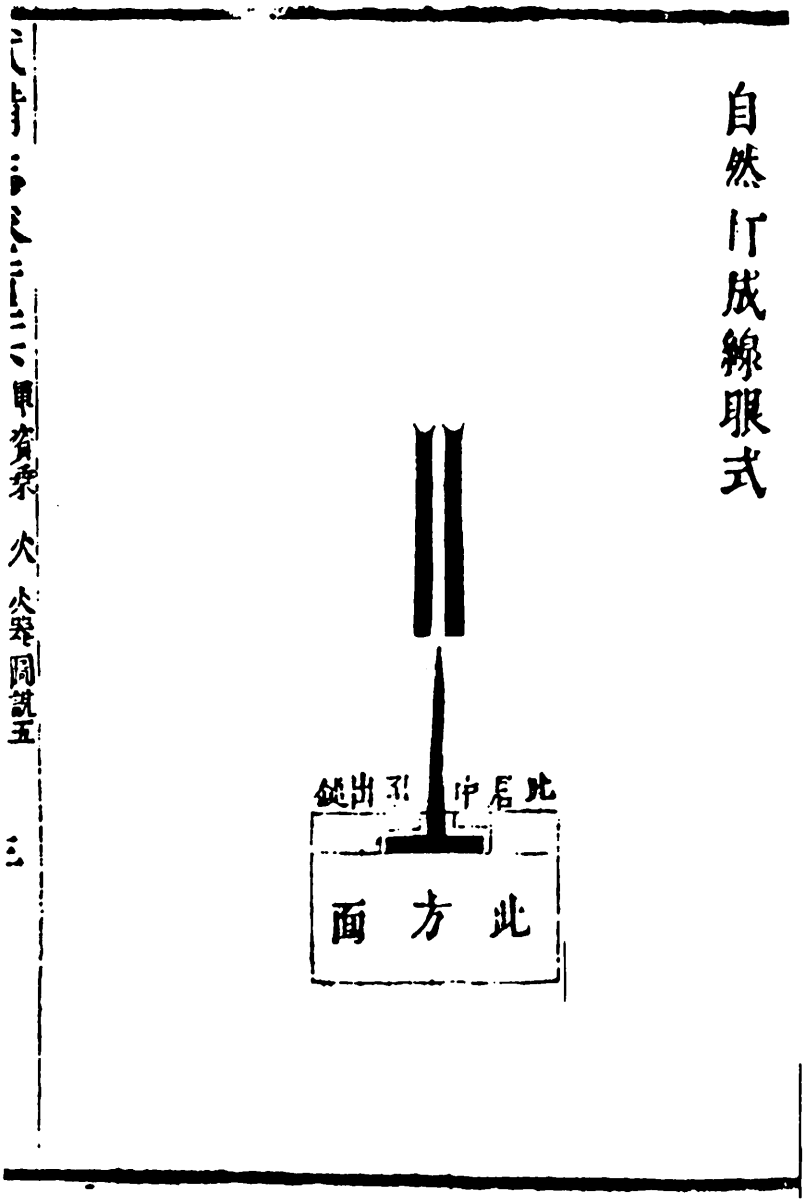


Fig. 195. Diagrammatic drawing of the drill or 'thorn' for making the cavity in the rocket tube. From *WPC*, ch. 126, p. 3*a*.

Here comes the fourth part of the invention. By +1300 at least the rocket-makers must have known that it was desirable to constrict the orifice of the rocket-tube in such a way as to increase the flow-velocity of the issuing gases, and therefore the retro-active force of the combustion. This was the principle of the 'choke',[a] later called in Europe the Venturi[b] 'waist' or nozzle.[c] Finally, a description is given of large-diameter rocket-arrows (*ta thung huo chien*[1], weighing as much as two catties, with a range of some 300 paces (500 yards), and again a drilling apparatus is illustrated.[d]

In Chhi Chi-Kuang's[2] time (+1550 to 80) the rocket-arrow was much prized as a war weapon.[e] It would fly into the enemy's rear as well as his front line, to left or to right, keeping everyone in alarm, not knowing where it was going to strike—and the launching side would of course not know either, since accurate aiming was distinctly difficult if not impossible. Hence the tendency to release flocks of rocket-arrows at the same time, from the launching-frames which we shall described in due course (pp. 486ff.); as also the practice of poisoning the arrow-tips to make a direct hit much worse. It was said to be as potent as the hand-gun, penetrating wooden planks an inch thick and piercing metal breast-plates. As for the drilling of the rocket cavity,[f] it was recommended that the boring tool be frequently wetted with water to reduce the friction which was capable of igniting the composition, and that a drill should be discarded for re-sharpening after half-a-dozen borings. Apparently rockets deflagrated or exploded quite often in the making, so directions were given for dispersing the work and the stores of powder among separate buildings. Great care was taken in making and rolling the strong carton case of the rocket-tube, but sometimes iron tubes were employed, especially for the constricted end (the choke) whence the gases escaped.

Exactly what kind of gunpowder was used for the rockets of the Yuan and Ming is not very clear, but the *Huo Lung Ching* lists several compositions the names of which would have been appropriate.[g] For example, there was 'flying gunpowder' (*fei huo yao*[3]), 'wind-opposing gunpowder' (*ni fêng huo yao*[4]), 'flying-in-the-air gunpowder' (*fei khung huo yao*[5]), 'day-rising gunpowder' (*jih chhi huo yao*[6]) and 'night-rising gunpowder' (*yeh chhi huo yao*[7]). But while the text gives

[a] Cf. Brock (1), p. 183.

[b] See Rouse & Ince (1), pp. 134ff., 189; Biswas (3), pp. 272ff., 305.

[c] Giovanni-Battista Venturi (+1746 to 1822) was a hydrodynamician very little noticed by historians of science, in spite of his important book (Venturi, 1) Cf. Anon. (161), vol. 1, pp. 206–7, 248–9. Hence the Venturi flow-meter, and a device embodied in most of our gas 'geyser' water-heaters.

[d] *WPC*, ch. 126, pp. 8*b*, 9*a*.

[e] Cf. *Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu*, ch. 15, pp. 14*a*, *b*, 15*a*; ch. 18, p. 28*a*; *Lien Ping Shih Chi, Tsa Chi*, ch. 5, pp. 27*b*, 28*a*, *b*, 29*a*, *b*, 30*a*.

[f] Today a conical 'spindle' is used, on top of which the packing of the gunpowder is done; cf. Brock (1), p. 183.

[g] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 1, pp. 6*a*–11*b*; parallel texts in *HKPY* and *HCT*.

[1] 大筒火箭 [2] 戚繼光 [3] 飛火藥 [4] 逆風火藥 [5] 飛空火藥
[6] 日起火藥 [7] 夜起火藥

many constituents of each of these, including saltpetre, actual quantities are listed only for two of them (the last-named)[a], and then the sulphur is so low as to cast doubt on the validity of the percentages. Perhaps the original quantities were all removed as a security measure before the book was printed. But we know (p. 351 above) that the nitrate must have been in the neighbourhood of sixty per cent to work a successful rocket.[b]

The technical affinities between the fire-lance and the rocket have already been pointed out (p. 472), and one might therefore well expect to find some attempt at combining the two. This indeed occurs, under the name of the 'tiger-catching-up-with-the-sheep rocket-arrow' (*i hu chui yang chien*[1]).[c] The explanation says that this is a five-foot-long shaft (Fig. 196)[d] with a trident at the business end and two rocket-tubes just behind it. At the rear end there are two more gunpowder tubes secured to the shaft, but these are fire-lances, not rockets, and are ignited automatically as the rocket is nearing the end of its course, said to attain 500 paces (830 or so yards).[e] It can set light to the enemy's wooden defences and ships; one man can use it yet a hundred men will be terrified of it, especially if poison is applied to the trident.[f] Verily, recondite is the craft of this weapon,[g] says the text—but on the principle of the survival of the fittest it can hardly have been all that effective. Still, a flock of them could have been rather a nuisance. Such was what could really be called the 'flying fire-lance'.[h]

Thus it would appear, looking back, that in spite of its seeming simplicity four distinct inventions had to be combined in the development of effective rocket flight. First, there was the basic idea of applying a ground-rat tube to a projectile, and secondly the balancing of the whole to give the arrow an adequate range. Thirdly there was the drilling of an internal cavity to promote equal areas of combustion surface, and fourthly the addition of a waist, throat or choke, in fact a Venturi constriction,[i] to accelerate the flow-velocity of the discharged gases, thus increasing the propulsive reaction.[j]

At some time during the +14th or +15th centuries it occurred to some ingenious Chinese artificer that if a rocket could be made to go, it could also be made

[a] *Chhi huo yao* often appears in the accounts of rocket-arrows in the military books.

[b] The standard rocket composition is 63·6 : 22·7 : 13·6 (Brock (1), p. 188).

[c] *HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 2, p. 22*a*, *b* (not the oldest stratum); *WPC*, ch. 127, pp. 3*b*, 4*a*. Nevertheless, on intrinsic grounds, this weapon could be considered rather old, quite probably developed soon after the rocket itself.

[d] From *WPC*; that in *HLC* is identical, save that the former has (more logically) 'two tigers' (*erh hu*[3]).

[e] Standard rocket ranges at the end of the +16th century are usually given as 600–700 paces, or about 1000 yards (*Huo Kung Wên Ta*, p. 1293).

[f] The second part of this sentence is only in the longer *WPC* version.

[g] *Ta yu hsüan miao*[2]. Could one not suspect a Taoist echo here? Cf. p. 117 above.

[h] Cf. pp. 171, 225 above.

[i] Among rocket engineers this is often called a Laval convergent-divergent nozzle, after the Swede Carl de Laval who introduced it for gas turbines in 1889. Cf. Baker (1), p. 18.

[j] The arrow-shaft itself can hardly be counted as an invention, but presumably the stick of later rockets must derive from it, and therefore indirectly from the shaft of the even more ancient fire-lance. Modern pyrotechnists say simply that the stick 'balances and directs the flight' (Brock (1), p. 183). Spinning, fins and wings, ultimately, it seems, took over this function.

[1] 一虎追羊箭 [2] 大有玄妙 [3] 二虎

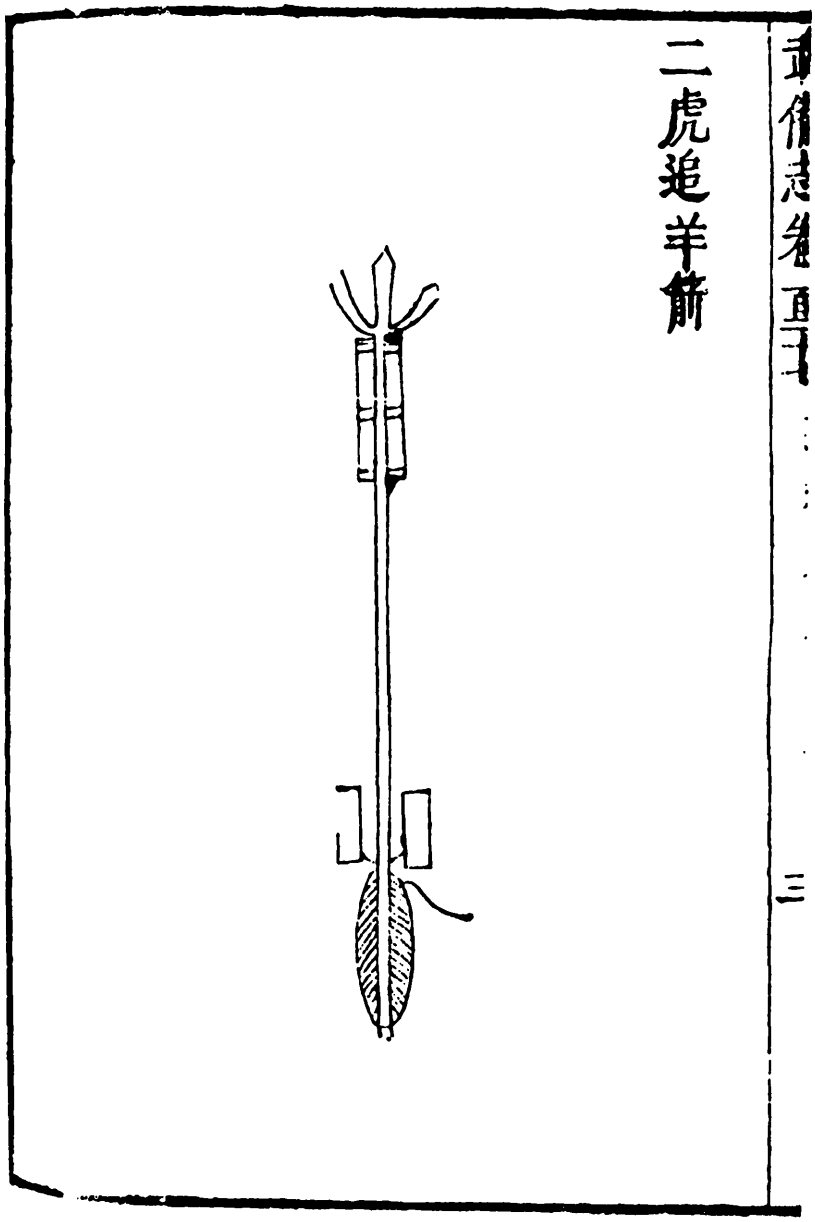


Fig. 196. A manifestation of the technical affinity between the fire-lance and the rocket, the two combined in one device. The 'tigers-catching-up-with-the-sheep rocket-arrow' (*erh hu chui yang chien*), from *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 3*b*. Two rocket-tubes are placed behind the trident, but that is not the only warhead, for two fire-lances are carried just ahead of the feathering.

to come, at least theoretically. Hence the 'flying powder tube' (*fei khung sha thung*[1]).[a] This was in fact three tubes attached to the same staff. A first rocket-tube sent it forward towards the enemy, then as it burnt out it ignited a charge in the leading tube which expelled a blinding lachrymatory powder over the enemy, before igniting a return rocket-tube and so sending the contraption back to its point of origin. Thus the enemy would not know from what direction the attack actually came. The idea was a striking one, but it would have involved great skill to get it to work even approximately in practice.[b]

(iii) *Multiple launchers and wheelbarrow batteries*

It must have become obvious very early that if one was to attempt any kind of aim at all with elongated rocket-propelled projectiles it was no use flourishing them about at random, one should rather launch them from some kind of frame, preferably movable on an axis so as to allow of some choice of trajectory (Fig. 197). Rocketry followed in fact just this course, and we can easily describe the different forms which the frames took.[c] But first it is necessary to eliminate a confusing intrusion, namely co-viative or projected arrows fired from fire-lances approximating to guns, and therefore nothing to do with rocket flight at all. This is all the more confusing because the drawings and descriptions are completely mixed together in the military compendia, and unless one studies the pictures and reads the texts with great care one will certainly come to grief, as has happened to not a few scholars already. The soldiers of Sung, Yuan and Ming did not bother about classificatory distinctions, as we do; all they were interested in were the practical effects.

The reason why we say 'approximating to guns' is that so much depended on whether or not the arrows had a plug or wad behind them which completely blocked the bore of the firearm's barrel. If not, they were simply shot out as co-viative projectiles along with the flames of the fire-lance at comparatively short range (cf. pp. 236 ff. above); if they did then they partook of the nature of cannon-balls, as presumably was the case with the arrows protruding from the muzzles of the early European bombards of Walter de Milamete (+1327, cf. pp. 10, 287–8 above). In the sub-section on fire-lances (13) we saw how difficult it can be to distinguish these two types of weapon.[d] If the barrel was of wood or bamboo it was probably a fire-lance, if of bronze or iron it was perhaps a proto-

[a] *WPC*, ch. 129, pp. 7*b*, 8*a*. Hsü Hui-Lin (1) deserves credit for having taken notice of it. There was a model of it in the National Military Museum in Peking in 1964.

[b] A closely similar 'come-and-go' rocket occurs in the Sibiu MS. of Konrad Haas, dating from about +1560 (von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 11). The question of how derivative from the Chinese sources this could have been might admit of a wide solution.

[c] It is surely needless to emphasise the great role played at the present day by all forms of launchers, whether for military uses or for space-flight. Cf. Humphries (1), p. 140 and opp. p. 150.

[d] Davis & Ware (1), p. 533, called them all guns or bombards, but they were not very sensitive to the distinction we have to make here.

[1] 飛空砂筒

Fig. 197. Oblong-section rectangular rocket-launcher, with all the rockets ignited and sent on their way by one fuse, the *shen huo chien phai* (*HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 3, p. 2*a*).

gun. If there was no vase-shaped bulge, indicating a thicker wall for the explosion-chamber, then it was a fire-lance; if one is mentioned or illustrated, then it was probably a kind of early gun. If the range is said to be short, it was a fire-lance; if it was some 500 yards or more, as often stated, then it was more likely to be a gun. This is why long ranges are so confusing, because they do not necessarily imply rocket-propulsion, as some have thought.[a]

Among the fire-lances or proto-guns we have already described, the two simplest cases involved only one arrow,[b] but there was another which shot three at a time,[c] and yet another which discharged many.[d] To these we can now add several more, the 'triple tiger-halberd' (*san chih hu yüeh*[5]) delivering three arrows,[e] the 'sevenfold tube arrow' (*chhi thung chien*[6]) sending out seven,[f] the 'nine-dragon arrows' (*chiu lung chien*[7]) shooting nine at a time,[g] and the 'hundred-aimed bow-like arrow-shooter' (*pai shih hu chien*[8]), letting off ninety-six from six tubes at one ignition.[h] All these are relevant to the present discussion only because they are scattered disorderly in the books among the true rocket-launchers, to which we must now turn. It is significant that none of the projectile arrows in these quasi-guns ever show rocket-tubes.

The most succinct means of surveying the launchers is tabulation, and this is done in Table 6, passing from the simplest to the most complicated. We must remember that all the data come from books written just before and after +1600, but it may be assumed that the simpler forms would go back one or two centuries before that time.[i] Broadly speaking, three materials were used for the launchers, basketry (cf. Fig. 198), bamboo tubing, and woodwork. All were provided with internal grids or frames to hold the individual rocket-arrows apart (Fig. 199),[j] and there was a marked tendency to make the launchers more or less

[a] Bows and crossbows are of course not at issue here at all.

[b] The 'single-flight magic-fire arrow' (*tan fei shen huo chien*[1]), and the 'magical (fire-)lance arrow' (*shen chhiang chien*[2]). See p. 240 above and Figs. 51, 52. The former was of cast bronze, and does have something that might have been a wad, while a long range and great impact force are noted. The latter was of ironwood, yet it also has something that could have been a wad, and again a long range is mentioned. This last was the weapon associated with the expeditions of +1406 and +1410 against Annam. See also p. 240 above. One can only call these weapons quasi-guns, leaving open the exact shade of difference between fire-lances and true guns. Much would depend on the tightness of the wad—and the long ranges may have been exaggerations.

[c] The 'awe-inspiring fierce-fire yaksha gun' (*shen wei lieh huo yeh-chha chhung*[3]); see p. 240 and Fig. 53 above.

[d] The 'lotus bunch' (*i pa lien*[4]); see p. 243 and Fig. 54 above.

[e] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 26*a*, *b*; *WPC*, ch. 127, pp. 4*b*, 5*a*. Here a bulge over the explosion-chamber is mentioned, but not shown in either drawing. It is called an 'iron gun' (*thieh chhung*[9]) with three barrels, but there is no indication of any plugs or wads. Since this is the oldest part of the *Huo Lung Ching*, this quasi-gun may well go back to the beginning of the +14th century.

[f] *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 7*a*, *b*. The arrows were to be tipped with poison.

[g] *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 8*a*. This has no text.

[h] *WPC*, ch. 127, pp. 10*b*, 11*a*. The tubes were of carton, and it is significantly said that fire should be reserved until the enemy is quite near. We refrain from reproducing any of these.

[i] It will be seen that two items are in the *Huo Lung Ching*, but neither in the oldest stratum.

[j] From time to time there is mention of arrow-lengths (nos. 4, 8), poison applied to the tips (nos. 4, 12), and tail-end balance-weights (nos. 7, 9), etc. but we need not go into further detail. Also the usual romantic names are in the Table, so we omit them here.

[1] 單飛神火箭 [2] 神鎗箭 [3] 神威烈火夜叉銃 [4] 一把蓮
[5] 三隻虎銃 [6] 七箇箭 [7] 九龍箭 [8] 百矢弧箭 [9] 鐵銃

Table 6. *Types of rocket-launchers*

	Nature	Name	Chinese name	HLC	WPC	PL
1	Basket-work rocket-launcher (conical)	Rocket-arrow firing basket	*huo lung chien*[1] (Fig. 198)		126/16*b*, 17*a*	
2	Basket-work rocket-launcher (cylindrical)	Mr Facing-both-ways rocket-arrow firing basket	*shuang fei huo lung chien*[2]	2/2/21*a*, *b*	127/2*b*, 3*a*	
3	Basket-work rocket-launcher (cylindrical)	Forty-nine simultaneously fired rocket-arrows	*ssu-shih-chiu shih fei lien chien*[3]		127/9*b*, 10*a*	
4	Portable bamboo rocket-arrow carrier or quiver with sling	Small bamboo rocket-arrow tube	*hsiao chu thung chien*[4] (Fig. 202)		126/14*b*, 15*a*	12/49*b*, 50*a*
5	Bamboo 3-arrow rocket-launcher	Magical mechanism rocket-arrows	*shen chi chien*[5]		126/7*b*, 8*a*	12/45*b*
6	Bamboo 5-arrow rocket-launcher	Five-tigers-springing-from-a-cave rocket-arrows	*wu hu chhu hsüeh chien*[6] (Fig. 199)		127/5*b*, 6*b*	
7	Smaller bamboo 5-arrow rocket-launcher	Lesser five-tigers, etc., rocket-arrows	*hsiao wu hu chien*[7]		127/6*a*, *b*	
8	Shield with racks for rocket-arrows	Tiger-head fire shield	*hu thou huo phai*[8]		129/12*a*, *b*, 14*b*, 15*a*, *b*	
9	Square-section rectangular rocket-launcher	Pack of 100 tigers running together	*pai hu chhi pên chien*[9] (Fig. 206)		127/11*b*, 12*a*	
10	Oblong-section rectangular rocket-launcher	Magical rocket-arrow block (or screen)	*shen huo chien phai* (or *phing*)[10] (Fig. 197)	2/3/2*a*, *b*	129/16*a*, *b*	
11	Elongated rectangular double-ended rocket-launcher (cf. 2)	Covey of hawks catching rabbits	*chhün ying cho thu chien*[11]		127/14*b*, 15*a*	
12	Elongated slightly flared rectangular rocket-launcher	Long-serpent enemy-destroying rocket-arrows	*chhang shê pho ti chien*[12] (Fig. 203)[a]		127/13*b*, 14*a*	
13	Flared octagonal rocket-launcher	Leopard pack unexpectedly scattering	*chhün pao hêng pên chien*[13] (Figs. 200, 201)		127/12*b*, 13*a*	
14	Flared octagonal rocket-launcher	Wasp's nest	*i wo fêng*[14b]		127/15*b*, 16*a*	12/55*b*
15	Wheelbarrow rocket-launcher	Fire-frame combat-vehicle	*chia huo chan chhê*[15] (Figs. 204, 205)		132/9*a*, *b*	
16	Wheelbarrow launcher battery	Battery of fire-frame combat-vehicles	*lien lo chan chhê*[16] (Fig. 207)		132/10*a*, *b*	

[a] This, and the 'wasp's nest', are much spoken of in the *Huo Kung Wên Ta* towards the end of the +16th century (pp. 1294, 1303).

[b] This we shall come across again in our historical quest (p. 514 below).

To illustrate the danger of relying on terminology alone, a 'smaller wasp's nest' (*hsiao i wo fêng*) is illustrated and described in *WPC*, ch. 128, pp. 17*b*, 18*a*, *b*. It has obviously nothing to do with rocket-launching frames, but one might take it for a double-tube rocket-arrow itself if it were not far too long (12 ft), and shaped like a spear or lance with a ferrule. Showers of sparks looking like wasps are said to come out of the 1 ft 3 in. wooden or bamboo canisters, causing blindness among the enemy, and the flames reach forward 30–40 ft (which is said to be the range). The weapon is thus a lachrymatory fire-lance, though several kinds of co-viative projectiles are described also. There follows a gunpowder composition corresponding to 67·8 : 19·1 : 13·1; but with additions of mercury and mercuric sulphide (cf. p. 344 above), and doubtless plant drugs also.

[1] 火籠箭 [2] 雙飛火籠箭 [3] 四十九矢飛廉箭 [4] 小竹筒箭 [5] 神機箭 [6] 五虎出穴箭 [7] 小五虎箭
[8] 虎頭火牌 [9] 百虎齊奔箭 [10] 神火箭牌(屏) [11] 鞏鷹逐兔箭 [12] 長蛇破敵箭 [13] 鞏豹橫奔箭 [14] 一窩蜂
[15] 架火戰車 [16] 聯絡戰車

Fig. 198. Conical rocket-arrow launchers made of basketwork (*WPC*, ch. 126, p. 16*b*).

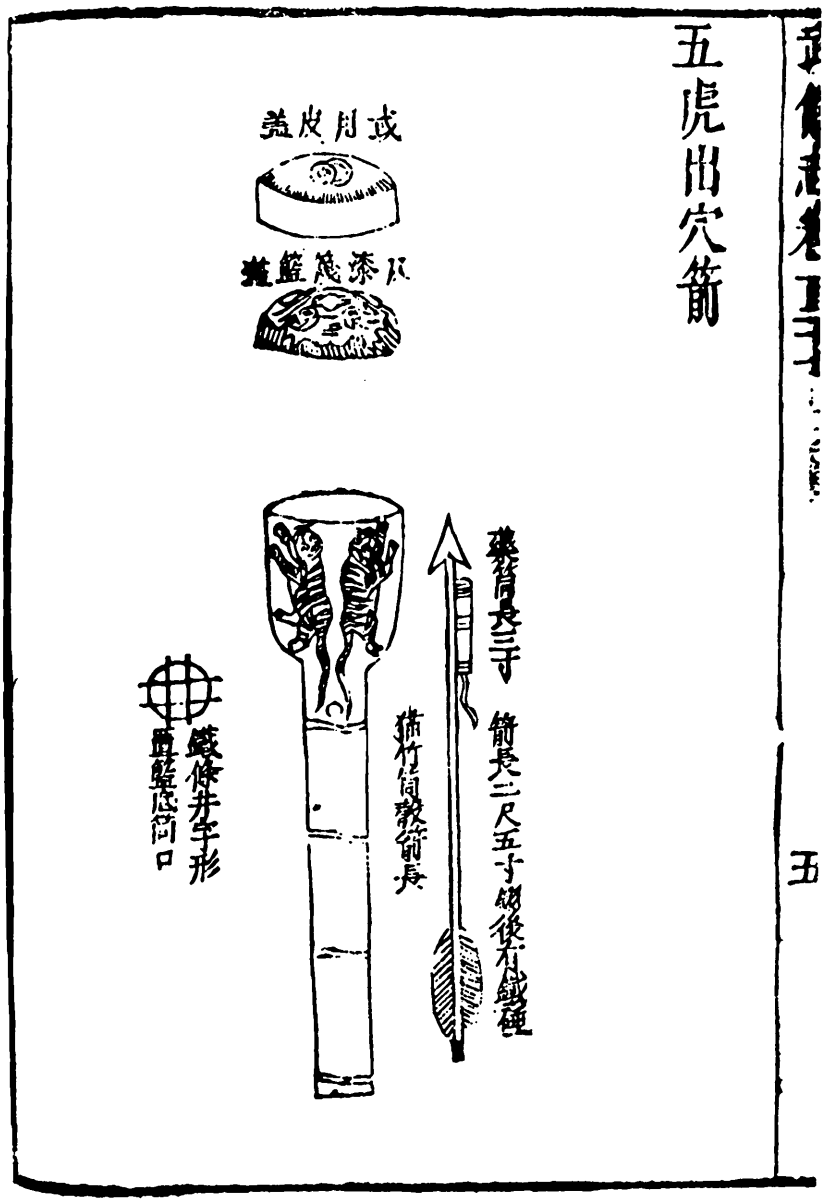


Fig. 199. Bamboo or wooden rocket-launcher with internal grid to keep the arrows apart (*WPC*, ch. 127, p. 5*b*).

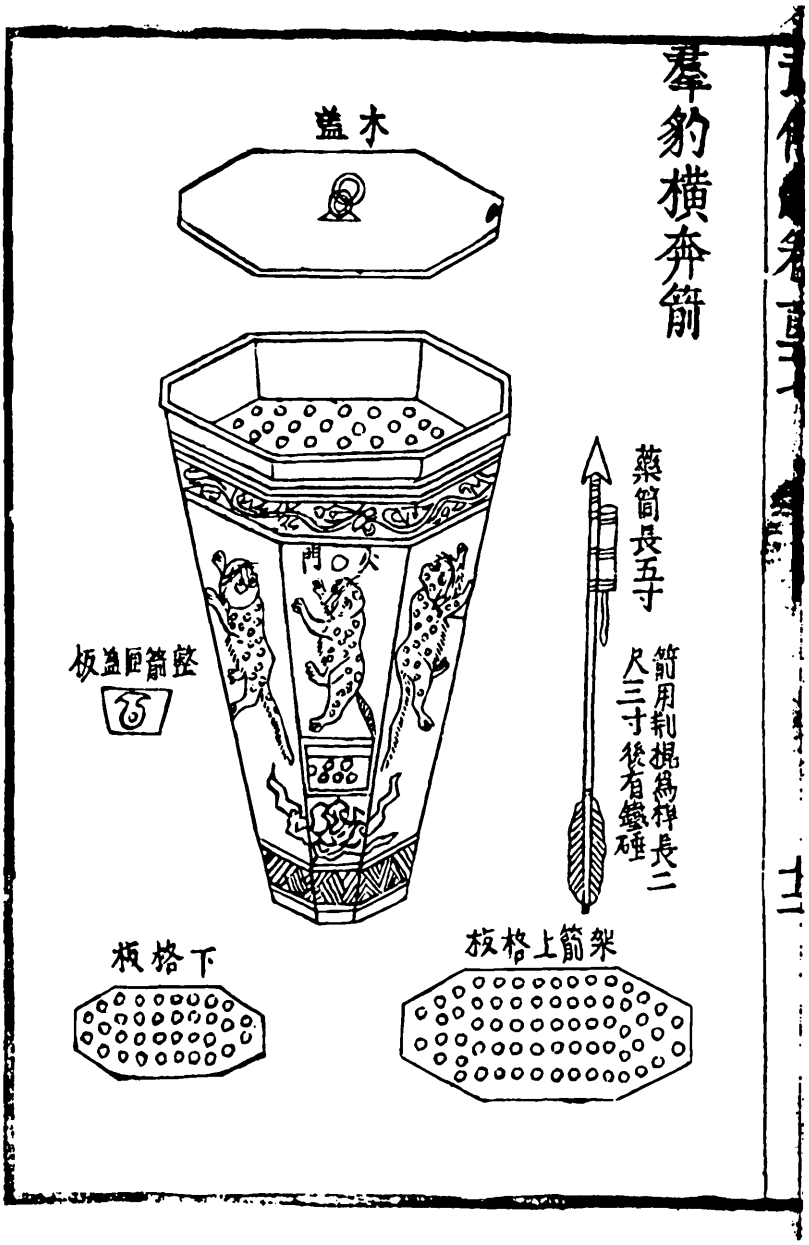


Fig. 200. Splayed conical rocket-launcher with internal diaphragm to keep the arrows apart (*WPC*, ch. 127, p. 12*b*).

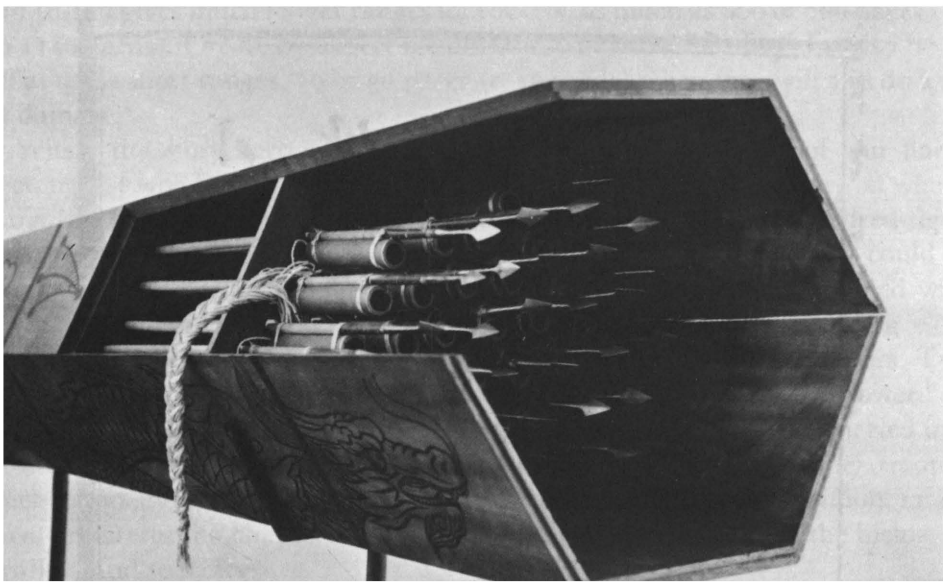


Fig. 201. Reconstruction of the same, showing the common fuse. Photo. Historical Military Museum, Peking.

conical in shape so as to ensure a wide area of dispersion of the points of impact (cf. Figs. 200, 201 and p. 483 above).[a] We translate but one passage, that concerning the portable bamboo rocket-arrow carrier with a sling (Fig. 202). The text says:[b]

The small bamboo rocket-arrow tube (*hsiao chu thung chien*[1]). Each tube holds ten short rocket-arrows, only 9 in. long, and poison is applied to the head of each. The total weight (of the tube and its contents) does not exceed 2 lb., and each soldier can carry four or five of them (on its sling) easily. The enemy would not know what exactly they were transporting. At a distance of some 100 paces (about 170 yards) away, the rocket-arrows are all fired as one. These arrows, though small, are fast, and the enemy cannot avoid them; so one soldier can do as much harm (with these arrows) as several dozen others (using more conventional arms). These rocket quivers can be carried by the personal guards of the commander, or by the detachment of soldiers surrounding the flag, or else by men scattered among ordinary fighting units. The rocket-arrows should be tested to ensure that they can penetrate thin wooden planks. If the bamboo tube is slightly raised at the time of firing, the arrows can reach over 200 paces (say 340 yards). This weapon should not be overlooked just because the arrows are so small.[c]

[a] This may have been suggested by the shape of the age-old quiver for carrying arrows about, as Mr Michael Rosen has intimated to us.

[b] *WPC*, ch. 126, pp. 14*b*, 15*a*; *PL*, ch. 12, pp. 49*b*, 50*a*, tr. auct.

[c] Rough translations of the entries for nos. 1, 9, 10, 12 and 13 have been given by Davis & Ware (1), pp. 532–3; Davis (10).

[1] 小竹筒箭

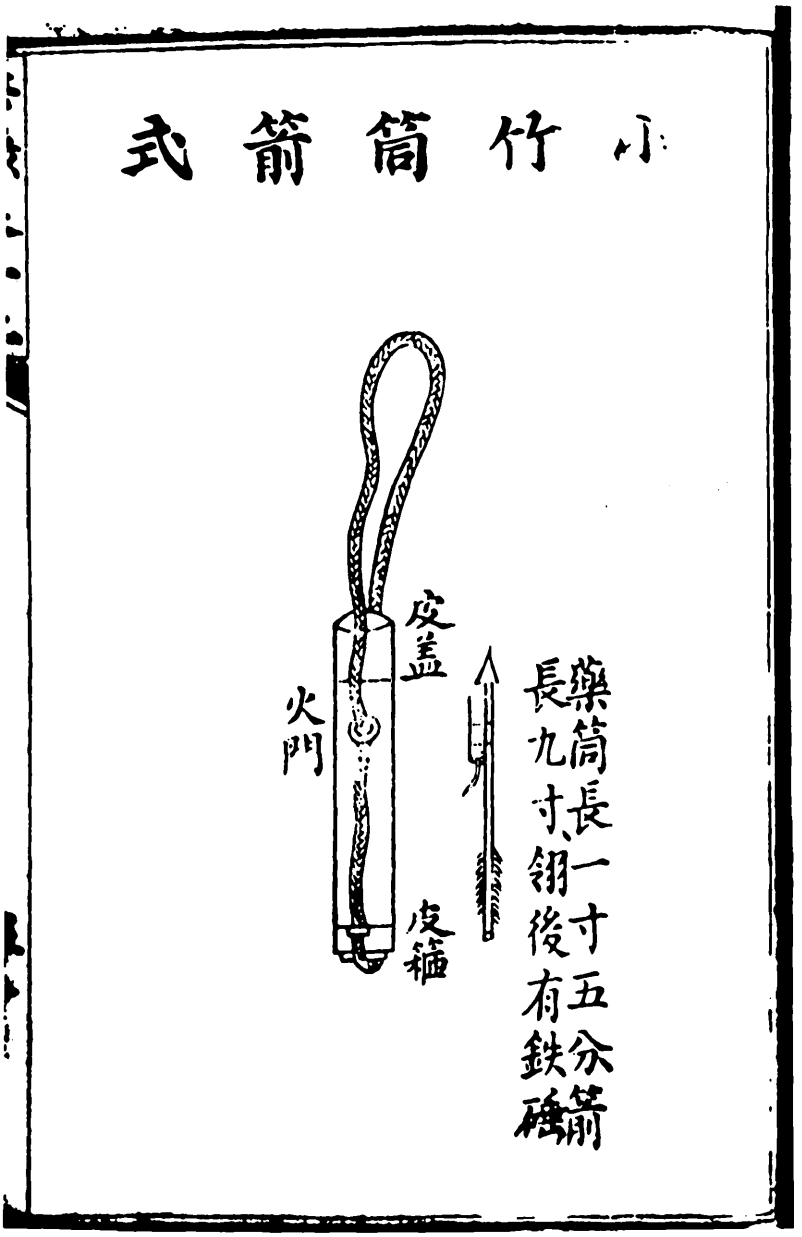


Fig. 202. Portable rocket-arrow carrier and launcher, with sling (*PL*, ch. 12, p. 50*a*).

Ho Ju-Pin gives much longer ranges for rockets, as much as 600 or 700 paces (up to 1150 yards) if made by expert technicians, but adds that they can also be let off at quite short ranges, 20 or 30 paces (*c.* 40 yards) when they will still do a lot of damage.[a]

Where the story becomes rather fascinating is the mounting of four flared rectangular wooden 'long-serpent' rocket-launchers (Fig. 203) in rows on wheelbarrows (Figs. 204, 205), together with two rectangular wooden 'hundred-tiger' rocket-launchers (Fig. 206), one on each side. Thus 320 rocket-arrows could be despatched almost at one time. Each wheelbarrow was further provided with three multiple-bullet proto-guns or fire-lances, two spears for repelling close attack, and curtains of leather for hiding the movements of the gunners. Two soldiers looked after the fighting and two others provided the motive power.[b] In this way veritable batteries of rocket-launchers (Fig. 207) could be wheeled into position, and (hopefully) away again, doubtless under cover of other troops.[c] Such manoeuvres, explicitly carried out in conjunction with true cannon, might form an interesting chapter, not yet written, so far as we know, in the history of artillery and rocketry.[d]

(iv) *Winged rockets*

Among the various stabilising devices which have been introduced in modern times for controlling rocket flight, fins and wings have been outstanding.[e] By +1741 fins were fitted to rocket-bombs by the pyrotechnist François Frézier,[f] and they have continued to be used in many recent types, such as the German 'V 2' of the Second World War.[g] But wings are also very often part of the design, as in the 'Styx',[h] 'Mace'[i] and 'Matador'[j] rocket-missiles, as well as the later

[a] *PL*, ch. 11, pp. 37*a* ff.

[b] A photograph of the scale model reconstruction of this combat-vehicle is given in Fig. 205.

[c] There is mention of a hundred such combat-vehicles working together as a battery. Cf. *Ming Shih*, ch. 92, p. 15*a*. On the history of the wheelbarrow (itself a Chinese invention) see Vol. 4, pt. 2, pp. 258 ff.; Vol. 1, p. 242.

[d] It may not be generally known that rocket frames or multiple launchers can still be seen at the present day if one goes to Yenshui[1] in Southern Taiwan at the time of the lantern festival (Yuan Hsiao[2]). The firework rockets are collected together in 'hives' (*fêng phao thai*[3] or *fêng tshai phao wo*[4]) and let off simultaneously. There is a graphic description by Jih Yüeh & Chung Yung-Ho (1, *1*).

[e] Topologically the two are closely connected, the fin being a wing of reduced size, and generally placed towards the tail of the rocket rather than half-way along its length. Cf. Humphries (1), pp. 133 ff., 139, figs. 69, 71, 76, 77, 79.

[f] Frézier (1); Taylor (1), pp. 8–9. Frézier had many Chinese connections (perhaps without knowing it), for he made much use of iron filings in his fireworks, specialised in *tourbillons* (rotating rockets), and called his Roman candles *lances-à-feu*. Perhaps Reinhart de Solms was the first European to put wings on rockets, as he did in +1547 (Duhem (1), p. 288).

[g] Taylor (1), pp. 24–5; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 106–7; Baker (1), pp. 43 ff.

[h] Taylor (1), pp. 34–5.

[i] Taylor (1), pp. 32–3; Baker (1), p. 179.

[j] Taylor (1), *loc. cit.*; Baker (1), p. 178.

[1] 鹽水 [2] 元宵 [3] 蜂炮台 [4] 蜂採炮窩

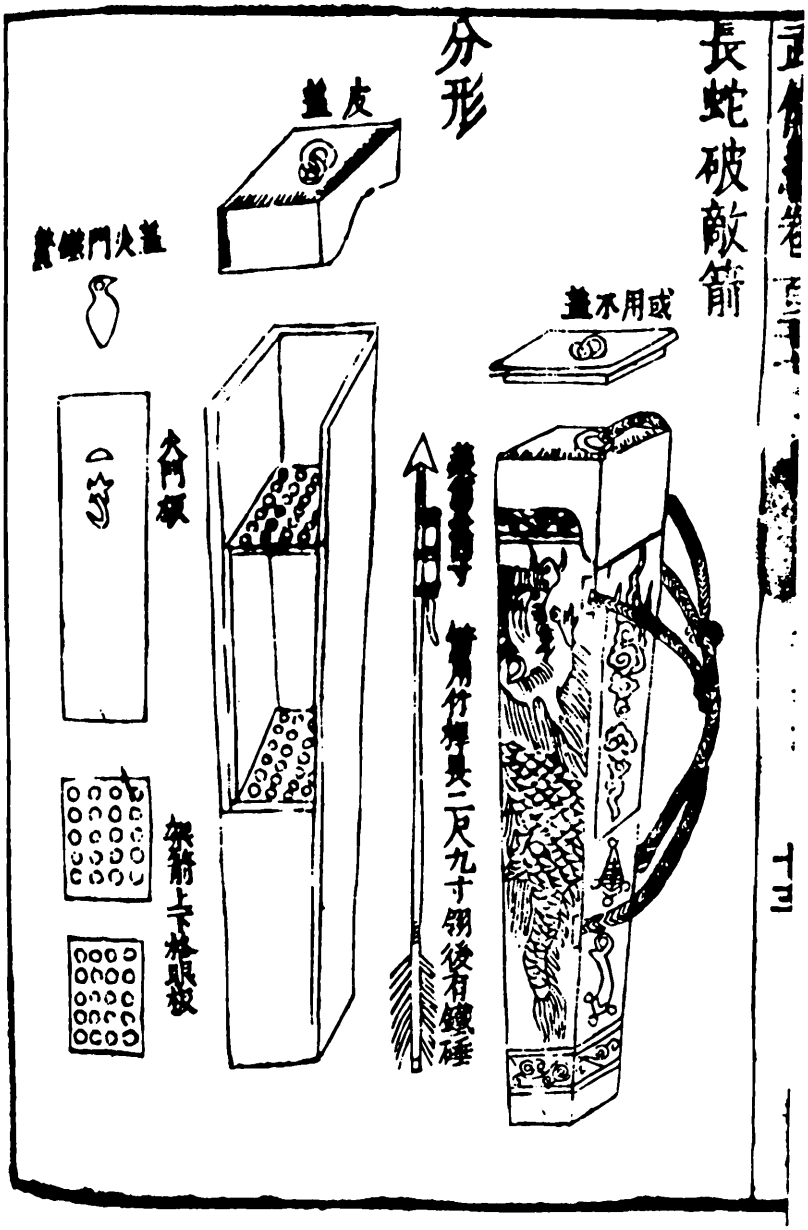


Fig. 203. The 'long-serpent enemy-liquidating arrow-launcher' (*chhang shê pho ti chien*), a slightly flared rectangular container, from *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 13*b*. The pierced frames for keeping the rocket-arrows separate are seen on the left, and above them the 'touch-hole' (*huo mên*) for the fuse which sets them all off at the same time. As the caption explains, each rocket-arrow is 2 ft 9 in. long, with a gunpowder tube 4 in. long, and an iron counter-weight just behind the feathering.

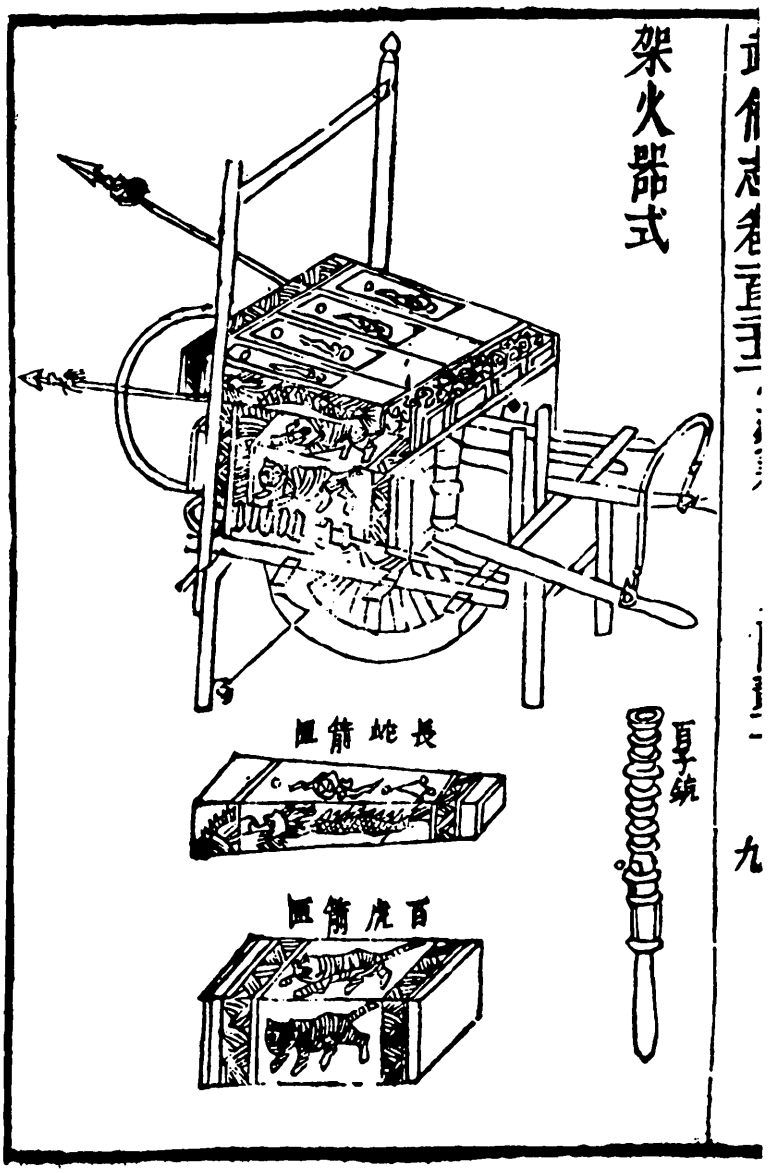


Fig. 204. Four of these 'long-serpent' rocket-launchers mounted side by side on a wheelbarrow (*WPC*, ch. 132, p. 9*b*). Underneath were two square-section 'hundred tigers' rocket-arrow launchers, and on each side a multiple-bullet proto-gun or fire-lance was carried (since this was ridged it may have been a true gun). Two spears were carried in case of close-quarter combat, and there were leather curtains for the protection of the soldiers operating the assault-barrow.

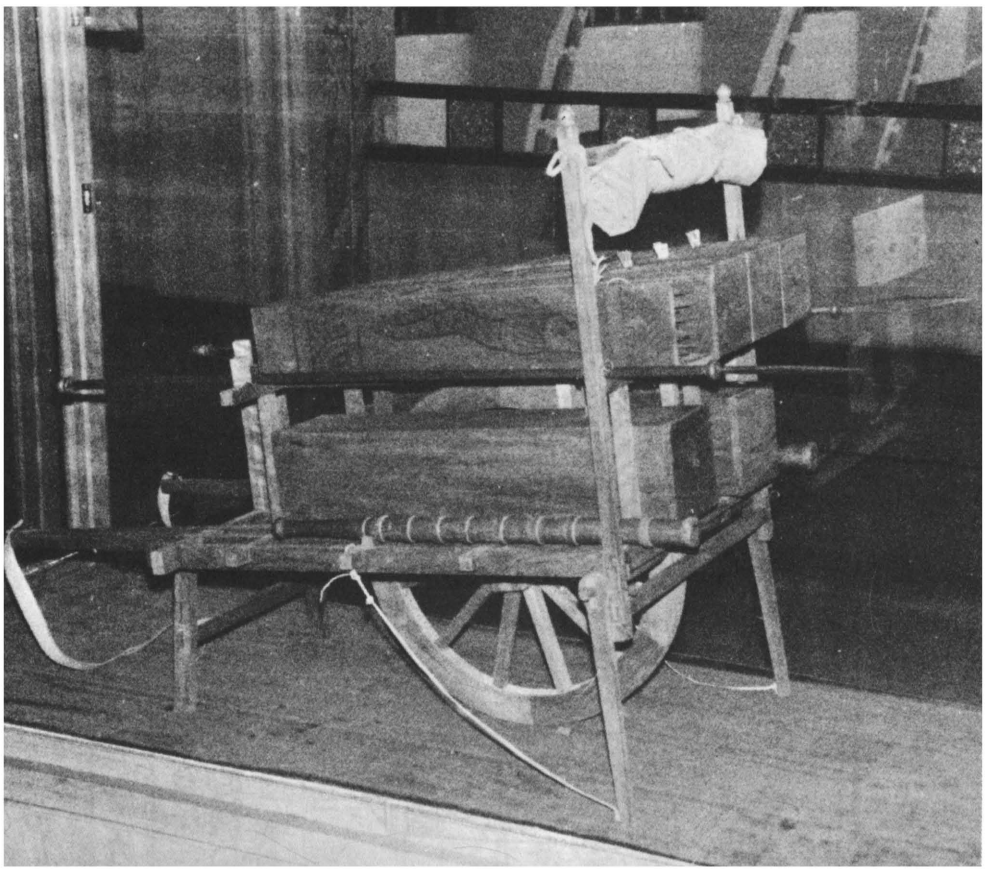


Fig. 205. Scale model reconstruction of the assault-barrow in the previous picture (orig. photo. 1964, in the Nat. Historical Military Museum, Peking).

'Thunderbird'[a] and 'Nike–Zeus'[b] types; and here must also be numbered the Ohka Kamikaze winged (and manned) rocket-aircraft, also of World War II.[c] The 'Space Shuttle' of our own times is another case in point, launched as a rocket but capable of returning to earth as an airplane.[d]

Consequently it is very reasonable to ask, who first gave rockets wings? We find it in the oldest stratum of the *Huo Lung Ching*, which must mean the middle of the +14th century, and quite possibly soon after +1300. The passage (cf. Fig. 208) runs as follows:[e]

[a] Von Braun & Ordway (2), p. 147; Baker (1), p. 130.
[b] Von Braun & Ordway (2), p. 146; Baker (1), p. 178.
[c] Baker (1), p. 92; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 87–9.
[d] Baker (1), pp. 215, 248.
[e] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 18*a*, *b*; *HKPY ibid.*; Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 34*a*, tr. auct. Passages in square brackets are from the slightly expanded *WPC* version, ch. 131, pp. 12*b*, 13*a*.

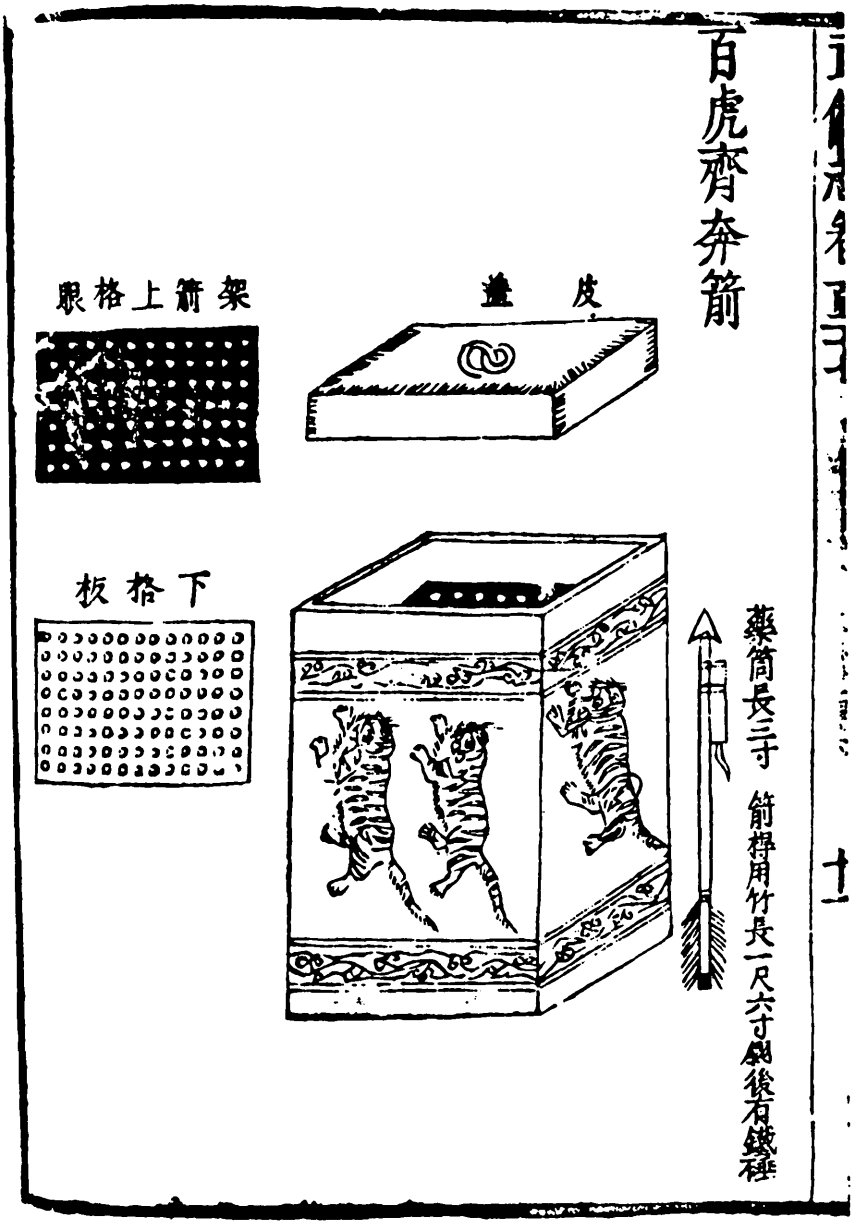


Fig. 206. The 'hundred-tigers running-side-by-side rocket-arrow launcher' (*pai hu chi pên chien*), from *WPC*, ch. 127, p. 11*b*. This is the type referred to in the caption for Fig. 204.

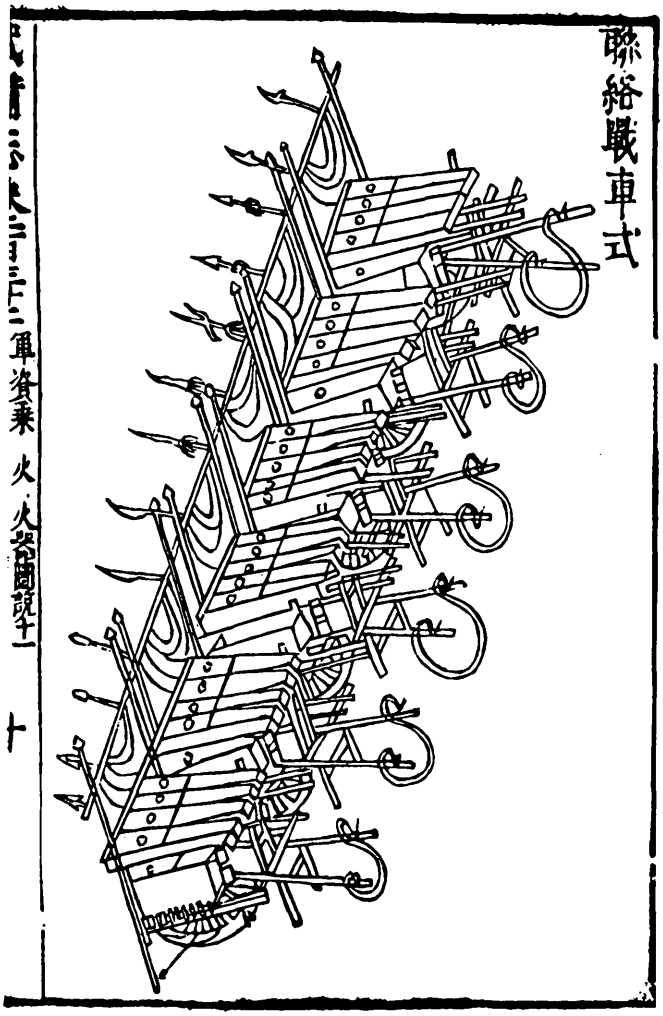


Fig. 207. A whole battery of the assault-barrow rocket-launchers facing to the left, from *WPC*, ch. 132, p. 10*a*. This drawing easily conduces to an optical illusion, but one must keep in mind that one is looking down upon the battery from a viewpoint high up and behind it to the right. Batteries of this kind must have been quite formidable when everything worked well.

The 'flying crow with magic fire' winged rocket-bomb (*shen huo fei ya*[1]).

The body (of the bird) is made of [fine] bamboo laths [or reeds] forming an elongated basketwork, in size and shape like a chicken, weighing over a catty (0·6 kilo.). It has paper glued over to strengthen it, and it is filled with explosive gunpowder (*ming huo cha yao*[2]). All is sealed up using more paper, with head and tail fixed on before and behind, and the two wings nailed firmly on both sides, so that it looks just like a flying crow.

Under each wing there are two [slanting] rockets (*ta chhi huo*[a] *erh chih*[3]). The fourfold (branching) fuse, connected with the rockets [and about a foot long], is put through a hole drilled on the back (of the bird). When in use, this [main fuse] is lit first.

[a] This refers to the 'rising' gunpowder rocket compositions; cf. p. 483 above.

[1] 神火飛鴉 [2] 明火炸藥 [3] 大起火二枝

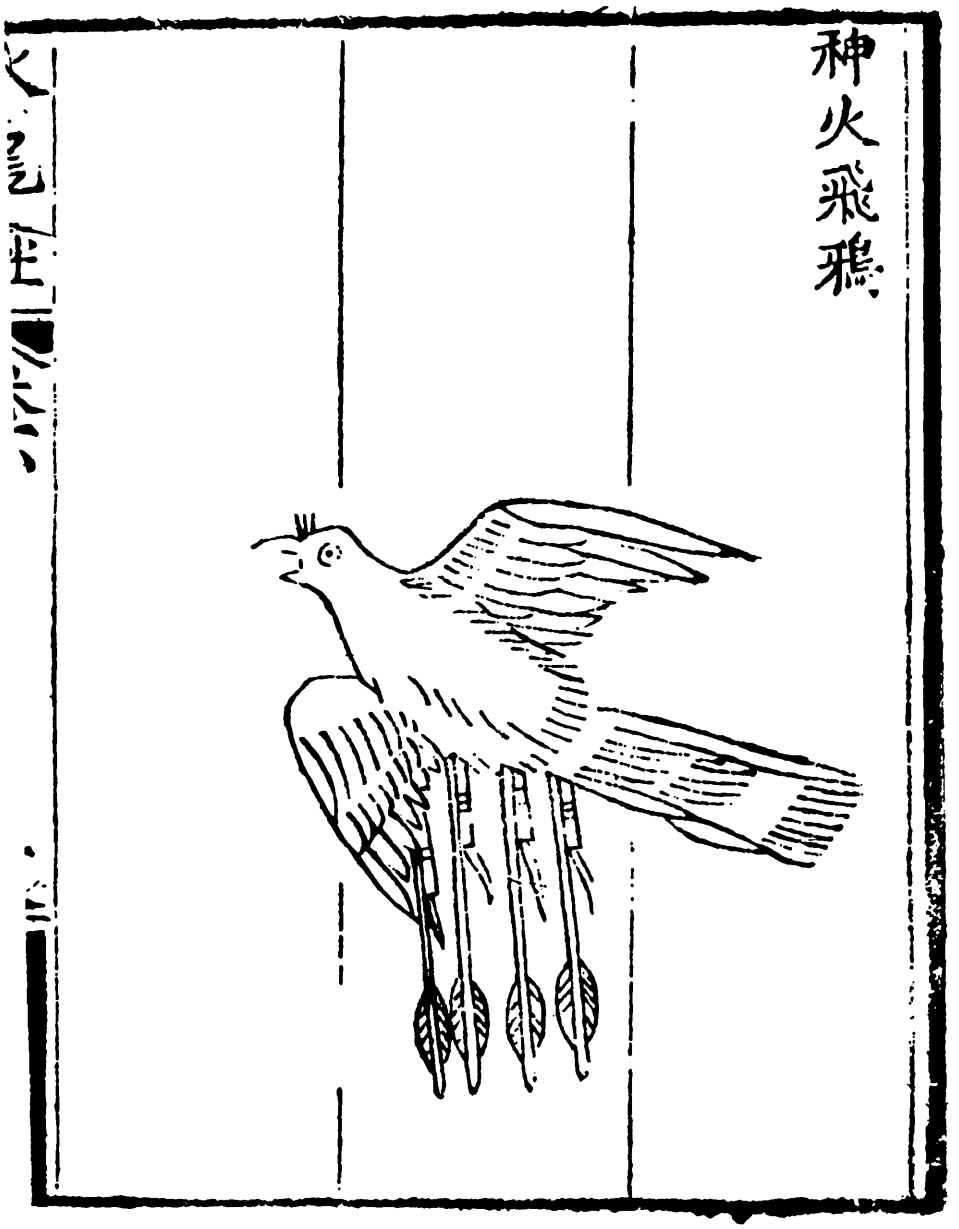


Fig. 208. A winged rocket-bomb, the 'flying crow with magic fire' (*shen huo fei ya*) from *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 18*a*, and therefore at least as early as +1350, probably a century earlier. The idea was doubtless derived from the use of expendable birds (Fig. 38) carrying glowing tinder wherewith to set on fire the roofs of the enemy city. But the provision of wings or fins for increasing aerodynamic stability long preceded anything of the same kind elsewhere in the world. And the provision of an explosive payload was also a new development.

The bird flies away more than 1000 ft, and when it eventually falls to the ground, the explosive gunpowder in the cavity of the bird is (automatically) lit, and the flash can be seen miles away. [This weapon is used against enemy encampments to burn them, but also at sea to set ships on fire. It should never fail to bring victory].[a]

The illustration suggests that the shafts and feathering of rocket-arrows were retained, but the text does not say so. In any case this must surely be the oldest account of the invention of the winged rocket in any civilisation.

One must naturally suppose that the wings were fitted with the four rockets to the weak-casing bomb because it was found that they gave added stability and accuracy to the flight. But what suggested them in the first place? The answer is immediately at hand—namely the use of expendable birds as incendiary carriers. It must be significant that these always accompany and precede the winged rocket-bomb in the military compendia. There were, for example, the 'fire-bird' (*huo chhin*[1])[b] and the 'nut sparrow' (*chhiao hsing*[2])[c] both carrying nutfuls of burning moxa tinder attached to their necks or legs, so that when they perched on the housetops of the enemy city they would set the roofs on fire. Both these had come down with little or no change from the *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* of +1044,[d] but again significantly they were there followed by no rocket-propelled artificial bird. Going back further, we can find the former easily in the *Hu Chhien Ching*[e] of +1004, and even in the *Thai Pai Yin Ching*[f] of +759. The practice was probably age-old, and there is no point in pursuing it further. Thus the winged rocket had to await the latter part of the +13th century at earliest—but even so it long preceded the winged rockets of the West.

There is another winged rocket-bomb, or rather grenade, in the *Wu Pei Chih*, the 'free-flying enemy-pounding thunder-crash bomb' (*fei khung chi tsei chen-thien-lei phao*[3]).[g] A rocket-tube (*sung yao thung*[4]) is contrived within the body of it, and when the wind is favourable the fuse is lit, whereupon it flies over to the enemy.[h] When the rocket-composition is nearly burnt out, the charge is automatically ignited, releasing a poisonous and irritating smoke as well as water-calthrops the thorns of which are tipped with tiger-poison. The whole thing is no more than 3·5 in. in diameter, made of dozens of layers of oiled paper, but on each side it has artificial wind-borne wings (*hsia fêng chhih*[5]) which will take it, in suitable conditions, right over a city wall (Fig. 211).[i]

[a] We also give in Figs. 209, 210 reconstructions made by the National Historical Military Museum in Peking.

[b] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 16*a*, *b*, *HKPY*, *ibid.*, Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 33*a*; *WPC*, ch. 131, pp. 10*b*, 11*a*.

[c] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 17*a*, *b*, *HKPY*, *ibid.*, Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 33*b*; *WPC*, ch. 131, pp. 11*b*, 12*a*.

[d] *WCTY*, ch. 11, pp. 21*a*, *b*, 22*a*, *b*.

[e] Ch. 54 (ch. 6), p. 5*a*, *b*. [f] Ch. 38 (ch. 4), p. 8*b*.

[g] *WPC*, ch. 123, pp. 22*b*, 23*a*. From p. 163 above we know that 'thunder-crash' was the key-word for a strong-casing bomb. Here perhaps it was loosely used.

[h] The stronger the wind the further it goes, says the text.

[i] We also give in Fig. 212 the reconstruction made by the National Historical Museum in Peking.

[1] 火禽 [2] 雀杏 [3] 飛空擊賊震天雷砲 [4] 送藥筒
[5] 轄風翅

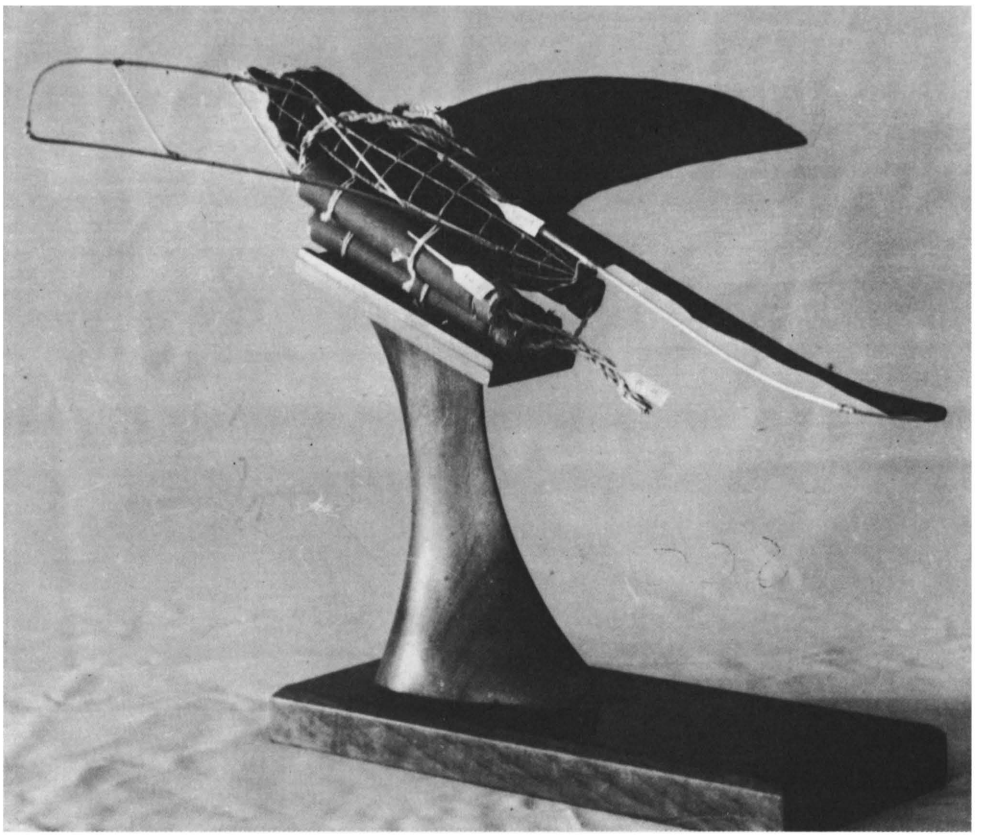


Fig. 209. Model of the winged rocket-bomb to show the structure and design (photo. Nat. Historical Museum, Peking, 1978).

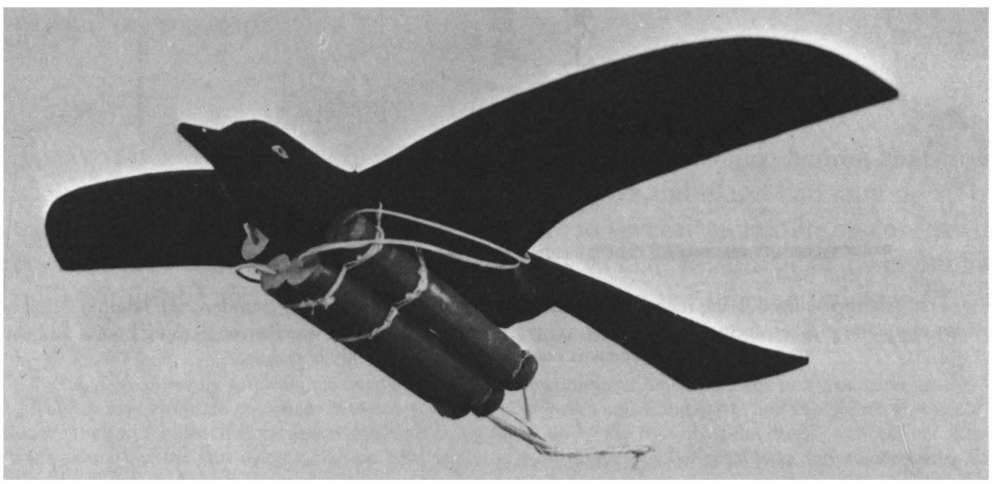


Fig. 210. Model of the complete winged rocket-bomb (photo. Nat. Historical Military Museum, Peking).

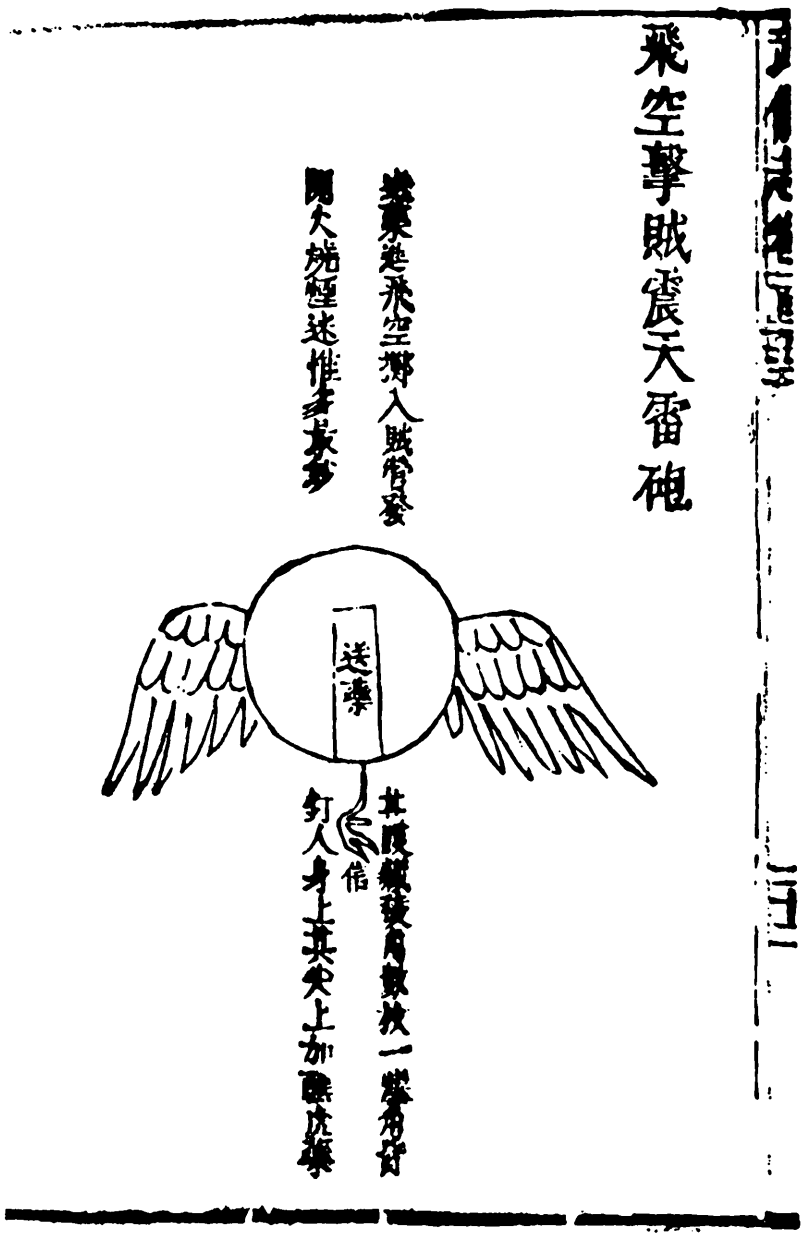


Fig. 211. Another winged flying rocket-bomb, the 'free-flying enemy-pounding thundercrash bomb' (*fei khung chi tsei chen-thien-lei phao*), from *WPC*, ch. 123, p. 22*b*. From its name this was a strong-casing bomb, and the rocket tube was contrived within the body of it.

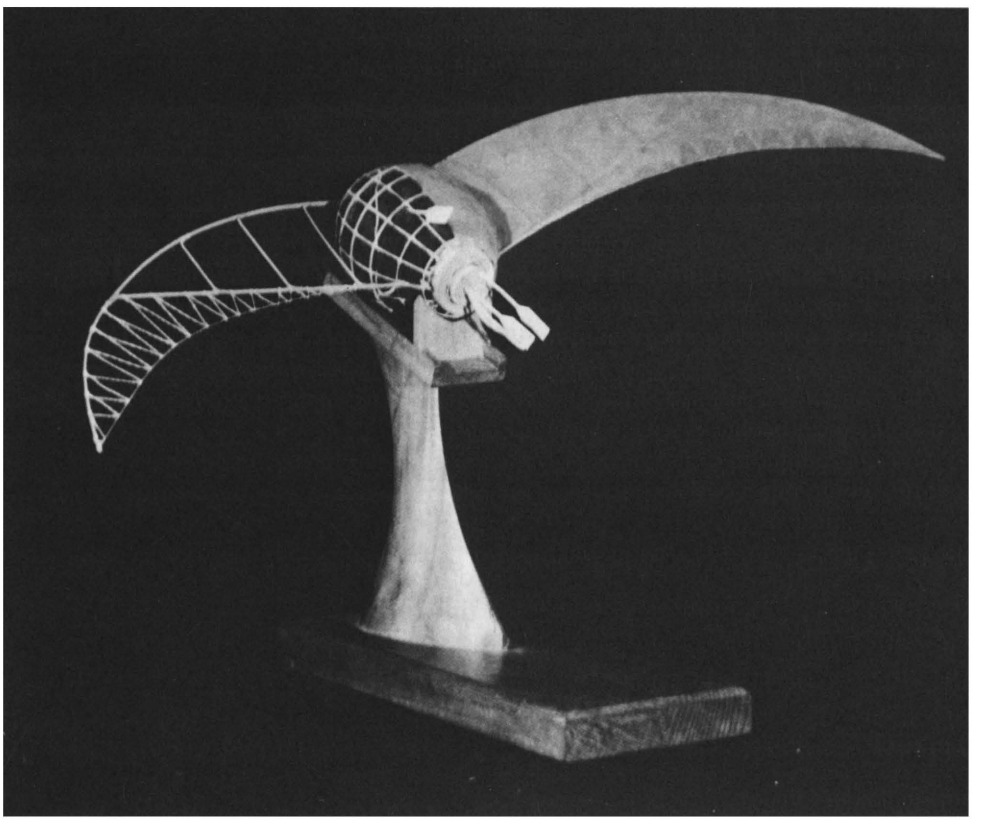


Fig. 212. Reconstruction of the rocket-containing flying bomb to show the structure of the wings. Photo. Nat. Historical Museum, Peking, 1978.

Such were the beginnings of the winged rockets of the present day that reach beyond the stratosphere.

(v) *Multi-stage rockets*

Today it is a commonplace, not only the pabulum of science fiction, that if we wish to leave the earth and travel into outer space, mankind can only do so by using rocket-craft with combustibles that fire in several successive stages, boosters to begin with, then smaller rockets, finally to take advantage of gravitational pulls within the emptiness, and cruise away among the stars and planets.[a] Artificial satellites launched by multi-stage rockets are now familiar to everyone,[b]

[a] Aided of course by small bursts from rocket-motors from time to time to change or adjust direction.

[b] They may circulate anywhere between 500 and 25,000 miles above the earth, and the higher they are the longer they will endure before descending and being burnt up by the friction of the earth's atmosphere. They must also avoid the van Allen radiation belt, which is most dangerous between 2000 and 12,000 miles. Cf. Taylor (1), pp. 82 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (2).

I shall always remember seeing the pin-point light of 'Sputnik I' crossing the sky, man's first artificial satellite, as we sat at dinner in the open air on the harbour mole at Valencia in Spain in 1957.

and space probes can be sent to remote inhospitable parts of the solar system where men are not yet ready to venture themselves.[a] In seeking for the origin of multi-stage rockets let us start from the present day and work backwards, tracing their development to its source.[b]

The 'Apollo' moon-landings of 1969 were accomplished by means of a three-stage rocket of enormous size, 'Saturn V'.[c] Such space projectiles have been developed along with those more menacing and dangerous missile carriers known as IRBM and ICBM.[d] Indeed it is an extraordinary fact that the very same rocket vehicles which can be, and have been, used for the exploration of extra-terrestrial space by human beings, can also be turned against themselves for fratricidal purposes of mass extermination—like fire itself, everything depends on what you do with it. The American 'Thor', 'Atlas', 'Titan' and 'Minuteman' have all been rockets of three or four stages, as also the Russian ones 'Scrag' and 'Sasin'.[e] It was the Russian pioneer Konstantin Tsiolkovsky about 1883 who first realised that space-flight would necessarily demand what he called 'rocket-trains' or multiple rockets firing in successive stages.[f] Only so could a sufficiently high speed be attained to overcome the pull of earth's gravity. Also in the nineteenth century came the application of Edward Boxer about 1855 of two-stage rockets for the purpose of life-saving at sea; they shot a cord over the endangered vessel so that a cable and a breeches-buoy could follow. By 1870 every British lifeboat station was equipped with these, and they are still in use at the present day, having saved many tens of thousands of lives.[g] Boxer based the design on the rockets of François Frézier, published in his book of +1741.

But the idea of two-stage rockets goes much further back, into the +17th and +16th centuries. It has long been known that the Lithuanian military engineer[h] Kazimierz Siemienowicz described them in his book *Ars Magna Artilleriae* pub-

[a] E.g. 'Mariner 4' and 'Venus 4'; Taylor (1), pp. 148–9.

[b] Dollfuss (1) suggests that the first payload-carrying rockets were those of French displays from +1772 onwards which shot live dogs and sheep high into the air, after which they descended safely by parachute (*parasol à feu*). Some of these seem to have been two- or three-stage rockets. Similar systems were used later on, for 'Verey lights' on battlefields from 1837, and for reconnaissance cameras from 1860. On the history of the parachute as such see Vol. 4, pt. 2, pp. 594 ff.

Duhem (1), pp. 292, 300, also describes the animal parachute experiments.

[c] This was eight years after the first human being had been put into space, Yuri Gagarin in 'Vostok I'. See Taylor (1), pp. 92 ff., 124 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 176 ff. By the time the last stage fell away, the 'Apollo' spacecraft was making 24,200 mph (Fig. 213).

[d] Intermediate-Range Ballistic Missiles and Inter-Continental Ballistic Missiles.

[e] Taylor (1), pp. 38, 72 ff.; Baker (1), pp. 109 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 135, 172–3 (1), pp. 175–6. China launched her first multi-stage carrier of modern type to a destined area in the South Pacific on 18 May 1980.

[f] See Baker (1), pp. 17 ff.; Olszewski (2); von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 124–5; Ley (2), pp. 101 ff.; Taylor (1), pp. 14–5. Tsiolkovsky even envisaged liquid oxygen and hydrogen as fuels, the very solution adopted nearly a century later in 'Saturn V'.

[g] Taylor (1), pp. 11–2; Humphries (1), pp. 143 ff., 178. The second-stage rocket was lit by a small detonating charge of gunpowder.

[h] Siemienowicz spent his life in the Polish service.

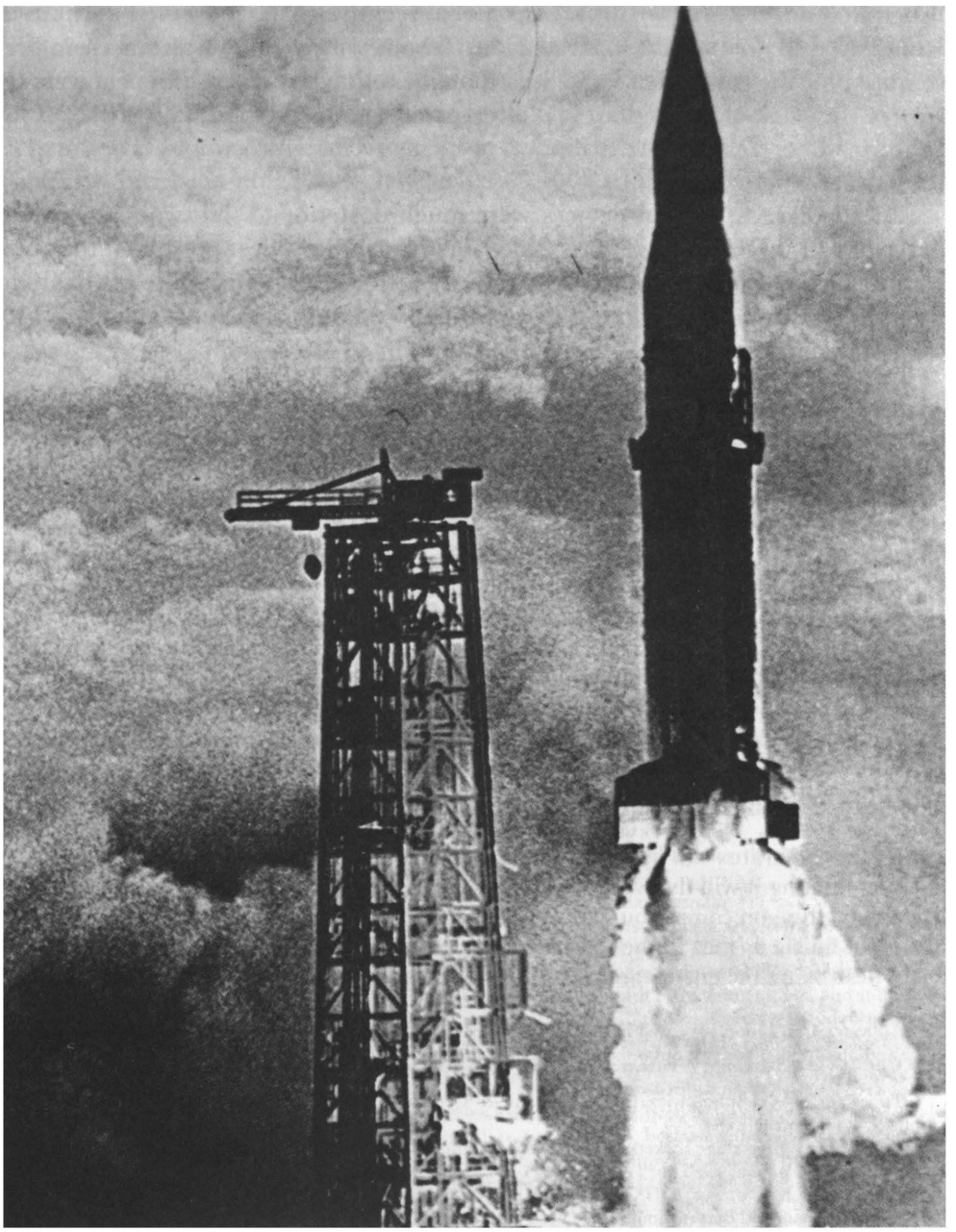


Fig. 213. Multi-stage rockets; the blast-off of Saturn I in 1961 (from Baker (1), p. 157).

lished at Amsterdam in +1650.[a] But more recently a MS. conserved at Sibiu in Rumania and written by Konrad Haas[b] about +1560 shows also a clear presentation of the same idea,[c] and it is thought to have reached Siemienowicz by way of the book of Schmidlap (1), often printed in the second half of the +16th century.[d] Less clear is the attribution to Biringuccio, which would take the matter back to +1540.[e]

But all these European devices were much posterior to the two-stage rocket described in the *Huo Lung Ching*.[f] Since it occurs in the oldest portion of the book it must be dated to the second half of the +14th century, and quite probably to the first half also.[g] Describing the 'fire-dragon issuing from the water' (*huo lung chhu shui*[1]), it says:[h]

A tube of bamboo (*mao chu*[2])[i] 5 ft long is taken, the septa removed, and the nodes scraped smooth [with an iron knife]. A piece of wood is carved into the shape of a dragon's head (and fitted on at the front) while a wooden dragon tail is made for the rear end. [The mouth must be facing upwards, and] in the belly of the dragon there are several 'mysterious mechanism rocket-arrows' (*shen chi huo chien*[3]).[j] At the dragon head there is an opening through which go all the fuses of the rockets (inside).

[Beneath the dragon head on both sides there are two (big) rocket-tubes weighing a catty and a half each. Their fuses (and orifices) should face downwards (and backwards), and their front ends must face upwards (and forwards); and they are fixed tight to the body by (bands of) hempen cloth secured with skin- and fish-glue. The fuses of the rocket(-arrows) within the belly lead out from the head of the dragon, and they are divided into two. Oiled paper is used to make them firm, and they are so arranged as to be connected with the front (ends) of the (outside) rocket-tubes (*huo chien thung*[4]). And under the tail of the dragon on each side there are also two (big) rocket-tubes, fastened in the same style. The fuses of the four rockets are twisted into a single one. In a naval battle] the apparatus can fly 3 or 4 ft above the water.

Upon lighting it will fly over the water as far as 2 or 3 *li*.[k] At a distance it really looks like a flying dragon coming out of the water. When the gunpowder in the rocket-tubes is nearly all finished (that in the rocket-arrows within the belly is ignited, so that) they fly forth, destroying the enemy and his ships. [It can be used either on land or sea.]

[a] A French translation appeared in the following year. See Olszewski (1), p. 251; Barowa & Berbelicki (1), p. 12 and opp. p. 9; Thor (2); Subotowicz (2); Berninger (1).

[b] +1529 to 69.

[c] Todericiu (1–5); Subotowicz (1); von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 11 ff. Haas added delta-shaped fin-stabilisers to his rocket tails.

[d] He designed three-stage rockets, on which see Subotowicz (1), as did Siemienowicz later.

[e] (1), Eng. ed. p. 442; see Thor (1).

[f] *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 23*a*, *b*, *HKPY*, *ibid.*; Hsiangyang ed., *HCT*, p. 36*b*; *WPC*, ch. 133, pp. 3*a*, *b*, 4*a*.

[g] It was only natural that it should have been earlier, in view of the antecedent development of all gunpowder devices and weapons in China.

[h] Tr. auct. Passages in square brackets come from the rather longer version in the *Wu Pei Chih*.

[i] *Phyllostachys*, probably *edulis*; cf. Chhen Jung (1), p. 78; Steward (2), p. 437—but in any case one of the bamboos of large diameter.

[j] Cf. Table 6 above.

[k] This range is not so long as it sounds. The Yuan *li* was 0·344 mile, or 605 yards, so the maximum given would only be 1816 yards.

[1] 火龍出水 [2] 猫竹 [3] 神機火箭 [4] 火箭筒

Thus the automatic lighting of the second-stage rockets is clearly stated.[a] Although strangely prefiguring submarine-launched weapons of 'Polaris' type,[b] it was not in fact fired from under water, but rather from near the water-level on shipboard, and its trajectory was evidently kept very flat.[c] Fig. 214 shows the illustration from the *Huo Lung Ching*; those in later books simply re-draw it.[d] This invention has been noted by a few writers,[e] but its full significance has hardly ever been appreciated.

(vi) *The rise and fall, and rise again, of military rockets*

For reasons which have already been explained (p. 472), the origin and development of the rocket is an exceptionally difficult study in technological history. We must unravel it as best we can, but a definitive account will have to await further research.[f]

To begin with, we have two fixed points, +1264 when an empress was frightened by the 'ground-rats' or 'earth-rats' at a firework display (p. 135 above);[g] and the neighbourhood of +1280 when al-Rammāḥ in Syria described rocket-arrows as *sahm al-Khiṭāi*, 'arrows of China' (p. 41 above). Equally, in spite of arguments to the contrary, we do not believe that rockets were described in the *Wu Ching Tsung Yao* of +1044 (pp. 226 above); while on the other hand they were prominent among the fireworks mentioned by Fêng Ying-Ching and Shen Pang in +1592 (p. 134 above).[h] The details in the *Huo Lung Ching* affirm rockets clearly

[a] The same principle was even applied to fire-crackers in traditional China; cf. Ball (1), p. 282.

[b] Cf. Taylor (1), pp. 76–7. In Oct. 1982 the Chinese navy successfully tested a submarine-launched ballistic missile.

[c] It was thus the very model of a modern 'Exocet' missile (named from the flying fish *Exocetus*), so prominent in the Falklands campaign, as Dr Christopher Cullen remarked to us at Louvain.

[d] We also give in Fig. 215 the reconstruction made by Chiang Chêng-Lin for the National Historical Military Museum in Peking. Cf. Anon. (*209*).

[e] E.g. Hsi Tsê-Tsung (*6*); Hsü Hui-Lin (1); Chiang Chêng-Lin (1); Sandermann (1), p. 171.

[f] One meets from time to time in the Western literature with dubious stories about Chinese rocketry. For example, Hokeš (1) has written about 'Wan Hoo', a supposed official of the Ming period, who invented a kite-like monoplane powered by about 30 rockets, but perished in its first experimental flight. There is a whole series of uncritical references to this, as in Ley (2), pp. 84–5; Gibbs-Smith (10); Zim (1), etc. and it has even been entertained by Chinese writers such as Hsü Hui-Lin (1). But in spite of much correspondence, as with A. T. Philp in Australia, we have never been able to get any firm reference to Wan Hoo, and we suspect that he is a myth invented probably during or after the Chinoiserie period. The matter is reminiscent of a similar story about a dirigible airship ascribed to the Yuan (Vol. 4 pt. 2, p. 598) and probably equally without foundation.

The application of rocket-propulsion to land vehicles has never in fact been of much practical use (Taylor (1), pp. 18 ff.) except for test-track sleds (Humphries (1), p. 179, fig. 113), because although rocket thrust is so high per unit weight, and realisable with extreme rapidity, its fuel consumption is extremely great. But rocket-assisted take-off for aeroplanes has become commonplace (cf. Humphries (1), pp. 163 ff., fig. 100), and a glider like that ascribed to Wan Hoo was successfully flown by Fritz von Opel in 1928.

One can even find Wan Hoo in Norwegian; cf. Holmesland *et al.* (1), vol. 16, p. 508.

[g] Of course it does not follow that the ground-rats were a new invention of that year, nor that civil fireworks were their only employment. They may well have been a century or more old at the time. We have suggested (p. 474 above) that the incorporation of these mini-rockets in cavalry-confusing bombs was the most primitive form of the use of rockets in warfare.

[h] Their 'ascending fires' (*chhi huo*[1]) were undoubtedly rockets, and they also knew of the ground-rats (*ti lao shu*[2]) and the similar toys that whizzed about on water surfaces (*shui shu*[3]). Something like this last is in al-Rammāḥ (Partington (5), p. 203).

[1] 起火 [2] 地老鼠 [3] 水鼠

Fig. 214. The first of all multi-stage rockets, the 'fire-dragon issuing from the water' (*huo lung chhu shui*), a device from *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 23*a*. It therefore belongs to the middle, perhaps to the beginning, of the +14th century. It was a two-stage rocket, for when the carrier or booster rockets were about to burn out they automatically ignited a swarm of smaller rocket-arrows which issued through the dragon mouth and fell down upon the enemy. The design seems to have been for use mainly in naval warfare, and as the trajectory was very flat the weapon may be regarded as an ancestor of the modern 'Exocet'

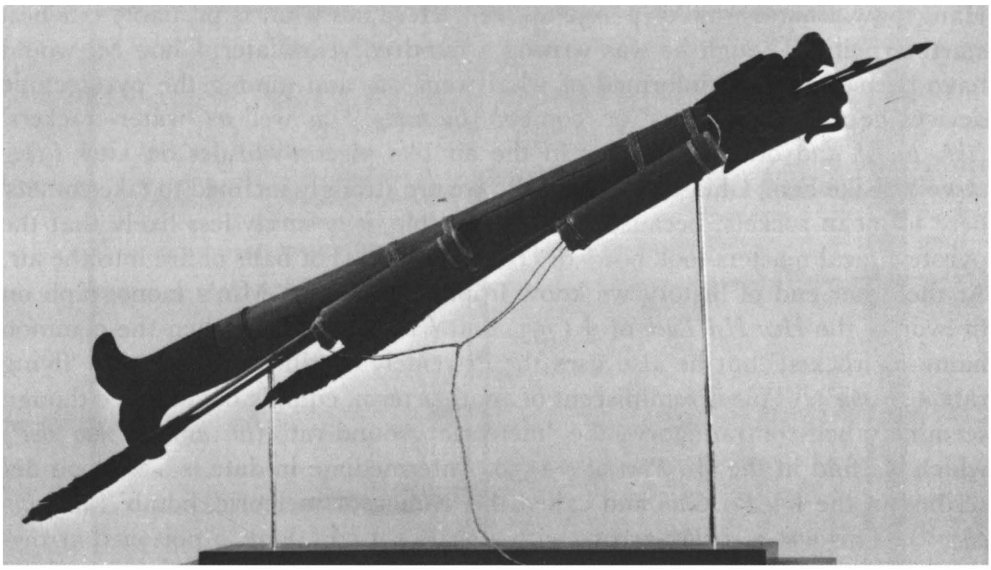


Fig. 215. Reconstruction of the two-stage rocket described in the previous illustration (photo. Nat. Historical Military Museum, Peking).

by about +1350 (p. 479 above),[a] so the period in which we mainly have to look lies between about +1050 and +1280.

Now it will be remembered (pp. 148ff. above) that between +969 and +1002 there was a crop of military inventions by Thang Fu, Yo I-Fang and others, in which new sorts of firearms figured, but we do not believe that these were rockets.[b] Fire-arrows were standard equipment on battleships in +1129, but again there is no justification for interpreting them as rockets.[c] By +1206 a term not previously used appears, 'gunpowder arrows' (*huo yao chien*[1]), fired off by Chao Shun's men during the defence of Hsiangyang against the Chin Tartars (p. 168 above), but though these may have been rockets the expression could easily have referred to low-nitrate gunpowder used on incendiary arrows, as it had been for at least a couple of centuries previously. On the other hand the 'fire-arrows' launched in +1245 during the military and naval exercises in the Chhien-thang estuary (p. 132 above) most probably were rockets. There is here a zone of probability which we can only assess in the light of the following circumstance.

This is the description of the fireworks used at festivals on the West Lake at

[a] And very complicated ones too, such as winged ones and two-stage ones.

[b] Wang Ling (1), pp. 165, 168; Goodrich & Fêng Chia-Shêng (1), p. 114, were uncertain about the nature of these. Průsek (4); Köhler (1), vol. 3, pt. 1, p. 169; and Hsü Hui-Lin (1), thought they were rockets.

[c] In spite of what we said in Vol. 4, pt. 3, pp. 575–6 above, which misled von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 41.

[1] 火藥箭

Hangchow around +1180 (p. 132 above).[a] Here lies what is probably our best starting-point. Though he was writing a hundred years later, Chou Mi would have been quite well informed of what went on, and among the pyrotechnic devices he named 'meteors' or 'comets' (*liu hsing*[1])[b] as well as 'water-crackers' (*shui pao*[2])[c] and others that flew in the air like pigeon-whistles on kites (*fêng chêng*[3]).[d] Like Fêng Chia-Shêng himself,[e] we are strongly inclined to take comets[f] here to mean rockets, because, though possible, it is surely less likely that the pyrotechnical masters took bows or crossbows and shot balls of fire into the air. At the other end of history we know from Chao Hsüeh-Min's monograph on fireworks, the *Huo Hsi Lüeh* of +1753, that *liu hsing*[1] was by then the common name for rocket;[g] but he also uses the extremely significant expression 'flying rats' (*fei shu*[5]).[h] This is reminiscent of another term, equally conjunctive though seemingly self-contradictory, the 'meteoric ground-rat' (*liu hsing ti lao shu*[6]) which we find in the *Wu Pien* of +1550.[i] Intermediate in date is a weapon described in the *Wu Pei Chih* and called the 'comet, or meteoric, bomb' (*liu hsing phao*[11]).[j] This was a rocket-arrow, with a shaft 4 ft 5 in. long, a poisoned arrowhead, and a small carton bomb about the same diameter as the rocket-tube fixed in front of it. As the rocket burnt out, it ignited the bomb (Fig. 216).

Unfortunately, it would be highly deceptive to take everything bearing the name *liu hsing* as a rocket. For example, we have already encountered (p. 180) the 'magic-fire meteoric bomb that goes against the wind' (*tsuan fêng shen huo liu hsing phao*[15]), certainly current by the mid +14th century;[k] it was probably thrown in antique style from a trebuchet, and perhaps got its name simply from

[a] In fact, the Shun-Hsi reign-period, +1174 to 89.

[b] *Wu Lin Chiu Shih*, ch. 3, p. 1*b*.

[c] This probably means the water-rats or rocket-skimmers, perhaps igniting a small explosive charge as they burnt out.

[d] This sounds like Verey lights suspended in that way—or of course live birds could have carried them. On pigeon-whistles, see Vol. 4, pt. 2, p. 578.

[e] Letter to J. N. of 1 Jan. 1956.

[f] Strictly speaking, 'meteors' is the better word, for properly comets were *hui hsing*[4] (cf. Vol. 3, pp. 431, 433).

[g] Cf. Davis & Chao Yün-Tshung (9), p. 104.

[h] *Ibid.* p. 103. Earth-rats and water-rats are mentioned many times (pp. 101–2, 103–4).

[i] Ch. 5, pp. 63*b* ff. Such names make one think of bats and other flying mammals. Indeed *fei shu* was an occasional synonymic name for the bat. 'Ground-rat' had always been a good term for the small rocket because it scuttled about at random. But there could never have been any confusion in the names of the airborne ones, partly because the flight was so different, and partly because they had long had their own special names. The commonest bat, *Vesperugo noctula*, was called *pien fu*[7] (or *thien shu*[8]); cf. *PTKM*, ch. 48, p. 43*b*; R 288; Tu Ya-Chhüan *et al.* (1), p. 1956·2. Other species, such as the flying squirrel *Pteromys xanthipes* also had their special names, in this case *lei shu*[9] or *fu shu*[10]; cf. *PTKM*, ch. 48, p. 47*b*; R 289.

[j] *WPC*, ch. 128, pp. 16*b*, 17*a*. The description says that the use of the weapon is a good way of causing commotion among enemy troops, especially cavalry, as well as doing some incidental damage, after which one should press the attack. But the artists forgot to put in the feathering (*ling*[12]), though it is mentioned in the text, and moreover the arm is called *chhiang*[13] rather than *chien*[14]—confusing features which led Davis & Ware (1), pp. 523–4 to regard it as a fire-lance or incendiary whip-arrow, i.e. javelin.

[k] Because of *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 2, p. 7*a*, *b*. Lit. 'wind-piercing'.

[1] 流星 [2] 水爆 [3] 風箏 [4] 彗星 [5] 飛鼠
[6] 流星地老鼠 [7] 蝙蝠 [8] 天鼠 [9] 鼯鼠 [10] 蝠鼠
[11] 流星砲 [12] 翎 [13] 鎗 [14] 箭 [15] 鐵風神火流星砲

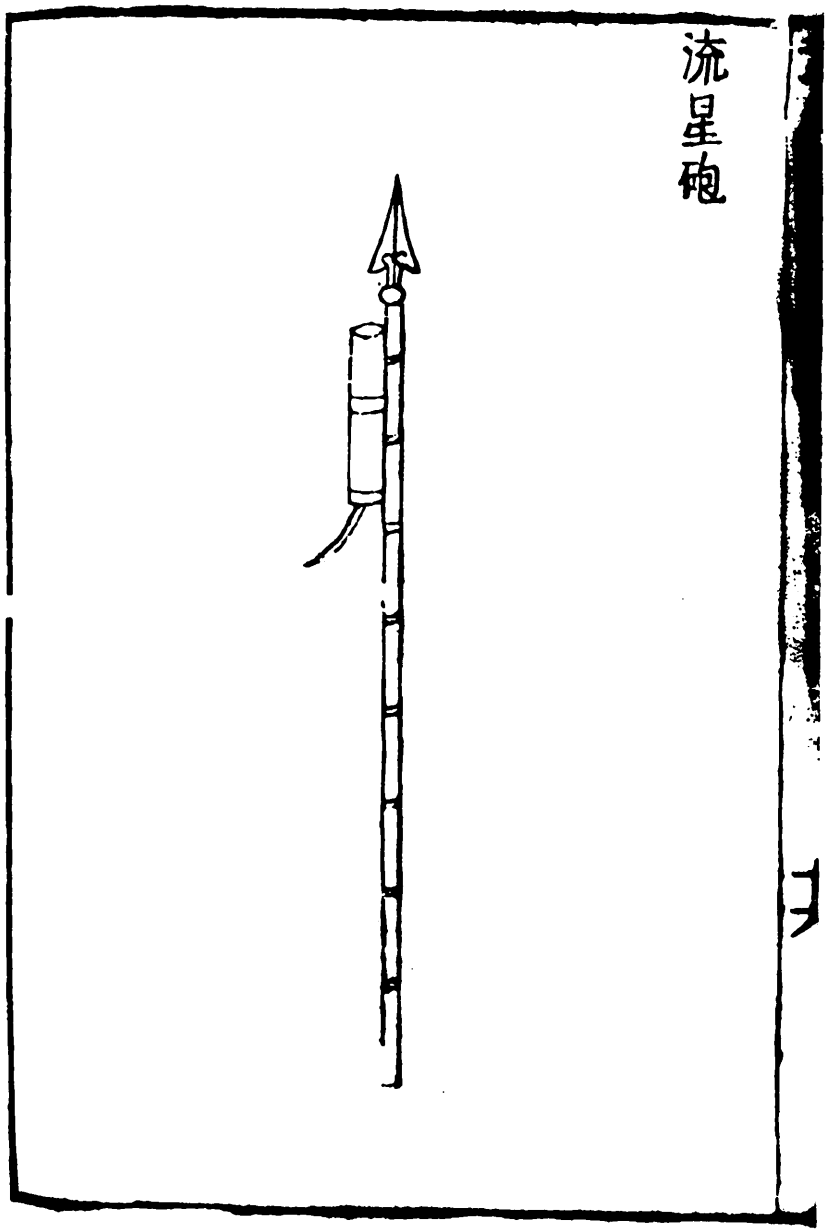


Fig. 216. That the earth-rat turned into the rocket is well illustrated by the expression 'meteoric ground-rat' (*liu hsing ti lao shu*) found in +1550, and another, the 'flying rat' (*fei shu*) of +1753. Here we have a confusing instance of similar nomenclature, the 'meteoric bomb' (*liu hsing phao*), from *WPC*, ch. 128, p. 16*b*. The bomb was simply a carton of gunpowder fixed forward of the rocket-tube head, which automatically set off the explosion as it was about to burn out.

the light of the burning fuse as it passed through the air. Equally there was the 'fire-crossbow meteoric arrow-(shooter)', (*huo nu liu-hsing chien*[1]).[a] This had nothing to do with crossbows either;[b] it was a bamboo proto-gun[c] firing ten poisoned arrows at a time, which came out 'like a flock of locusts' (Fig. 217). It happens that we can perhaps trace this weapon a long way back, because we read[d] that in +1049 a certain magistrate, Kuo Tzu[3], presented prototypes of a 'combat wheelbarrow'[e] and an 'invincible meteoric crossbow' (*wu ti liu hsing nu*[4]); at that time it would have been a fire-lance sending out the arrows as co-viative projectiles.[f]

The dearth of battle accounts specifically mentioning rockets has already been mentioned, but we can find a few, though not for the vital century that we have now been able to define, between +1180 and +1280. For example, bombs containing ground-rats are prominent in the account of the campaign of Liu Chi[5] in Chekiang against inland rebels and coastal pirates around +1340.[g] Launchers are in evidence around +1380, when 'wasps' nests' (*i wo fêng*[6]) are included in lists of army supplies.[h] And after the Ming had begun, they were much used in a battle of +1400 when the imperial army under Li Ching-Lung[7] was fighting the Prince of Yen[8] (the future Yung-Lo emperor), but though effective they did not save the day against him.[i]

Yet another relatively late reference concerns the Timurid Persian embassy from Shāh Rukh to China in +1419, when we find mention of rockets not so much for war as travelling on wires to light lamps and other fireworks at ceremonies to amaze glittering assemblies. In his diary Ghiyāth al-Dīn Naqqāsh wrote:[j]

[a] *HLC*, pt. 2, ch. 2, p. 20*a*, *b*; *WPC*, ch. 126, pp. 12*b*, 13*a*; *PL*, ch. 12, pp. 50*b*, 51*a*.

[b] The only similarity was that the handle was curved like a mark of interrogation.

[c] We say this because the caption mentions a plug (*tan ma*[2]), so that the bore was probably occluded in front of the propellant charge. The barrel was reinforced with iron straps.

[d] *YCLH*, ch. 226, p. 6*b*, quoting (via *Ping Lüeh Tshuan Wên*[9]) *Yü Hai* (+1267), ch. 150, p. 24*a*, *b*. Cf. Chou Chia-Hua (*1*), pp. 210–11.

[e] What relation this could have had with those just discussed (pp. 497ff. above) we do not know. But we doubt that they launched rockets. One is, of course, reminded of the ancient military connections of the vehicle (Vol. 4, pt. 2, p. 260).

[f] True, it was not called a 'fire-crossbow', but at the same time another official, Sung Shou-Hsin[10], presented other fire-weapons, so the identification is reasonable. Of course it may have been a real crossbow with flaming incendiary bolts.

[g] *Hsi Hu Erh Chi*, ch. 17 (pp. 335–6). Cf. p. 183 above. The 'great wasps' nest' (*ta fêng kho*[11]) is here described as including ground-rats, though not in *HLC*, pt. 1, ch. 3, p. 11*a*, *b*, or *WPC*, ch. 130, p. 14*b*. The 'fire-brick' (*huo chuan*[12]) always has them.

[h] *HWHTK*, ch. 134 (p. 3994·3).

[i] *Ming Shih Lu* (Thai Tsung sect. 6), p. 5*b* (p. 64); cf. Goodrich & Fêng Chia-Shêng (1), p. 122, who give further references. See also Chang Hsüan's[13] *Hsi Yuan Wên Chien Lu*[14] (Things Heard and Seen in the Western Garden), ch. 73, pp. 3*b*, 4*a*, *b*, 5*b*.

[j] Tr. Quatremère (3), p. 387; Rehatsek (1), the latter reproduced in Yule (2), vol. 1, p. 282. The log of the expedition formed the appendix to the *Ruẓat al-Safā* of Muḥammad Khāvend Shāh. An exactly similar passage occurs in the *Zubdatu't Tawārikh* of Hafīz-i Abrū, tr. Maitra (1), p. 90.

[1] 火弩流星箭 [2] 彈馬 [3] 郭諮 [4] 無敵流星弩 [5] 劉基
[6] 一窩蜂 [7] 李景隆 [8] 燕王 [9] 兵略纂聞 [10] 宋守信
[11] 大蜂窠 [12] 火磚 [13] 張萱 [14] 西園聞見錄

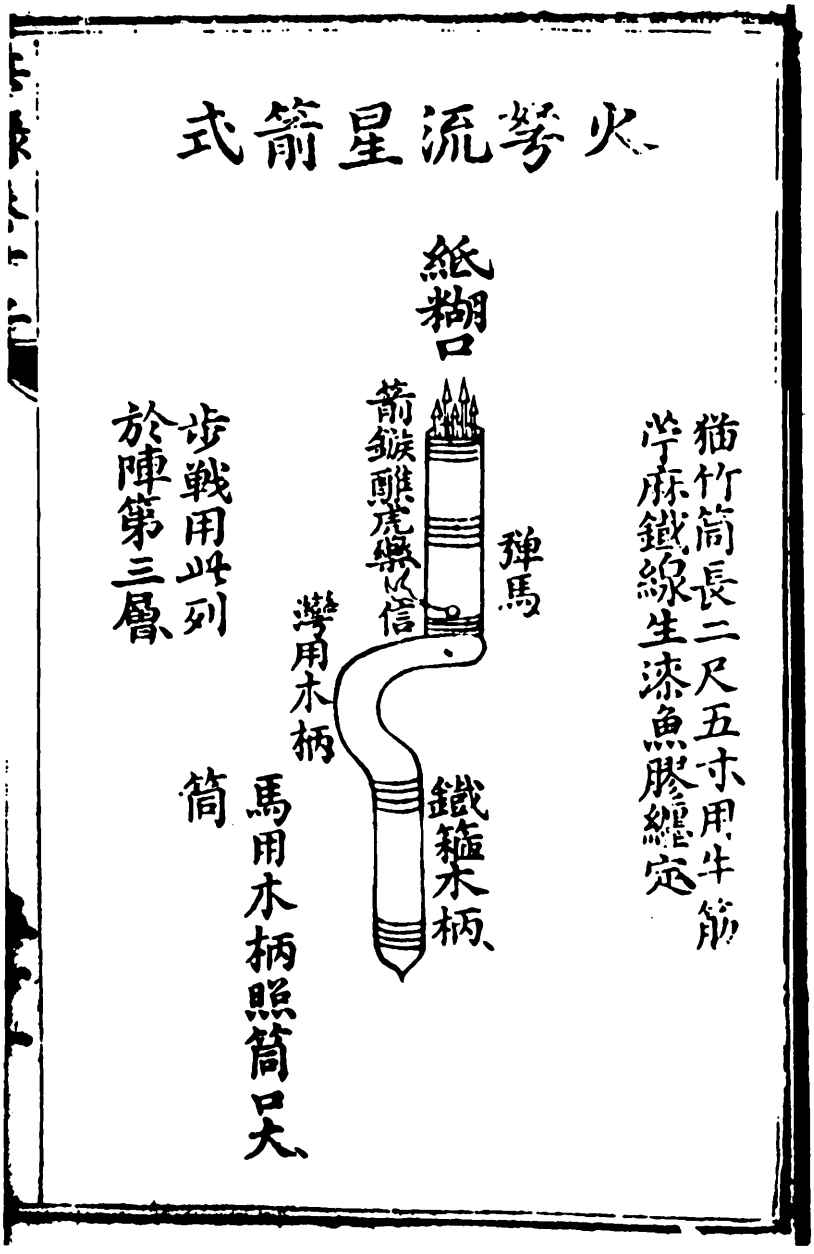


Fig. 217. Another example of a weapon which though called 'meteoric' had nothing to do with rockets, the 'fire-crossbow meteoric arrow-shooter' (*huo nu liu hsing chien*), nor did it have anything to do with crossbows either. It was a bamboo fire-lance or proto-gun which shot forth arrows as co-viative projectiles. *PL*, ch. 12, p. 51*a*.

At that season the Feast of Lanterns takes place, when for seven days and nights, in the interior of the imperial palace, a wooden ball is suspended from which numberless chandeliers branch out, so that it appears to be a mountain of emeralds; and thousands of lamps are suspended from cords. Rats of naphtha are then prepared, and when lit they run along the cords and light every lamp they touch, so that in a single moment all the lamps from the top to the bottom of the ball are kindled.[a]

Actually this use of rockets travelling along cords has come down as a ploy in China to our own time, under various names such as 'the phoenix flitting among the peonies' (*fêng chhuan mou tan*[1]).[b] And it got to the West as well, since we find dragons propelled in the same way in +17th-century European pyrotechnic books.[c]

All in all therefore we shall be fairly safe in placing the Chinese origins of the rocket in the second half of the +12th century, no doubt when Hangchow had entered that period of great peace and prosperity which it had as the capital of Southern Sung.[d] By the time that al-Rammāḥ got to know of them they had been in use for something like a century and a half. When, one may ask, did their history in the West begin?

It is generally agreed that rockets[e] are first mentioned in connection with the Battle of Chioggia between the Genoese and the Venetians in +1380, though they may well have been used a little before that.[f] From then onwards there are many references. By +1405 Konrad Kyeser in his *Bellifortis* knew that a rocket must be a tubular gas-tight container open at one end, with a hollow 'Seele' bored in its charge, and a stick or arrow-shaft 'to steer it'.[g] In +1440 Giovanni da Fontana knew rocket-propelled missiles well,[h] as did Leonardo da Vinci in his

[a] There is something here reminiscent of the 'lamp-trees' which we discussed in the fireworks sub-section (p. 136 above).

[b] Sun Fang-To (1), p. 8 (pp. 302–3).

[c] E.g. in +1633, Leurechon, Henriot & Mydorge (1), p. 272. Cf. Brock (1), pp. 186–7. Later these rocket-propelled 'cable-cars' were called *courantins* (von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 67–8). And in +1765 unmistakable 'water-rats' were described by Jones (1) as well.

[d] And in this case it does look as if the 'flying rats' were initially a civilian pyrotechnic device applied to warfare only rather later. Yet if the rocket stick derived from the rocket-arrow shaft (cf. p. 477 above) the two uses perhaps grew up together.

We are glad to be able to report that our estimate of dating is shared by our friends Mr Hu Tao-Ching, the eminent historian of science at Shanghai, and Mr Phan Chi-Hsing, of the Institute of the History of Science in Peking.

[e] This would be a suitable place to mention the origin of our word 'rocket'. In old Italian *rocca* was a distaff, or a quill or bobbin for silk-winding, hence a long thin tube (Skeat), and the same word was also used to denote a wooden sheath that covered the sharp points of lances during combat exercises (v. Braun & Ordway).

[f] *Danduli Chronicon*, in Muratori (1), vol. 12, p. 448 (*igne imissio cum rochetis*), vol. 15, p. 769 (*furono tirate molte rochette*); cf. Partington (5), pp. 174, 184; Hime (1), pp. 144 ff. The date is just about what one would expect for Europe.

[g] Partington (5), pp. 147–8.

[h] *Ibid.* pp. 161–2. Fontana also proposed a rocket-driven vehicle on four wheels; cf. von Braun & Ordway (2). opp. p. 68. This strange device reappeared in actuality during the Indian Mutiny of 1857 (*ibid.* p. 116). Giovanni da Fontana may well have drawn directly from Chinese sources, because in a work of +1454 he makes a reference to 'my true friend Constantine of Venice, who for many years travelled about in the realm of the Great Khan'. See Birkenmaier (2); Thorndile (12); Clagett (4) and Lynn White (20), p. 8. Other +15th-century references are given by Brock (2) pp. 158 ff.

[1] 鳳穿牡丹

Codex Atlanticus (+1514) and other MSS.[a] Rockets applied both for war and for peaceful pyrotechnics were now commonplace, and in the +17th century there grew up a large literature on them, from which one need only mention Ufano (1) in 1613, Appier-Hanzelet (1) in 1625, and Furtenbach (1, 2) in 1629 and 1650.[b]

But for some reason or other, probably the early and rapid development of gunnery in Europe, rockets played no great part in warfare after that, being mainly confined to firework displays.[c] India was the part of the world where the rocket-arrow achieved greatest prominence, and from the time of the Mogul emperor Akbar (r. +1556 to +1605) onwards.[d] No records which would fix the date at which India received the rocket-principle from China have been found, but it must have been some time in the +14th or +15th century, for the oldest literary reference which Gode[e] could find was of about +1500, the *Kautukacintāmaṇi* by Prataparudradeva of Orissa.[f] This agrees with the earliest historical references which Winter noted, namely in +1499, possibly +1452;[g] and it is certain that Duarte Barbosa saw pyrotechnic rockets when attending a Brahmin wedding in Gujerat in +1515.[h] The word for rocket in Sanskrit is *bāṇ, bāṇa*;[i] which explains the following passage written by François Bernier concerning an event of which he was an eye-witness in +1658. After describing the battle-array, cannon, swordsmen, etc. of the prodigious great Mogul armies in the combat of Aurungzeb against Dara at Samugarh, he goes on to say that 'they hardly made use of any more art than what hath now been related; only they placed here and there some men casting *bannes*, which is a kind of granado fastened to a stick, that may be cast very far through the cavalry, and which extremely terrifieth horse, and even hurts and kills sometimes'.[j]

But it was in the late +18th century that military rockets became really prominent, especially in the Second, Third and Fourth Mysore Wars,[k] during the last twenty years from +1780 onwards. Haidar Ali, the Rājā of Mysore, then invaded the Carnatic, but soon dying, his struggle against the British was carried on by Tipū Sahib his son. Before the fall of Seringapatam and Tipū's death in 1799, these princes had had 6000 rocketeers in their armies, and the East India Company's troops suffered severely from them.

[a] Partington (5), p. 175. Interestingly, he describes various kinds of ground-rat bombs (McCurdy (1), vol. 2, pp. 198, 203–4, 219).

[b] Cf. Kalmar (1); Partington (5), pp. 167–8, 177.

[c] Brock (1), pp. 181 ff. [d] Cf. Elliott (1), vol. 6, p. 470.

[e] (7), pp. 12, 19.

[f] References continue in later works, such as the *Rukmiṇī Svayaṁvara* by Ekanātha (+1570) and the *Rāmadāsa Samagra Grantha* by Rāmadāsa (+1650).

[g] (1), pp. 9 ff. Winter lists fourteen other accounts, including the Battle of Gwalior in +1518, Akbar's expedition to Gujerat in 1572, Aurungzeb's campaigns of 1657 onwards, the fights against the French in 1750, the Maratha wars after 1792, and finally the last appearance of rocket-arrows in the attack on Jhānsi as late as 1858.

[h] (1), vol. 1, p. 117. Cf. Gode (7).

[i] Gode (7), p. 20, says that it may be connected with a similar earlier word meaning arrow, but suspects a borrowing from some other language for the meaning of rocket.

[j] (1), p. 40; 1671 ed., p. 109.

[k] See V. Smith (1), pp. 540 ff., 583 ff.

As Winter says,[a] the rocket became far more extensively employed in India than in any other nation during the +17th and +18th centuries, perhaps because of a certain lack of barrel firearms, especially light artillery. No one ever described it better than Quintin Craufurd, writing in +1790.[b]

> It is certain, that even in those parts of Hindostan that never were frequented by Mahommedans or Europeans, we have met with rockets, a weapon which the natives almost universally employ in war. The rocket consists of a tube of iron, about 8 in. long, and one and a half inches in diameter, closed at one end. It is filled in the same manner as an ordinary sky-rocket, and fastened toward the end of a piece of bamboo, scarcely as thick as a walking-cane, and about 4 ft long, which is pointed with iron. At the opposite end of the tube from the iron point, or that towards the head of the shaft, is the match. The man who uses it, points the end that is shod with iron, to which the rocket is fixed, to the object to which he means to direct it; and setting fire to the match, it goes off with great velocity. By the irregularity of its motion, it is difficult to be avoided, and sometimes acts with considerable effect, especially among cavalry.

Craufurd even used a pile of Indian rockets for the cut on the title-page of his book (Fig. 218). Their average weight was about 9 lb., though it could go up to 30, and their usual range was 1000 yards or more, though they could in certain conditions carry two and a half times that distance.[c] The usual armament was an arrow-head, but the rockets sometimes bore automatically fused bombs, and were often provided with various kinds of launchers.

This Indian rocketry led directly, and perhaps unexpectedly, to a great development of military rockets in Europe.[d] William Congreve (+1772 to 1828) who rose to the rank of Major-General in the Hanoverian service, and shone in the dignity of F.R.S., was directly inspired by the Indian example,[e] and engaged in many experiments with (and much propaganda for) rockets from 1804 onwards, to such good effect that a Rocket Brigade or Regiment was formed in 1808.[f] It was urged that since no wheeled carriages were needed, rockets[g] gave 'to cavalry the power of artillery', and that when provided, every carriage, because of the lightness of the projectiles, was 'a volley-carriage, instead of being armed with a

[a] (1), p. 21.

[b] (1), pp. 294–5, 2nd ed., vol. 2, pp. 54 ff. Craufurd was a Scot who made a fortune in Asia and died in Paris; cf. Partington (5), p. 232.

[c] Winter (1); Baker (1), p. 12; Gode (6), p. 222 quoting Moor (1), p. 509. The sticks were in fact often 10 or 12 ft long. One of Moor's remarks suggests a connection with the Chinese ground-rats, for he says that 'others called ground-rockets have a serpentine motion and on striking the ground rise again and bound along till their force be spent'.

[d] The story has been told many times, as by Corréard (1); Gibbs-Smith (10); Brock (2); Hime (1); Winter (3); Baker (1), pp. 13 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 69 ff., pp. 93 ff., (2). pp. 30 ff.; Reid (1), pp. 184, 186; Katafiasz (1).

[e] As he himself tells us in his introduction; Congreve (3), p. 15.

[f] Brock (2), pp. 158 ff. Other armies soon followed suit, e.g. those of Austria, Russia, Switzerland, Mexico and Bengal.

[g] The Congreve rockets went up to 32 lb. with balancing poles 16 ft long, and carried incendiary, explosive or shrapnel war-heads; their range could exceed 3000 yards. They were fired from tripod launchers, or from specially graded ramps in fortifications, or from 'scuttles' within the hulls of ships. Cf. Congreve (1, 2).

SKETCHES

CHIEFLY RELATING TO THE

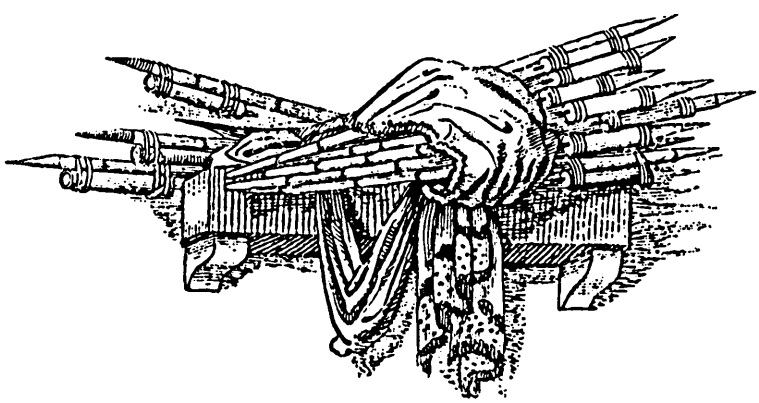
HISTORY, RELIGION, LEARNING, AND MANNERS,

OF THE

HINDOOS.

WITH

A concise Account of the PRESENT STATE of the NATIVE POWERS of HINDOSTAN.



LONDON:

PRINTED FOR T. CADELL, IN THE STRAND.

MDCCXC.

Fig. 218. A pile of Indian rocket-arrows seen in a cut on the title-page of the book of Quintin Craufurd (1).

single *bouche-à-feu*'. Moreover, rockets carried their own recoil, as it were, with them, so that they were particularly suitable on shipboard for naval actions. In due course the Rocket Brigade saw a great deal of service,[a] including a considerable role at the Battle of Leipzig in 1813[b] and even a presence at Waterloo two years later. As time went on, further improvements were made, such as the invention of the spinning 'rotary' rockets (which needed no stick) by William Hale about 1840,[c] and these were used during the American–Mexican war of 1846–8. But the Achilles' heel of all the early nineteenth-century military rockets was their great inaccuracy of delivery, especially at long ranges,[d] as that after the thirties of the century the steadily increasing precision of conventional artillery and small-arms led to their virtual disappearance.[e] By 1850 the Rocket Brigades of most countries had been disbanded.

It was natural that rockets figured on both sides in China during the Opium Wars.[f] Stores of rocket-arrows were found when the Tinghai forts of Choushan were captured in 1840.[g] In the following year at Anson's Bay Congreve rockets were used, one of which set fire to the largest war-junk there, which blew up with all her crew on board.[h] A dozen years later, in the Canton River, in 1856, Admiral Kennedy wrote that 'as a rule the Chinese rockets did little harm, as often as not doubling back from whence they came', but 'one of our cutters was struck by a rocket, which burnt a large hole in her'.[i] Thus did the rockets of Europe contend with those of China seven hundred years after their first invention there.[j]

So now in our concluding discussion we come to the present century and the modern period, on which we must be very brief, even though advances almost incredible have been made. Neither the Chinese nor the British of the Opium Wars could have imagined it, but there is in fact only one vehicle known to man that can be navigated more easily in the vacuum of outer space than in our own

[a] Incendiary attacks, all too successful, occurred at Boulogne (1806), Copenhagen (1807), Callao (1809), Cadiz (1810), Washington and Baltimore (1814) hence the 'rocket's red glare' of F. Scott Key's poem; Danzig (1813), Algiers (1816) and Rangoon (1824).

[b] Cf. Whinyates (1).

[c] Hale (1); Winter (2); Taylor (1), p. 9; Baker (1), p. 14; von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 78, (2), p. 33.

[d] This was seen particularly clearly by Scoffern (1) in 1852. It accounts for their sparse use in the American Civil War (1861–5). There were also storage problems. Attempts were made to improve rockets, as by Boxer (1) in 1855, using two-stage ones, but these found permanent use only in life-saving equipment (p. 506 above), and for signalling, and whaling.

[e] They continued in use, however, in a sporadic fashion, in colonial African wars until the end of the nineteenth century (von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 116 ff.). Here psychological effect was more important than actual destruction. Indeed, they might be said to live again in the anti-tank bazookas of contemporary times (Baker (1), p. 66; Reid (1), pp. 257–9; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 94 ff.)

[f] The first encounter of Europeans with Chinese war-rockets had occurred much earlier, in +1637, according to the journal of Peter Mundy, noted by Winter (5), p. 15. At 'Tayfoo' or Tiger Island, not far from Hongkong, a Chinese naval defence vessel assailed the English ship in that year. 'Balles of wyldefire, rocketts and fire-arrows flew thicke as they passed by us; butt God be praised, not one of us were toutched.'

[g] Jocelyn (1), p. 59.

[h] Ouchterlony (1), pp. 98–9.

[i] Kennedy (1), p. 51. His estimate of their inaccuracy may have been an exaggeration.

[j] Other descriptions will be found in Bingham (1), vol. 1, p. 345; Bernard (1), vol. 2, p. 20.

domestic atmosphere. This is the rocket, though far greater than those they knew. Jet-propulsion covers other engines, such as turbo-jets and ram-jets,[a] as well as rockets, but all the former need to take in air at the front so that it can burn the fuel and produce the exhaust that rushes out through the rear nozzle. The rocket alone needs no air to feed on, and carries within itself the oxidant and fuel necessary for combustion and the production of a powerful stream of exhaust gases. As a jet reaction motor it is thus absolutely independent of a surrounding atmosphere, and indeed in airless space it becomes much more efficient since it is free from the drag and resistance of a material medium. Moreover, its thrust is independent of its actual forward speed, and it gives full thrust at all altitudes, even in the near vacuum of space. With what amazement Chiao Yü or Mao Yuan-I would have learnt these things, could they have known of them. The rocket has been called the oldest of all practical heat-engines, yet the liquid-propellant type which is its modern form uses some of the most advanced engineering techniques and materials at present known.[b]

The words of this last sentence have taken us across a decisive step—beyond the classical solid charge of gunpowder. That notable mixture had its oxygen built in, as it were, but in the course of time it became clear that separately carried supplies of oxidant and fuel, held apart and combusted in an ignition chamber, would give far safer conditions and immeasurably more powerful thrusts. This was the gateway (it would not be too much to write) to the moon, the planets and the stars. The modern period of liquid propellants was ushered in by two great pioneers, a Russian and an American, and two engineer-propagandists, a German-Hungarian who worked in Rumania, and a Frenchman. The first we have had occasion to mention already (p. 506); he was Konstantin Eduardovitch Tsiolkovsky (1857 to 1936), a mathematician of deep insight, who was probably the first to work out the theory of rocket flight, and

[a] The history of jet-propulsion as such is a different question. As a principle it must have been obvious from the movements of coelenterates and cephalopods, but mankind seems to take many centuries to see the obvious. At an earlier point (Vol. 4, pt. 2, pp. 163–4, 575–6) we discussed possible explanations of the flying automata ascribed to many ancient thaumaturgical artisans, notably Archytas of Tarentum (*fl.* −380), the Alexandrian mechanicians, and Chang Hêng himself (*c.* +125); who might conceivably have used jet-streams of compressed air or steam, as Heron unquestionably did in his aeolipile (*ibid.* pp. 226, 407). Han Chih-Ho (+890) was almost too early for gunpowder, though Regiomontanus (*c.* +1450) could have used it. On Archytas and Regiomontanus see Duhem (1), pp. 125–8, 290 ff.

Duhem also tells us (pp. 295 ff.) of the Jesuit Honoratus Faber, who in +1669 proposed a flying-machine driven by a jet of air compressed by men working a pump inside. This idea was apparently continued in a notorious design by the Brazilian Jesuit Bartholomeu Lourenço de Gusmão, to which Duhem (1), pp. 297, 418 ff., (2), pp. 140 ff. has given minute attention. Then in +1715 Marc-Antoine Legrand turned to steam as the vapour to be employed in his jets (Duhem (1), p. 298). It is not quite clear how serious all these ideas were, but they certainly had a post-Renaissance character, and we have no Chinese parallels for them. In any case, the principle had no practical application until modern times, when large quantities of combustible fuel could be carried on board airplanes to provide the exhaust gases and their thrust.

It is interesting that we have a familiar example of the jet-principle, two thousand years after the aeolipile, in Segener's rotating garden-lawn water-sprinkler (Ley (2), p. 84).

[b] This paragraph is based on some formulations of Humphries (1) and Gibbs-Smith (10). Cf. Malina (1) and Anon. (161), vol. 1, pp. 578–9.

proposed as fuel liquid oxygen and kerosene or liquid hydrogen.[a] But if Tsiolkovsky can now be called the father of rocket motor science, the father of rocket motor engineering was the American, Robert H. Goddard (1882 to 1945),[b] also a university professor, who worked for many years from 1907 onwards with dogged concentration and very limited support in search of the means of reaching 'infinite altitudes' beyond the earth's atmosphere.[c] The world's first liquid-fuel rocket[d] was successfully launched by him in March 1926, and four years later a height of 2000 ft was attained. The one who wrote in German was Hermann Oberth (1894 to 1982),[e] who was associated with the Verein f. Raumschifffahrt (Space-Flight Society)[f] founded in 1927 and taken over by the Nazis in 1934.[g] They changed the name of the Verein's A 4 to the now universally known V 2, and it was one of these vehicles which was the first to leave earth's atmosphere and reach airless outer space in October 1942, at an altitude of 52 miles.[h] Lastly the French contributor was Robert Esnault-Pelterie, who was active and widely read in the late twenties and early thirties of the present century.[i]

Long before this time of course the gunpowder rocket had become a commonplace, universally familiar in pyrotechny. Congreve rockets had lingered on till almost the end of the nineteenth century, and they had acquired a tried and tested place for life-saving at sea, as also for averting hailstorms (cf. p. 528 below) from 1900 onwards. But rocket-borne aerial photography was being replaced by airplane cameras, rocket signalling was superseded by radio, war-rockets were almost entirely out-matched by more accurate artillery, and there was only a limited scope in World War I for rockets carrying Verey lights or making smoke-screens. It seemed as though there was little future for the use of rockets in war. And indeed we are told that the main aim of the German Verein was originally the designing of meteorological rockets.[j]

Now it is a remarkable fact that the whole of the new movement, the study of liquid propellants, derived not from military rocketry, nor from traditional pyrotechnics, but rather from the idea of the 'plurality of worlds', and the con-

[a] See von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 121 ff.; Baker (1), pp. 17 ff. His works have been translated into English (1–4). Cf. Petri (7).

[b] See Baker (1), pp. 22 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 43 ff.; Ley (2), pp. 106 ff.; Taylor (1), pp. 16–18.

[c] His classical papers came in 1919 and 1936; cf. Goddard (1, 2).

[d] Using liquid oxygen and petrol.

[e] See Ley (2), pp. 113ff.; Baker (1), pp. 27ff.; Taylor (1), pp. 16–18. For his influential books, Oberth (1, 2).

[f] Ley (2), pp. 121 ff. He was later at the Peenemünde base, where the German war-rockets were developed; cf. Ley (2), pp. 184 ff., 204 ff. He alone lived to see the Cape Canaveral operations.

[g] Cf. von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 139; Taylor (1), p. 21.

[h] This 46-ft rocket was driven by liquid oxygen and ethyl alcohol, led to the combustion chamber by turbo-pumps working on steam formed from hydrogen peroxide catalysed with sodium permanganate. See Ley (2), p. 226; von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 147; Taylor (1), p. 22.

[i] See Esnault-Pelterie (1, 2). There were other names of some honour in this roll-call too. Nikolai Ivanovitch Kibalchich (d. 1882) developed the idea of vectored thrust, i.e. the swivelling of exhaust nozzles to change the direction of the rocket's flight-path. Hans Ganswindt, active about a decade later, designed (long ahead of its time) a reaction-powered space-ship. And Eugen Sänger continued the movement in the thirties. On these see Baker (1), p. 15; Ley (2), pp. 91 ff.

[j] Ley (2), pp. 169 ff. Cf. pp. 527 ff. below.

viction that reaction-motors were the only way that man could ever take to reach them. Goddard stands in a line of descent, not from Chiao Yü, Tipū Sahib and Congreve, but rather from Chang Hêng,[a] Lucian and de Fontenelle. At an earlier moment[b] we found a good deal to say about the role of Chinese thought in the dissolution of those so long dominant European notions, the Aristotelian crystalline celestial spheres, and the perfection and immutability of the heavens, after it became known in the West through the Jesuit mission in the +17th and +18th centuries.[c] Lucian's *True History* of the men in the moon, with Cicero's *Somnium Scipionis*, were written before these doctrines had become riveted on the world-view of Christendom, but in the +17th century Europe broke free, and a whole succession of writers described extra-terrestrial voyages.[d] Thus one could say that the Chinese invention of the rocket, coming to Europe in the +14th century, was complemented by Chinese ideas about infinite empty space which reached Europe by the end of the +16th.[e]

Indeed, as Schafer has put it, 'Tours of space were a commonplace in ancient China.'[f] Accounts of them[g] long preceded Chang Hêng; in the *Lun Hêng*[2], for instance (+83), we find one about a Taoist, Hsiang Man-Tu[3], who spent some years on the moon.[h] Recently, Cadorna (1) has translated one of the Tunhuang manuscripts in the Stein Collection[i] which tells how a famous Taoist astronautical master, Yeh Ching-Nêng[4], conducted the Thang emperor Hsüan Tsung, about +718, to view the palaces of the moon.[j] As Schafer says,[k] 'The great palace of the moon ... though not the abode of any deity of the first rank, was often rather fully portrayed in Chinese, both in poetry and prose, especially as a palace of ice crystals', an intensely cold, angular, crystalline, brittle habitation of extraordinary spirits, like, yet unlike, men. In spite of the appearance of

[a] The great +2nd-century astronomer himself wrote, in his *Ssu Hsüan Fu*[1], of an imaginary journey beyond the sun.

[b] Vol. 3, pp. 438 ff.

[c] There is an interesting recent book by Dick (1) on the notion of the plurality of worlds, though it ignores the role of Chinese thought in the liberation of European ideas.

[d] One need only name Francis Godwin, John Wilkins, F.R.S., Daniel Defoe and Miles Wilson. The genre of scientific romances has been brilliantly reviewed by Nicolson (1, 2). At the same time the ancient works, which had lain dormant during the millennium of dominance, were revived and broadened men's thinking once again.

[e] The case is reminiscent of some others previously encountered. For example, it has been said that 'just as Chinese gunpowder helped to shatter European feudalism [after the +15th century], so Chinese stirrups had originally helped to set it up' (Needham (47), pp. 286–9).

[f] (26), pp. 234 ff., cf. (27). Generally we are not told very much about the nature of the vehicles employed, and the extra-terrestrial travel is often magical, but the point is that for the ancient and medieval Chinese it was in no way unthinkable.

[g] Doubtless arising in the first place from the magic flights of shamans; cf. Vol. 2, pp. 132, 141; Vol. 4, pt. 2, pp. 568 ff.

[h] Tr. Forke (4), vol. 1, pp. 340–1. Wang Chhung[5] of course didn't believe it.

[i] S 6836. An earlier translation was that of Waley (31), pp. 139 ff.

[j] The same story is in the *Tao Tsang*'s *Thang Yeh Chen Jen Chuan*[6] (Biography of the Perfected Sage Yeh of the Thang), *TT* 771.

[k] (26), pp. 194–5.

[1] 思玄賦 [2] 論衡 [3] 項曼都 [4] 葉淨能 [5] 王充
[6] 唐葉眞人傳

some lunar beauties, the emperor could not stand the cold, and begged to be taken back home, which Master Yeh duly did.

In the nineteenth century all these traditions crystallised into what we now call science fiction, on which there is a large descriptive literature,[a] and it was works of this kind which, on their own explicit statements, had the greatest influence on the pioneers of modern rocketry. Reaction-motors, to be sure, were not the only means of inter-stellar flight envisaged;[b] there were also imaginary anti-gravity substances,[c] and of course great cannon pointing to the stars.[d] Tsiolkovsky was inspired by Eyraud, Jules Verne, Dumas and Greg; Goddard and Oberth in addition by Lasswitz and H. G. Wells. And not only was the cosmic navigational tradition primarily responsible; it would also be justifiable to say that the military rocket-missiles of World War II and subsequently were a spin-off or by-product of the peaceful urge for space research and exploration. May it be granted that the former do not overwhelm the latter.

In due course all the pioneers of liquid-fuel rocket flight were sucked into the maw of military preparations. Goddard was eventually aided by the American army and navy development establishment (1918), while the Verein's Berlin Raketenflugplatz was supported by the German military from 1932 onwards.[e] Four years later GALCIT[f] was formed, under the direction of Theodore von Kármán,[g] with Frank Malina and Chhien Hsüeh-Sên[1] among its staff;[h] significantly it became ORDCIT[i] in 1945, and applied itself almost entirely to war missiles. Among its achievements was the use of red fuming nitric acid and aniline or benzene as the self-igniting liquids;[j] as also the development of strange solid propellants such as mixtures of asphalt or polyurethane and potassium perchlorate, or sodium nitrate with ammonium picrate.[k] Other liquid propellants used today are fluorine, tetranitromethane, liquid ammonia, hydrazine hydrate, boron hydride, etc.[l] If the Russian 'Katyusha' and 'Stalin organ' war-rockets were so effective in World War II it was because they no longer used gunpowder charges, but rather guncotton[m] and nitroglycerine, still generally

[a] Cf. Flammarion (1); Ley (2), p. 41; Morgan (1); Anon. (162); Darko Suvin (1).

[b] But these occur in Achille Eyraud's *Voyage à Vénus* (1865) and Kurt Lasswitz' *Auf Zwei Planeten* (1908).

[c] As in Percy Greg's *Across the Zodiac* (1880) and H. G. Wells' *The First Men in the Moon* (1901). His *War of the Worlds* had appeared three years earlier.

[d] Here of course the type-specimen is Jules Verne's *De la Terre à la Lune* (1865). In the same year Alexandre Dumas wrote a novel with almost the same title.

[e] Taylor (1), p. 21; von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 138. Von Braun, Oberth and Ley, with many others, were all appropriated by the American rocketry organisation at the end of World War II.

[f] The Guggenheim Aeronautical Laboratory of the California Institute of Technology. On it see Malina (2, 5); Baker (1), pp. 2 ff.; Ley (3); von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 84–5.

[g] Cf. Wattendorf & Malina (1).

[h] Alternatively, Tsien Hsue-Shen. Other Chinese scientists also worked there, notably W. Z. Chien and C. C. Lin.

[i] Ordnance Department Laboratory of the California Institute of Technology. See Malina (3, 4): Baker (1), pp. 73 ff.

[j] Ley (3).

[k] Humphries (1), p. 26; Anon. (161), vol. 1, pp. 580–1, vol. 2, pp. 363–4.

[l] Cf. Clark (1); Parker (1); Humphries (1), p. 40; Anon. (161), vol. 2, pp. 362–3.

[m] Nitrocellulose was discovered by Schönbein as long ago as 1845.

[1] 錢學森

with chemically built-in oxygen.[a] If the Russians were the first to launch a successful earth satellite (1957) and the first to put a man (Yuri Gagarin) into space (1961), it was perhaps because of their heavy atomic war-head payloads, which necessitated enormous rockets.[b] Yet nuclear energy may well be the ultimate answer to the demands of jet-propulsion for space-flight.[c] So here again we touch upon a paradox already mentioned (p. 506 above) that the very engines which would be capable of destroying civilisation itself are the same great rocket-motors as those which are opening the way to the planets and the stars.[d] It is common knowledge that space probes such as 'Mariner' have been sent out all over the solar system since 1962.[e] And finally the first Chinese artificial satellite went up in 1970, from the rocket's very homeland,[f] since when there have been at least eight more.

In the end the rocket motor could be the means of the preservation of the human race itself, removing it to other habitations as the sun of our solar system cools or overheats.[g] It might turn out that the rocket was the greatest single invention ever made by man. So in spite of all the perils of guided rocket missiles still impending, those Chinese who first experimented successfully with 'flying meteoric ground-rats', though we may never know their names, have been extraordinary benefactors of humanity, and citizens of no mean city.

(20) Peaceful Uses of Gunpowder

Since our mind has been running so much on rockets in the preceding pages, it will make an easy transition to begin with those same devices applied to religious observance and weather control, as also the exploration of the earth's upper atmosphere. Then we can go on to consider the even more universal role

[a] Taylor (1), pp. 23–5; Ley (2), pp. 190 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (1), p. 160; Popescu (1).

[b] Von Braun & Ordway (1), pp. 162, 176; Taylor (1), pp. 92, 144 ff.; Popescu (1). The American 'Apollo' moon landings followed from early 1963 onwards (Baker (1), pp. 165 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 172, 218–19). Fig. 219.

[c] Humphries (1), p. 194; Anon. (161), vol. 2, pp. 366–7.

[d] Sokolsky (1) takes the story to 1974, Buedeler (1) to 1979, and Cornelisse, Schöyer & Wakker (1) to 1981. Here we reach the truly professional level of current research. The reader equipped with mathematical, chemical or metallurgical expertise will find whole series of collective volumes which discuss the latest advances in our knowledge. For example, there is *Progress in Astronautics and Rocketry*, which began in 1960 and numbers some fifty volumes at the present time; all under the aegis of the American Rocket Society.

[e] Taylor (1), pp. 146 ff.; von Braun & Ordway (2), pp. 164 ff.; Baker (1), pp. 135 ff.; Ley & von Braun (1).

[f] The two-stage motors burnt dimethyl hydrazine as fuel and nitrogen tetroxide as oxidiser; they could reach at least 4000 miles in surface-to-surface flight, and with a third stage could put a satellite into geostationary orbit at an altitude of some 23,000 miles. Cf. Hewish (1); Anon. (163).

New launches of space rockets have taken place in 1982 (*Jen Min Jih Pao*, 14 Jan. reprinted in *CKKCSL*, 1982, no. 2, 90). And a submarine-based carrier rocket was successfully tested in October (*China Pictorial*, 1983, no. 1). On China's first communications satellite, lofted by a three-stage rocket on 16 April 1984, see Yang Wu-Min (1).

[g] Today the rocket vehicle looms very large in the imagination of all those who are conscious of the vastness of our universe, and inspires the engaging fantasies of eminent scientific men. For example, Francis Crick (1), the molecular biologist, finding difficulty in accounting for the origin of life on earth, imagines a rocket spacecraft which could have brought it (in the form of eukaryote bacteria) billions of years ago, from some other civilisation in our own, or some other, galaxy. Of course, this 'directed panspermia' only puts the problem back another remove.

BIBLIOGRAPHIES

A CHINESE AND JAPANESE BOOKS BEFORE + 1800

B CHINESE AND JAPANESE BOOKS AND JOURNAL ARTICLES SINCE + 1800

C BOOKS AND JOURNAL ARTICLES IN WESTERN LANGUAGES

In Bibliographies A and B there are two modifications of the Roman alphabetical sequence: transliterated *Chh-* comes after all other entries under *Ch-*, and transliterated *Hs-* comes after all other entries under *H-*. Thus *Chhen* comes after *Chung* and *Hsi* comes after *Huai*. This system applies only to the first words of the titles. Moreover, where *Chh-* and *Hs-* occur in words used in Bibliography C, i.e. in a Western language context, the normal sequence of the Roman alphabet is observed.

When obsolete or unusual romanisations of Chinese words occur in entries in Bibliography C, they are followed, wherever possible, by the romanisations adopted as standard in the present work. If inserted in the title, these are enclosed in square brackets; if they follow it, in round brackets. When Chinese words or phrases occur romanised according to the Wade–Giles system or related systems, they are assimilated to the system here adopted (cf. Vol. 1, p. 26) without indication of any change. Additional notes are added in round brackets. The reference numbers do not necessarily begin with (1), nor are they necessarily consecutive, because only those references required for this volume of the series are given.

Korean and Vietnamese books and papers are included in Bibliographies A and B. As explained in Vol. 1, pp. 21 ff., reference numbers in italics imply that the work is in one or other of the East Asian languages.

ABBREVIATIONS

See also p. xxiv

A	*Archeion*
AA	*Artibus Asiae*
AAA	*Archaeologia*
AAAG	*Annals of the Assoc. of American Geographers*
AAN	*American Anthropologist*
AAS	*Arts Asiatiques* (continuation of *Revue des Arts Asiatiques*)
ACANT	*Archaeologia Cantiana*
ACASA	*Archives of the Chinese Art Soc. of America*
ACP	*Annales de Chimie et Physique*
ACSS	*Annual of the China Society of Singapore*
ACTAS	*Acta Asiatica* (*Bull. of Eastern Culture*, Tōhō Gakkai, Tokyo)
ADVS	*Advancement of Science* (British Assoc. London)
AEHW	*Archiv. f. d. Eisenhüttenwesen*
AER	*Acta Eruditorum* (Leipzig, 1682 to 1731)
AGNT	*Archiv. f. d. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. u. d. Technik* (cont. as *AGMNT*)
AGWG/PH	*Abhdl. d. Gesell. d. Wiss. z. Göttingen* (Phil.-Hist. Kl.)
AHES/AESC	*Annales; Economies, sociétés, civilisations*
AHSNM	*Acta Historica Scientiarum Naturalium et Medicinalium*
AIMSS	*Annali dell'Istituto e Museo di Storia della Scienza* (Florence)
AJOP	*Amer. Journ. Physiol.*
AJP	*American Journ. Philology*
AJSC	*American Journ. Science and Arts* (Silliman's)
AM	*Asia Major*
ANA	*All-Nippon Airways In-Flight Magazine*
ANTIQ	*The Antiquary*
ANTJ	*Antiquaries Journal*
APAW/PH	*Abhandlungen d. preuss. Akad. Wiss. Berlin* (Phil.-Hist. Klasse)
AP/HJ	*Historical Journal, National Peiping Academy*
ARAB	*Arabica*
ARIL	*Atti* (*Annale*) *delli reale Istituto Lombardo*
ARJ	*Archaeological Journal*
ARLC/DO	*Annual Reports of the Librarian of Congress* (Division of Orientalia)
ARMA	*Armi Antiche* (Bull. dell'Accad. di San Marciano), Turin
ARO	*Archiv Orientalní* (Prague)
ARSI	*Annual Reports of the Smithsonian Institution*
ARUSNM	*Annual Reports of the U.S. National Museum*
AQ	*Antiquity*
AQR	*Asiatic Quarterly Review*
AS/BIHP	*Bulletin of the Institute of History and Philology, Academia Sinica*
ASKR	*Asiatick Researches* (Calcutta, 1788 to 1839)
ASTRA	*Astronautica Acta*
AX	*Ambix*
B	*Byzantion*
BAU	*Belleten Ankara Univ.*
BGP	*Bulletin Catholique de Pékin*
BE/AMG	*Bibliographie d'Études* (*Annales du Musée Guimet*)
BEC	*Bulletin de l'École des Chartes* (Paris)
BEDM	*Boletim Ecclesiástico da Diocese de Macao*
BEFEO	*Bulletin de l'École Française de l'Extrême Orient* (Hanoi)
BEO/IFD	*Bull. Études Orientales* (*Institut Français de Damas*)
BGTI	*Beiträge z. Gesch. d. Technik u. Industrie* (cont. as *Technik Geschichte*; see *BGTI/TG*)
BGTI/TG	*Technik Geschichte* (see above)
BLM	*Blackwood's Magazine*
BLSOAS	*Bulletin of the London School of Oriental and African Studies*
BMFEA	*Bulletin of the Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities* (Stockholm)
BMQ	*British Museum Quarterly*
BSRCA	*Bull. Soc. Research in Chinese Architecture*
BV	*Bharatiya Vidya* (Bombay)
BYZ	see *B*
BZJ	*Bonner Zeitschrift f. Japanologie*
CA	*Chemical Abstracts*
CAMR	*Cambridge Review*
CCL	*Chê Chiang Lu* (Biographies of Chinese Engineers, Architects, Technologists and Master-Craftsmen, by Chu Chhi-Chhien and collaborators, q.v. [a series, not a journal].)
CHEM	*Chemistry* (Easton, Pa.)
CHI	*Cambridge History of India*
CHJ	*Chhing-Hua Hsüeh Pao* (*Chhing-Hua* (*Ts'ing-Hua*) *University Journal of Chinese Studies*)
CHYM	*Chymia*
CHZ	*Chemiker Zeitung*
CIB	*China Institute Bulletin* (New York)

CJ — *China Journal of Science and Arts*
CKHW — *Chung-Kuo Hsin Wên* (= NCNA Bulletin)
CKKCSL — *Chung-Kuo Kho Chi Shih Liao*
CMS — *Chartered Mechanical Engineer*
CR — *China Review* (HongKong and Shanghai)
CRAS — *Comptes Rendus de l'Académie des Sciences* (Paris)
CREC — *China Reconstructs*
DCRI — *Bulletin of the Deccan College Research Institute* (Poona)
DHT — *Documents pour l'histoire des Techniques* (Paris)
DI — *Die Islam*
EAST — *The East*
EG — *Economic Geology*
EHR — *Economic History Review*
EMJ — *Engineering and Mining Journal*
ESA — *Eurasia Septentrionalis Antiqua*
ESCI — *Engineering and Science*
ETH — *Ethnos*
FCLT — *Fu-Chien Lan Than* (*Fukien Forum*)
FEQ — *Far Eastern Quarterly* (continued as *Journal of Asian Studies*)
FSH — *Fuji Chikurni Shokobutsu-en Hōkoku* (Bull. Fuji Bamboo Bot. Gdn.)
GLAD — *Gladius* (Études sur les Armes Anciennes, etc.)
GR — *Geographical Review*
GTIG — *Geschichtsblätter f. Technik, Industrie u. Gewerbe*
GUNC — *The Gun Collector* (U.S.A.)
GUND — *The Gun Digest*
HBAS — *Hauszeitschrift d. Badischen Anilin & Soda Fabrik AG*
HEM — *Hemisphere*
HHSTP — *Hua Hsüeh Thung Pao* (Chemical Intelligencer)
HJAS — *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*
HKH — *Hanguk Kwahaksa Hakhoechi* (Journ. Korean Hist. of Sci. Soc.)
HMM — *Harper's Monthly Magazine* (New York)
HORIZ — *Horizon* (New York)
HOSC — *History of Science* (annual)
HOT — *History of Technology* (annual)
IAE — *Internationales Archiv f. Ethnographie*
IAQ — *Indian Antiquary*
IDSR — *Interdisciplinary Science Reviews*
IHQ — *Indian Historical Quarterly*
ILN — *Illustrated London News*
ISIS — *Isis*
ISL — *Islam*
ISP/WSFK — *I Shih Pao* (*Wên Shih Fu Khan*); Literary Supplement of "Benefitting the Age" Periodical.
JA — *Journal asiatique*
JAAS — *Journal of the Arms and Armour Soc.*
JAAR — *Journ. Amer. Acad. Religion*
JAEROS — *Journ. Aeronautical Sciences*
JAHIST — *Journ. Asian History* (*International*)
JANS — *Journ. Astronautical Sciences*
JAOS — *Journal of the American Oriental Society*
JATMOS — *Journ. Atmospheric Science*
JCE — *Journal of Chemical Education*
JCR(M) — *Journ. Chem. Research* (Microfiches)
JCR(S) — *Journ. Chem. Research* (Synopses)
JEPH — *Journ. Ethnopharmacology*
JGLGA — *Jahrbuch d. Gesellschaft. f. löthringen Geschichte u. Altertumskunde*
JHAS — *Journ. Hist. Arabic Science*
JHPHARM — *Journ. Hist. Pharmacol.*
JMATS — *Journ. Materials Science*
JOP — *Journal of Physiology*
JOS/HK — *Journal of Oriental Studies* (Hongkong)
JOSA — *Journ. Oriental Soc. Australia*
JPOS — *Journal of the Peking Oriental Society*
JRA — *Journal of the Royal Artillery*
JRAES — *Journal of the Royal Aeronautical Society* (formerly *Aeronautical Journal*)
JRAI — *Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute*
JRAS — *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*
JRAS/B — *Journal of the* (*Royal*) *Asiatic Society of Bengal*
JRAS/HKB — *Journal of the Hong Kong Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*
JRAS/KB — *Journal* (or *Transactions*) *of the Korea Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*
JRAS/M — *Journal of the Malayan Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*
JRAS/NCB — *Journal of the North China Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*
JRI — *Journ. Royal Institution* (London)
JRUSI — *Journ. Royal United Services Institution* (London)
JS — *Journal des Savants*
JSCI — *Journ. Soc. Chem. Industry*
JSHS — *Japanese Studies in the History of Science* (Tokyo)
JWCBRS — *Journal of the West China Border Research Society*
JWH — *Journal of World History* (UNESCO)
JWM — *Journ. Weather Modification*
KGZ — *Kahei Gakkai Zasshi* (Journ. Soc. Technol. Arms and Ammunition Manufacture)
KHCK — *Kuo Hsüeh Chi Khan* (Chinese Classical Quarterly)
KHNT — *Kwartalnik Historii Nauki i Techniki* (Warsaw)
KKPT — *Kertas-Kertas Pengajian Tionghua* (Papers on Chinese Studies, University of Malaya)
KKJL — *Khao-Ku Jen Lei Hsüeh Chi-Khan*

	(Bull. Dept. of Archaeol. and Anthropol. Univ. Thaiwan)
KKTH	*Khao Ku Thung Hsün* (Archaeological Correspondent)
KKWW	*Khao-Ku yü Wên-Wu Chi Khan* (Journ. Cultural Archaeology)
KJ	*Korea Journal*
KMJP	*Kuang Ming Jih Pao*
KS	*Keleti Szemle* (Budapest)
KYHY	*Kung Yeh Huo Yao Hsieh Hui Chih* (Journ. of the Japanese Gunpowder Industry Association)
LHHP	*Li Hsüeh Hsüeh Pao* (Journal of Physics)
LI	*Listener* (B.B.C.)
LIFE	*Life* (New York)
LN	*La Nature*
LSCY	*Li Shih Yen Chiu* (Pkg.) J. Historical Research
MA	*Man*
MAF	*Mémorial de l'Artillerie de France*
MAI/NEM	*Mémorial de l'Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres*, Paris (Notices et Extraits des MSS.)
MART	*Memorial de Artilleria* (Madrid)
MAS/MPDS	*Mémoires de Mathématique et de Physique presentés à l'Académie Royale des Sciences* (Paris) *par Divers Sçavans et lus dans les Assemblées*
MBLB	*May & Baker Laboratory Bulletin*
MCHSAMUC	*Mémoires concernant l'Histoire, les Sciences, les Arts, les Mœurs et les Usages, des Chinois, par les Missionaires de Pékin* (Paris 1776–)
MC/TC	*Techniques et Civilisations* (originally *Métaux et Civilisations*)
MDGNVO	*Mitteilungen d. deutsch. Gesellschaft f. Natur. u. Volkskunde Ostasiens*
MEM	*Meteorological Magazine*
MGK	*Manshū Gakuhō* (Dairen)
MIE	*Mémoires de l'Institut d'Egypte* (Cairo)
MIMG	*Mining Magazine*
MINGS	*Ming Studies*
MJ/UP	see *MUJ*
MMI	*Mariner's Mirror*
MMO	*Mammō* (Dairen)
MPCASP	*Mélanges de Phys. et Chim. de l'Acad. de St. Petersbourg*
MRAS/P	*Mémoires de l'Académie des Sciences* (Paris)
MS	*Monumenta Serica*
MSOS	*Mitteilungen d. Seminar f. orientalischen Sprachen* (Berlin)
MUJ	*Museum Journal* (Philadelphia)
N	*Nature*
NCR	*New China Review*
NFR	*Nat. Fireworks Review*
NGM	*National Geographic Magazine*
NJKA	*Neue Jahrbücher f. d. klass. Altertum, Geschichte, deutsch. Literatur u. f. Pädagogik*
NKKZ	*Nihon Kagaku Koten Zensho*
NR	*Numismatic Review*
NS	*New Scientist*
NTM	*Schriftenreihe f. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. Technik, u. Med.* (East Germ.)
NYR	*New Yorker*
NYTHP	*Nan-Yang Ta-Hsüeh Hsüeh Pao* (Nanyang Univ. Journal, Singapore)
OAZ	*Ostasiatische Zeitung*
OLZ	*Orientalische Literatur-Zeitung*
OPO	*Oriente Poliano*
OR	*Oriens*
ORA	*Oriental Art*
ORD	*Ordnance*
ORE	*Oriens Extremus*
ORG	*Organon* (Warsaw)
OV	*Orientalia Venetiana*
PAA	*Progress in Astronautics and Aeronautics*
PAAAS	*Proceedings of the British Academy*
PAE	*Propellants and Explosives*
PAR	*Parabola* (*Myth and the Quest for Meaning*)
PFEH	*Papers on Far Eastern History* (Canberra)
PKCS	*Pai Kho Chih Shih* (Peking)
PKR	*Peking Review*
PP	*Past and Present*
PRAI	*Proc. Royal Artillery Institution* (contd. as JRA)
PRS	*Proceedings of the Royal Society*
PTRS	*Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society*
PVS	*Preuves* (Paris)
QJRMS	*Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society*
QJSLA	*Quart. Journ. Science, Literature and the Arts* (cont. as *JRI, Journ. Roy. Inst.*)
QSGNM	*Quellen u. Studien z. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. u. d. Medizin*
RBS	*Revue Bibliographique de Sinologie*
RC	*Revista de Universidade de Coimbra* (Portugal)
RDI	*Rivista d'Ingegneria*
RDM	*Revue des Mines* (later *Revue Universelle des Mines*)
REA	*Revue des Études Anciennes*
REG	*Revue des Études Grecques*
RHSID	*Revue d'Histoire de la Sidérurgie* (Nancy)
ROC	*Revue de l'Orient Chrétien*
ROL	*Revue de l'Orient Latin*
RQS	*Revue des Questions Scientifiques* (Brussels)

RRH — *Revue Roumaine d'Histoire* (Bucarest)
RROWC — *Research Reports of the Okasaki Women's Junior College*, near Nagoya
RTPT — *Revista Transporturilor* (Rumania)

SA — *Sinica* (originally *Chinesische Blätter f. Wissenschaft u. Kunst*)
SAM — *Scientific American*
SARCH — *Sovietskaya Archaeologia*
SBAW/PP & H — *Sitzungsberichte d. Bayerischen Akad. d. Wiss./Philos.-Philol. u. Hist. Kl.*
SCIS — *Sciences* (Paris)
SCSML — *Smith College Studies in Modern Languages*
SE — *Stahl und Eisen*
SHHH — *Shih Hsüeh Hsiao Hsi*
SHKS — *Shê Hui Kho-Hsüeh* (Chhinghua Journ. Soc. Sci.)
SHS — *Studia Historica Slovaca*
SINRA — *Sinorama* (= *Kuang Hua*)
SINT — *Sbornik Istorii Nauki i Techniki* (Moscow)
SKSL — *Skrifter som udi det Kjøbenhavnske Selskab af Laerdoms...*
SMC — *Smithsonian (Institution) Miscellaneous Collections* (Quarterly Issue)
SMITH — *The Smithsonian* (Magazine)
SOF — *Studia Orientalia* (Fennica)
SP — *Speculum*
SPAW/PH — *Sitzungsber. d. preuss. Akad. d. Wissenschaften* (Phil.-Hist. Kl.)
SPCK — *Society for the Promotion of Christian Knowledge*
SPFL — *Spaceflight*
SPMSE — *Sitzungsberichte d. physik. med. Soc. Erlangen*
SRFAOU — *Science Reports of the Faculty of Agriculture of Okayama University*
SUJCAH — *Suchow University Journ. Chinese Art History*
SV — *Studi Veneziani*
STC — *Studi Colombiani*
SWAW/PH — *Sitzungsberichte d. k. Akad. d. Wissenschaften Wien* (Phil.-Hist. Klasse), Vienna

TAIME — *Trans. Amer. Inst. Mining Engineers* (cont. as *TAIMME*)
TAIMME — *Trans. Amer. Inst. Mining and Metallurgical Engineers*
TBG — *Tijdschrift van het Bataavsche Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen* (later incorporated in *Tijdschrift voor Indische Taal-Land-*, en *Volkskunde*)
TBGZ — *Tōkyō Butsuri Gakko Zasshi* (Journ. Tokyo College of Physics)
TCC — *Tzu Chin Chhêng* (*Forbidden City*) Hongkong
TCULT — *Technology and Culture*
TFIME — *Trans. Federated Institution of Mining Engineers* (cont. as *TIME*)
TFTC — *Tung Fang Tsa Chih* (*Eastern Miscellany*)
TG/K — *Tōhō Gakuhō, Kyōto* (*Kyoto Journal of Oriental Studies*)
TGUOS — *Transactions of the Glasgow University Oriental Society*
TH — *Thien Hsia Monthly* (Shanghai)
THSH — *Ta Hsüeh Shêng Huo*
TIME — *Transactions of the Institution of Mining Engineers*
TJKHSYC — *Tzu-Jan Khao-Hsüeh Shih Yen-Chiu*
TJPCF — *Tzu-Jan Pien Chêng Fa Thung Hsün* (Dialectics of Nature)
TK — *Tōyōshi Kenkyū* (Researches in Oriental History)
TNS — *Transactions of the Newcomen Society*
TP — *T'oung Pao* (*Archives concernant l'Histoire, les Langues, la Géographie, l'Ethnographie et les Arts de l'Asie Orientale*, Leiden)
TR — *Technology Review*
TSHU — *Tu Shu*

UC/PAAA — *Univ. of Calif./Publications in Amer. Arch. and Anth.*
UM — *Universal Magazine of Knowledge and Pleasure*
USNIP — *United States Naval Institute Proceedings*
UZWKL — *Universitas; Zeitschr. f. Wissenschaft, Kunst und Literatur*
VBGA — *Verhandlungen d. Berliner Gesellschaft f. Anth., Eth. und Vorgeschichte* (*see ZFE*)
VH — *Voprosy Historii* (Moscow)
VIAT — *Viator*
VK — *Vijnan Karmee*
VS — *Variétés Sinologiques*

W — *Weather*
WW — *Wén Wu*
WWTK — *Wên Wu Tshan Khao Tzu Liao* (Reference Materials for History and Archaeology)
WWTLTK — *Wên Wu Tzu Liao Tshung Khan*

YCHP — *Yenching Hsüeh Pao* (Yenching University Journal of Chinese Studies)
YJBM — *Yale Journal of Biology and Medicine*

ZAC — *Zeitschr. f. angewandte chemie*
ZDMG — *Zeitschrift d. deutsch. Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*
ZFE — *Zeitschr. f. Ethnol.* (see *VBGA*)
ZGSS — *Zeitschr. f. d. gesamte Schiess- und Sprengstoffwesen; Nitrocellulose*
ZHWK — *Zeitschrift. f. historische Wappenkunde* (cont. as *Zeitschr. f. hist. Wappen- und Kostumkunde*)

A. CHINESE AND JAPANESE BOOKS BEFORE +1800

Each entry gives particulars in the following order:
(*a*) title, alphabetically arranged, with characters;
(*b*) alternative title, if any;
(*c*) translation of title;
(*d*) cross-reference to closely related book, if any;
(*e*) dynasty;
(*f*) date as accurate as possible;
(*g*) name of author or editor, with characters;
(*h*) title of other book, if the text of the work now exists only incorporated therein; or, in special cases, references to sinological studies of it;
(*i*) references to translations, if any, given by the name of the translator in Bibliography C;
(*j*) notice of any index or concordance to the book if such a work exists;
(*k*) reference to the number of the book in the *Tao Tsang* catalgoue of Wieger (6), if applicable;
(*l*) reference to the number of the book in the *San Tsang* (Tripitaka) catalogues of Nanjio (1) and Takakusu & Watanabe, if applicable.

Words which assist in the translation of titles are added in round brackets.

Alternative titles or explanatory additions to the titles are added in square brackets.

It will be remembered (p. 305 above) that in Chinese indexes words beginning *Chh-* are all listed together after *Ch-*, and *Hs-* after *H-*, but that this applies to initial words of titles only.

Where there are any differences between the entries in these bibliographies and those in Vols. 1–4, the information here given is to be taken as more correct.

An interim list of references to the editions used in the present work, and to the *tshung-shu* collections in which books are available, has been given in Vol. 4, pt. 3, pp. 913 ff., and is available as a separate brochure.

ABBREVIATIONS

C/Han	Former Han.
E/Wei	Eastern Wei.
H/Han	Later Han.
H/Shu	Later Shu (Wu Tai).
H/Thang	Later Thang (Wu Tai).
H/Chin	Later Chin (Wu Tai).
S/Han	Southern Han (Wu Tai).
S/Phing	Southern Phing (Wu Tai).
J/Chin	Jurchen Chin.
L/Sung	Liu Sung.
N/Chou	Northern Chou.
N/Chhi	Northern Chhi.
N/Sung	Northern Sung (before the removal of the capital to Hangchow).
N/Wei	Northern Wei.
S/Chhi	Southern Chhi.
S/Sung	Southern Sung (after the removal of the capital to Hangchow).
W/Wei	Western Wei.

Chang Tzu-Yeh Tzhu Pu I 張子野詞補遺.
Remaining Additional Poetical Works of Chang Tzu-Yeh.
Sung, *c.* +1080.
Cheng Tzu-Yeh 張子野.

Chao Chung Lu 昭忠錄.
Book of Examples of Illustrious Loyalty.
Yuan, *c.* +1290.
Writer unknown.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 124.

Chao-Hua Hsien Chih 昭化縣志.
Gazetteer of Chao-hua (in Szechuan).
Chhing.
Chang Shao-Ling (ed.) 張紹齡.
Revised 1845, 1864.

Chao Hun 招魂.
The Calling Back of the Soul [perhaps a ritual ode].
Chou, *c.* −240.
Attrib. Sung Yü 宋玉.
Prob. by Ching Chhai (or Tsho) 景差.
Tr. Hawkes (1).

Chen Chi 陣紀.
Record of Army Drill and Tactics
Ming, *c.* +1546.
Ho Liang-Chhen 何良臣.

Chen-La Fêng Thu Chi 眞臘風土記.
Description of Cambodia.
Yuan, +1297.
Chou Ta-Kuan 周達觀.

Chen Yuan Miao Tao Yao Lüeh 眞元妙道要略.
Classified Essentials of the Mysterious Tao of the True Origin (of Things) [alchemy and chemistry].
Ascr. Chin, +3rd, but probably mostly Thang, +8th and +9th, at any rate after +7th as it quotes Li Chi.
Attrib. Chêng Ssu-Yuan 鄭思遠.
TT/917.

Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu 紀效新書.
A New Treatise on Military and Naval Efficiency.
Ming, +1560, pr. +1562, often repr.
Chhi Chi-Kuang 戚繼光.

Chi Jan
See *Chi Ni Tzu.*

Chia-Thai Kuei-Chi Chih 嘉泰會稽志.
Records of Kuei-Chi (Shao-hsing in Chekiang) during the Chia-Thai reign-period (+1201 to +1205).
Sung, not long after +1205.
Shih Hsiu 施宿.

Chiang-Nan Ching Lüeh 江南經略.
Military Strategies in Chiang-nan.
Ming, +1566.
Chêng Jo-Tsêng 鄭若曾.

Chien-Yen Tê-An Shou Yü Lu 建炎德安守禦錄.
An Account of the Defence and Resistance of Tê-an (City) in the Chien-Yen reign-period [+1127 to +1132], (by the Sung against the J/Chin).
Sung, +1172.
Liu Hsün 劉荀.
This book, now lost as such, was probably absorbed in that of the same name by Thang Tao (q.v.).
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 237.

Chien-Yen Tê-An Shou Yü Lu 建炎德安守禦錄.

Chien-Yen Tê-An Shou Yü Lu (cont.)
An Account of the Defence and Resistance of Tê-an (City) in the Chien-Yen reign-period [+1127 to +1132], (by the Sung against the J/Chin).
Sung, +1193.
Original name of the book by Thang Tao which was combined with the *Shou Chhêng Lu* as chs. 3 and 4 in +1225 (q.v.).
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 237.

Chih Shêng Lu 制勝錄.
Records of the Rules for Victory.
Ming, *c.* +1430.
Writer unknown.
Now extant only in quotations.

Chin Phing Mei 金瓶梅.
Golden Lotus [novel].
(Cf. *Hsü Chin Phing Mei*) Ming.
Writer unknown.
Tr. Egerton (1), Kuhn (2) (Miall). See Hightower (1), p. 95.

Chin Shih 金史.
History of the Chin (Jurchen) Dynasty [+1115 to +1234].
Yuan, *c.* +1345.
Tho-Tho (Toktaga) 脫脫 & Ouyang Hsüan 歐陽玄.
Yin-Tê Index, no. 35.

Chin Shih Pu Wu Chiu Shu Chüeh 金石簿五九數訣.
Explanation of the Inventory of Metals and Minerals according to the Numbers Five (Earth) and Nine (Metal) [catalogue of substances with provenances, including some from foreign countries].
Thang, perhaps *c.* +670 (contains a story relating to +664).
Writer unknown.
TT/900.

Chin Thang Chieh Chu Shih-erh Chhou 金湯借箸十二籌.
Twelve Suggestions for Impregnable Defence.
Ming, *c.* +1630.
Li Phan 李盤.
The first two words of the title recall the phrase *chin chhêng thang chhih*, adamantine walls and scalding moats, hence impregnable.

Ching Chhu Sui Shih Chi 荊楚歲時記.
Annual Folk Customs of the States of Ching and Chhu [i.e. of the districts corresponding to those ancient States; Hupei, Hunan and Chiangsi].
Prob. Liang, *c.* +550, but perhaps partly Sui, *c.* +610.
Tsung Lin 宗懍.
See des Rotours (1), p. cii.

Ching-Khang Chhuan Hsin Lu 靖康傳信錄.
Record of Events in the Ching-Khang reign-period [+1126, year of the fall of Khaifêng to the Chin Tartars].
Sung, *c.* +1130.
Li Kang 李綱.

Chiu Kuo Chih 九國志.
Historical Memoir on the Nine States (Wu, Nan Thang, Wu-Yüeh Chhien Shu, Hou Shu, Tung Han, Nan Han, Min, Chhu and Pei Chhu, in the Wu Tai Period).
Sung, *c.* +1064.
Lu Chen 路振.

Chiu Ming Shu 救命書.
See *Hsiang Ping Chiu Ming Shu* and *Shou Chhêng Chiu Ming Shu*.

Chu Chia Shen Phin Tan Fa 諸家神品丹法.
Methods of the Various Schools for Magical Elixir Preparations (an alchemical anthology).
Sung.
Mêng Yao-Fu 孟要甫 (Hsüan Chen Tzu) 玄眞子 and others.
TT/911

Chu Shih 麈史.
Conversations on Historical Subjects (lit. while yak's-tail fly-whisks are waving).
Sung, pref. +1115.
Wang Tê-Chhen 王得臣.

Chuang Lou Chi 妝樓記.
Records of the Ornamental Pavilion.
Wu Tai or Sung, *c.* +960.
Chang Pi 張泌.

Chung Hsi Pien Yung Ping 中西邊用兵.
Military Practice on the Central and Western (Fronts)
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Fang Pao-Yuan 方寶元.
Now extant only in quotations.

Chung Thang Shih Chi 中堂事記.
Personal Recollections of Affairs at the Court [of Khubilai Khan, +1260 and +1261].
Yuan, *c.* +1280.
Wang Yün 王惲.
Cf. H. Franke (20, 26)

Chhao Yeh Chhien Yen 朝野僉言.
Narratives of the Court and the Country.
Sung, +1126.
Hsia Shao-Tsêng 夏少曾.
Now extant only in quotations.

Chhê Chhung Thu 車銃圖.
Illustrated Account of Muskets, Field Artillery and Mobile Shields, etc. (Appendix to *Wo Chhing Thun Thien Chhê Chhung I* and *Pei Pien Thun Thien Chhê Chhung I*, q.v.)
Ming, *c.* +1585.
Chao Shih-Chên 趙士禎.
(In *I Hai Chu Chhen, i chi*, pt. 1 藝海珠塵, 乙集).

Chhêng Chai Chi 誠齋集.
Collected Writings of (Yang) Chhêng-Chai (Yang Wan-Li).
Sung, *c.* +1200.
Yang Wan-Li 楊萬里.

Chhi Hsiu Lei Kao 七修類稿.
Seven Compilations of Classified Manuscripts.
Ming, +1555 to +1567.
Lang Ying 郎瑛.

Chhi Hsiu Lei Kao (*cont.*)
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 106.

Chhi-tan Kuo Chih 契丹國志.
Memoir of the Liao (Chhi-tan Tartar Kingdom).
Sung & Yuan, mid. +13th century.
Yeh Lung-Li 葉隆禮.

Chhi Tung Yeh Yü 齊東野語.
Rustic Talks in Eastern Chhi.
Sung, *c.* +1290.
Chou Mi 周密.

Chhien Hung Chia Kêng Chih Pao Chi Chhêng 鉛汞甲庚至寶集成.
Complete Compendium on the Perfected Treasure of Lead, Mercury, Wood and Metal [with illustrations of alchemical apparatus].
On the translation of this title, cf. p. 116. Has been considered Thang +808; but perhaps more probably Wu Tai or Sung. Cf. p. 116.
Chao Nai-An 趙耐菴.
TT/912.

Chhien-Thang I Shih 錢塘遺事.
Memorabilia of Hangchow and the Chhien-thang River.
Yuan.
Liu I-Chhing 劉一清.

Chhing Hsiang Tsa Chi 青箱雜記.
Miscellaneous Record on Green Bamboo Tablets.
Sung, *c.* +1070.
Wu Chhu-Hou 吳處厚.

Chhing Shih Kao 清史稿.
Draft History of the Chhing Dynasty.
See Chao Erh-Hsün & Kho Shao-Min.

Chhing-Tai Chhou-Pan I-Wu Shih-Mo 清代籌辦夷務始末.
See Anon. (*212*).

Chhiu Chien Hsien-sêng Ta Chhüan Wên Chi 秋澗先生大全文集.
Complete Literary Works of Mr Autumn-Torrents [Wang Yün].
Yuan, *c.* +1304.
Wang Yün 王惲.
Cf. H. Franke (20, 26).

Chhiu Shêng Khu Hai 求生苦海.
Saving Souls from Hell.
Chhing, +18th.
Writer unknown.

Chhou Hai Thu Pien 籌海圖編.
Illustrated Seaboard Strategy and Tactics.
Ming, +1562. Repr. +1572, +1592, +1624, etc.
Chêng Jo-Tsêng 鄭若曾.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 223; Goodrich & Fang Chao-Ying (1), p. 204.

Chhu Tzhu 楚辭.
Elegies of Chhu (State) [or, Songs of the South].
Chou, *c.* −300 (with Han additions).
Chhü Yuan 屈原 (& Chia I 賈誼 Yen Chi 嚴忌 Sung Yü 宋玉 Huainan Hsiao-Shan 淮南小山 *et al.*).
Partial tr. Waley (23); tr. Hawkes (1).

Fan Tzu Chi Jan 范子計然.
See *Chi Ni Tzu*.

Fêng Shen Pang 封神榜.
Pass-Lists of the Deified Heroes.
Popular form of the title *Fêng Shen Yen I*, q.v.

Fêng Shen Yen I 封神演義.
Stories of the Promotions of the Martial Genii [novel].
Ming.
Hsü Chung-Lin 許仲琳.
Tr. Grabe (1).

Fêng Su Thung I 風俗通義.
The Meaning of Popular Traditions and Customs.
H/Han, +175.
Ying Shao 應劭.
Chung-Fa Index, no. 3.

Fu Hung Thu 伏汞圖.
Illustrated Manual on the Subduing of Mercury.
Sui, Thang, Wu Tai, J/Chin (or possibly, in some parts, Ming).
Shêng Hsüan Tzu 昇玄子.
Survives now only in quotations.

Fu kien Thung Chih 福建通志.
Gazetteer of Fukien Province.
Chhing, completed 1833, pr. 1867.
See Chhen Shou-Chhi (*1*), (ed.).

Hachiman Gudō-Kun (or *-Ki*) 八幡愚童訓(記).
Tales of the God of War told to the Simple [a military history, including details of the Mongol invasions of +1274 and +1281].
Japan, late +14th or somewhat earlier ed. used dates from between +1469 and +1486.
Writer unknown.
In *Gunsho Ruiji* collection (ch. 13, p. 328) 羣書類從.

Hai-Chhiu Fu Hou Hsü 海鰍賦後序.
Postface to the Rhapsodic Ode on the 'Sea-Eel' (Warships) [and their role at the Battle of Tshai-Shih, +1161].
Sung, *c.* +1170
Yang Wan-Li 楊萬里.
In *Chhêng-Chai Chi*, ch. 44, pp. 6*b* ff.

Hai Fang Tsung Lun 海防總論.
A General Discourse on Coastal Defence.
Ming, before +1621.
Chou Hung-Tsu 周宏祖.

Hai Kuo Thu Chih 海國圖志.
See Wei Yuan & Lin Tsê-Hsü (*1*).

Ho-Hsien Thuan Lien Thiao Kuei 賀縣團練條規.
Rules for Training the Militia Bands at Ho-hsien.
Ming, *c.* +1615.
Author uncertain.

Hōjō Godai-Ki 北條五代記.
Chronicles of the Hōjō Family through Five Generations.
Japan, *c.* +1600.
Writer unknown.
In *Shiseki Shūran* 史籍集覽.

Hōjō Godai-Ki (cont.)
(Collection of Historical Materials).
Ed. Kondō Heijō 近藤瓶城.
3rd. ed. Kondō Shuppan-bu, Tokyo, 1907.

Honchō Gunkikō 本朝軍器考.
Investigation of the Military Weapons and Machines of the Present Dynasty.
Japan preface +1709, postface +1722, printed +1737.
Arai Hakuseki 新井白石.
Autobiography tr. J. Ackroyd (1).

Hou Han Shu 後漢書.
History of the later Han Dynasty [+25 to +220].
L/Sung, +450.
Fan Yeh 范曄.
The monograph chapters by Ssuma Piao 司馬彪 (d. +305), with commentary by Liu Chao 劉昭 (*c.*+510), who first incorporated them in the work.
A few chs. tr. Chavannes (6, 16); Pfizmaier (52, 53).
Yin-Tê Index, no. 41.

Hu Chhien Ching 虎鈐經.
Tiger Seal Manual [military encyclopaedia]
Sung, begun +962, finished +1004.
Hsü Tung 許洞.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 236.

Hu Khou Yü Shêng Chi 虎口餘生記.
Record of Life Regained out of the Tiger's Mouth.
Chhing, +1645.
Pien Ta-Shou 邊大綬.
Cf. Hummel (2), p. 741.

Hua I Hua Mu Niao Shou Chen Wan Khao 華夷花木鳥獸珍玩考.
A Useful Examination of the Flowers, Trees, Birds and Beasts found among the Chinese and neighbouring Peoples (lit. Barbarians).
Ming, +1581.
Shen Mou-Kuan 愼懋官.
WY/135.

Huang Chhao Ma Chêng Chi 皇朝馬政記.
Record of Army Remount Organisation in the Ming Dynasty.
Ming, +1596.
Yang Shih-Chhiao 楊時喬.

Huang Hsiao Tzu Wan Li Chi Chhêng 黃孝子萬里紀程.
Memories of the Thousand-Mile Peregrinations of a Filial Son named Huang.
Ming and Chhing, pref. of +1643, but not finished till *c.* +1652.
Huang Hsiang-Chien 黃向堅.

Huang Ming Ching Shih Shih Yung Pien 皇明經世實用編.
Political Encyclopaedia of Ming Dynasty Materials (down to the Wan-Li Reign-Period, including border defence and maritime defence); or, Imperial Ming Handbook of Practical Statesmanship.
Ming, +1603.
Fêng Ying-Ching (ed.) 馮應京.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 195; *GF*/1141.

Huang Ming Shih Fa Lu 皇明世法錄.
Political Encyclopaedia of the Ming Dynasty (containing imperial edicts, military history, and treatises on astronomy and calendar, music and ceremonies, financial administration, economics, agriculture, communications, etc.).
Ming, +1630, pr. after +1632.
Chhen Jen-Hsi (ed.) 陳仁錫.
Cf. W Franke (4), p. 196; *WY*/420; *GF*/162.

Huang Ti Chiu Ting Shen Tan Ching Chüeh 黃帝九鼎神丹經訣.
The Yellow Emperor's Canon of the Nine-Vessel spiritual Elixir, with Explanations.
Early Thang or early Sung, but incorporating as ch. 1 a canonical work probably of the +2nd century
Writer unknown.
TT/878. Also, abridged, in *YCCC*, ch. 67, pp. 1*a* ff.

Hui-An Hsien-sêng Chu Wê Kung Chi 晦菴先生朱文公集.
Collected Writings of Chu Hsi (lit. Mr. (Chu) Hui-An's Records of the Ven. Chu Wên Kung).
Sung, *c.* +1200.
Chu Hsi 朱熹.

Hui-chán Ryōsa 彙纂麗史.
Collected, Compiled and Edited History of Korea, especially the Koryō Kingdom.
Korea, +18th.
Hong Yeha 洪汝河.
Courant (1), no. 1863.

Huo Chhê Chen Thu Shuo 火車陣圖說.
Illustrated Accounts of the Formations in which Mobile Shields should be used with Guns and Cannon.
Ming, prob. +16th.
Chhen Phei 陳裴.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (1), p. 138.

Huo Chhi Chen Chüeh Chieh Chêng 火器眞訣解證.
Analytical Explanations of Firearms and Instructions for using them.
Chhing.
Shen Shan-Chêng 沈善蒸.
Now extant only in quotations.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (1), p. 164, (2), p. 19.

Huo Chhi Lüeh Shuo 火器略說.
(= *Tshao Shêng Yao Lan*)
Classified Explanations of Firearms.
Chhing.
Wang Ta-Chhüan 王達權 & Wang Thao 王韜.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (1), p. 161, (2), p. 18.
Now extant only in quotations.

Huo Chhi Ta Chhüan 火器大全.
Everything one needs to know about Gunpowder Weapons.

Huo Chhi Ta Chhüan (*cont.*)
Date unknown.
Writer unknown.
Title known only from *Tu Shu Min Chhiu Chi*, q.v.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 169.

Huo Chhi Thu 火器圖.
Illustrated Account of Gunpowder Weapons and Firearms.
Running-head title of the Hsiang-yang edition of *Huo Lung Ching* (q.v.).

Huo Chhi Thu 火器圖.
Illustrated Account of Gunpowder Weapons and Firearms.
Ming, *c.* +1620.
Ku Pin 顧賦.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 128.

Huo Chhi Thu Shuo 火器圖說.
Illustrated Account of Fire- (and Gunpowder-) Weapons.
Ming, prob. +16th.
Huang Ying-Chia 黃應甲.
Lu Ta-chieh (*1*), p. 122.

Huo Kung Chen Fa 火攻陣法.
Troop Formations for Combat with Firearms.
Title of the book which was given to Chiao Yü, the writer of the *Huo Lung Ching* (pt. 1) by the old Taoist of Thien-thai Shan.
Cf. *CCL* (7), p. 86.

Huo Kung Chen Fa 火攻陣法.
Tactical Formations for Attack by Fire- (including Gunpowder-) Weapons.
Ming.
Writer unknown.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 149.

Huo Kung Chhieh Yao 火攻挈要.
[or, Tsê Kho Lu 則克錄].
Essentials of Gunnery.
[or, Book of Instantaneous Victory].
Ming, +1643.
Chiao Hsü 焦勗.
With the collaboration of Thang Jo-Wang (J.A. Schall von Bell) 湯若望.
Bernard-Maître (18), no. 334; Pelliot (55).

Huo Kung Pei Yao 火攻備要.
Essential Knowledge for the Making of Gunpowder Weapons.
Alt. title of Pt. 1 of the *Huo Lung Ching*, q.v.

Huo Kung [*Wên*] *Ta* 火攻問答.
Answers (to Questions) on Fire-Weapons and Firearms.
Ming, *c.* +1598.
Wang Ming-Hao 王鳴鶴.
In *Huang Ming Ching Shih Shih Yung Pien*, ch. 16 (p. 1287).

Huo Lung Ching 火龍經.
The Fire-Drake (Artillery) Manual (of Gunpowder Weapons).
Ming, +1412.
Chiao Yü 焦玉.
The first part of this book, in three sections, is attributed fancifully to Chuko Wu-ou (i.e. Chuko Liang), and Liu Chi 劉基 (+1311/+1375) appears as co-editor, really perhaps co-author.
The second part, also in three sections, is attributed to Liu Chi alone, but edited, probably written, by Mao Hsi-Ping 毛希秉 in +1632.
The third part, in two sections, is by Mao Yuan-I 茅元儀 (fl. +1628) and edited by Chuko Kuang-Jung 諸葛光榮. whose preface is of +1644, Fang Yuan-Chuang 方元壯 & Chung Fu-Wu 鍾伏武.
This work should be considered a main nucleus with two supplements, summarising the development of successive gunpowder weapons between about +1280 and +1644. The first part, i.e. the book itself, is the work of Chiao Yü, who had been a leading artillery officer in the army of Chu Yuan-Chang which finally conquered China for the Ming dynasty in +1367.

Huo Lung Ching Chhüan Chi 火龍經全集.
Complete Materials of the 'Fire Drake Manual' (Nanyang edition).
= *Huo Kung Pei Yao*, q.v.

Huo Lung Shen Chhi Chen Fa 火龍神器陣法.
Fire-Drake Manual of Military Formations using Magically (Efficacious) Weapons (i.e. Muskets).
Date uncertain; a +16th century MS.
Perhaps an early version of *Huo Lung Ching* (q.v.) copied and re-copied.

Huo Lung Shen Chhi Thu Fa 火龍神器圖法.
Fire-Drake Illustrated Technology of Magically (Efficacious) Weapons.
Yuan, perhaps *c.* +1330.
Writer unknown.
Listed in the *Liao, Chin, Yuan, I Wên Chih* of Lu Wên-Chhao, *c.* +1770.
Possibly the earliest form of the *Huo Lung Ching*, q.v.
Now extant only in quotations.
Cf. Lu Ta-chieh (*1*), p. 108.

Huo Lung Shen Chhi Yao Fa Pien 火龍神器藥法編.
Fire-Drake Book of Magically (Efficacious) Weapons, with the Method of Making Gunpowder.
Date uncertain, perhaps Yuan.
Writer unknown.
MS in the Library of the History of Science Institute, Academia Sinica, Peking, with illustrations more delicate and precise than those in any printed edition of the *Huo Lung Ching*, of which it may represent an early version.

Huo Lung Wan Shêng Shen Yao Thu 火龍萬勝神藥圖.
Illustrated Fire-Drake Technology for a Myriad Victories using the Magically (Efficacious) Gunpowder.
Date unknown.
Writer unknown.
Title known only from *Tu Shu Min Chhiu Chi*, q.v.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 169.

Huo Yao Fu 火藥賦.
Rhapsodic Ode (or, Poetical Essay) on Gunpowder.
Ming, *c.* +1620.
Mao Yuan-I 茅元儀.
In *TSCC*, Jung chêng tien, ch. 96, i wên i, p. 2*a*, *b*, 3*a*.

Huo Yao Miao Phin 火藥妙品.
The Wonderful Uses of Gunpowder.
Ming.
Writer unknown.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 149.

Hsi Chhi Tshung Hua 西溪叢話(語).
(*SKCS* has *Yü*.)
Western Pool Collected Remarks.
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Yao Khuan 姚寬.

Hsi Chou Yen Phu 歙州硯譜.
Hsichow Inkstone Record.
Sung, +1066.
Thang Chi 唐積.

Hsi Hu Chih Yü 西湖志餘.
Additional Records of the Traditions of West Lake (at Hangchow).
Ming, *c.* +1570.
Thien I-Hêng 田藝蘅.

Hsi Hu Erh Chi 西湖二集.
Second Collection of Materials about West Lake [at Hangchow, and the neighbourhood].
Ming, *c.* +1620.
Chou Chhing-Yuan 周清源.

Hsi-Yang Huo Kung Thu Shuo 西洋火攻圖說.
Illustrated Treatise on European Gunnery.
Ming, before +1625.
Chang Tao 張燾 & Sun Hsüeh-Shih 孫學詩.
Cf. Pelliot (55).
Now extant only in quotations.

Hsi Yuan Wên Chien Lu 西園聞見錄.
Things Seen and Heard in the Western Garden (the Imperial Library), [a work of notes for the history of the Ming, +1368 to +1620].
Ming, +1627; first printed 1940.
Chang Hsüan 張萱.
Cf. Goodrich & Fang Chao-Ying (1), p. 79.

Hsiang Ping Chiu Ming Shu 鄉兵救命書.
On Saving the Situation by (the Raising of) Militia.
Ming, +1607.
Lü Khun 呂坤.
Cf. Goodrich & Fang Chao-Ying (1), p. 1006.

Hsiang-Yang Shou Chhêng Lu 襄陽守城錄.
An Account of the Defence of Hsiang-yang (City) [+1206 to +1207], (by the Sung against the J/Chin).
Sung, *c.* +1210.
Chao Wan-Nien 趙萬年.
This siege was not by the Mongols, as in the more famous one of +1268/+1273.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 95.

Hsin-Ssu Chhi Chhi Lu 辛巳泣斬錄.
The Sorrowful Record of (the Siege of) Chhi (-chou) in the Hsin-Ssu Year (+1221), (by the Chin Tartars).
Sung, *c.* +1230.
Chao Yü-Jung 趙與懋.

Hsin Wu Tai Shih 新五代史.
New History of the Five Dynasties [+907 to +959].
Sung, *c.* +1070.
Ouyang Hsiu 歐陽修.
For translations of passages see the index of Frankel (1).

Hsin Yuan Shih 新元史.
See Kho Shao-Min (*1*).

Hsing Chün Hsü Chih 行軍須知.
What an Army Commander in the Field should Know.
Sung, *c.* +1230; repr. +1410, +1439.
Writer unknown.
Preface by Li Chin (Ming ed.) 李進.
Appended to the Ming ed. of *Wu Ching Tsung Yao, Hou Chi*.
Cf. Fêng Chia-Shêng (*1*), p. 61.

Hsü Chin Phing Mei 續金瓶梅.
Golden Lotus, Continued [novel] (cf. *Chin Phing Mei*).
Chhing, +17th century.
Tzu Yang Tao-Jen 紫陽道人.
Tr. Kulm (1).

Hsü Hou Han Shu 續後漢書.
Supplement to the History of the Later Han.
Sung.
Hsiao Chhang 蕭常.

Hsü I Chien Chih 續夷堅志.
More Strange Stories from I-Chien.
J/Chin, *c.* +1240.
Yuan Hao-Wên 元好問.

Hsü Sung Chung Hsing Pien Nien Tzu Chih Thung Chien 續宋中興編年資治通鑑.
Continuation of the 'Mirror of History for Aid in Government' for the Sung Dynasty from its Restoration onwards [i.e. Southern Sung from +1126].
Sung, *c.* +1250.
Liu Shih-Chü 劉時舉.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 77.

Hsü Sung Pien Nien Tzu Chih Thung Chien 續宋編年資治通鑑.
Alt. title of *Hsü Sung Chung Hsing Pien Nien Tzu Chih Thung Chien*, q.v.

Hsü Tzu Chih Thung Chien Chhang Pien 續資治通鑑長編.
Continuation of the *Comprehensive Mirror (of History) for Aid in Government* [+960 to +1126].
Sung, +1183.
Li Tao 李燾.

Hsü Wên Hsien Thung Khao 續文獻通考.
Continuation of the *Comprehensive Study of (the History of Civilisation)* (cf. *Wên Hsien Thung Khao* and *Chhin Ting Hsü Wên Hsien Thung Khao*).
Ming, +1586; pr. +1603.
Ed. Wang Chhi 王圻.

Hsüan Kuai Hsü Lu 玄怪續錄.
The *Record of Things Dark and Strange*, continued.
Thang.
Li Fu-Yen 李復言.

I Hai Chu Chhen 藝海珠塵.
Pearls from the Dust; a Collection (of Tractates) from the Ocean of Artistry [*a tshung-shu*].
Chhing, *c.* +1760.
Ed. Wu Shêng-Lan 吳省蘭.

Inatomi-ryu Teppō Densho 稻富流鐵砲傳書.
Record of Matchlock Muskets current in the Inatomi Family.
Japan, +1595; never printed.
Nagasawa Shigetsune 長澤七右衛 for Kawakami Mosuke 河上茂介殿.
An MS. of +1607 is in the New York Public Library (Spencer Colln. no. 53).

Kai Wên Lu 該聞錄.
Things Heard Worthy of Record.
Sung, *c.* +990.
Li Thien 李畋.

Kai Yü Tshung Khao 陔餘叢考.
Miscellaneous Notes made while attending his aged Mother.
Chhing, +1790.
Chao I 趙翼.

Kaisan-ki 改算記.
Book of Improved Mathematics.
Japan, +1659.
Yamada Shigemasa 山田重正.

Kaisan-ki Kōmoku 改算記綱目.
Comprehensive Summary of Integration [early calculus].
Japan, +1687.
Mochinaga, Toyotsugu 持永豐次 & Ôhashi, Takusei 大橋宅清.

Keisei Hisaku 經世秘策.
A Secret Plan for Managing the Country.
Japan (Yedo) +1798, pr. after 1821.
Honda Toshiski 本多利明.
Cf. Keene (1).

Khai-Hsi Tê-An Shou Chhêng Lu 開禧德安守城錄.
An Account of the Defence of Tê-an (City) in the Khai-Hsi reign-period [+1206 to +1207], (by the Sung against the J/Chin).
Sung, +1224.
Wang Chih-Yuan 王致遠.
Tr. K. Hana (1).

Kho Chai Tsa Kao, Hsü Kao Hou 可齋雜藁, 續稿後.
Miscellaneous Matters recorded in the Ability Studio, Second Addendum.
Sung, *c.* +1265.
Li Tsêng-Po 李曾伯.

Khua Ao Chi 跨鼇集.
Collected Memorabilia of Mr Khua-Ao.
Sung, *c.* +1100.
Li Hsin 李新 (Khua Ao chü shih 跨鼇居士).
He called himself the Recluse of the Atlas-bestriding stone steles, because such monuments are generally placed upon sculptures of tortoises, and one of these was in mythology the supporter of the world, hence a symbol of longevity.

Kikai Kanran.
See Aoji Rinsō (*1*).

Ko Chih Ku Wei.
See Wang Jen-Chün (*1*).

Ko Wu Hsü Chih 格物須知.
What One should Know about Natural Phenomena.
Chhing, +18th.
Chu Pên-Chung 朱本中.

Kōrai Sensenki 高麗船戰記.
A Record of the Sea-Fights against Korea.
Japan, +1592.
Soto-oka Jinjaimon 外岡甚左衛門.
MS preserved in the Nabeshima family, and now in the Library of Kyushu University.
Cf. Pak Hae-ill (*2*).

Koryŏ-sa 高麗史.
History of the Koryō Kingdom [+918 to +1392].
Korea, first compiled in +1395; oldest extant version commissioned +1445, completed +1451.
Ed. Chŏng Inji 鄭麟趾.
Courant (1), no. 1846.

Ku Chin Shuo Hai 古今說海.
Sea of Sayings Old and New [florilegium].
Ming, +1544.
Lu Chi (ed.) 陸楫.

Kuang Po Wu Chih 廣博物志.
Enlargement of the *Records of the Investigation of Things* (by Chang Hua, *c.* +290).
Ming, +1607.
Tung Ssu-Chang 董斯張.

Kuang-Yang Tsa Chi 廣陽雜記.
Collected Miscellanea of Master Kuang-Yang (Liu Hsien-Thing).
Chhing, *c.* +1695.
Liu Hsien-Thing 劉獻廷.

Kuei Chhien Chih 歸潛志.
On Returning to a Life of Obscurity.
J/Chin, +1235.
Liu Chhi 劉祁.

Kuei Hsin Tsa Chih 癸辛雜識.
Miscellaneous Information from Kuei-Hsin Street (in Hangchow).
Sung, late +13th-century, perhaps not finished before +1308.
Chon Mi 周密.
See des Rotours (1), p. cxii; H. Franke (14).

Kuei Thien Shih Hua 歸田詩話.
Poems of Return to Farm and Tillage.
Ming, +1425.
Chhü Yu 瞿佑.

Kuei Tung 鬼董.
The Control of Spirits.
Sung, prob. *c.* +1185; pub. +1218 or later.
Mr Shen 沈氏.

Kukcho Orye-ŭi 國朝五禮儀.
Instruments for the Five Ceremonies of the (Korean) Court.
Korea (Chosŏn), +1474.
Sin Sukju 申叔舟 & Chŏng Ch'ăk 鄭陟.
Cf. Trollope (1), p. 21; Courant (1), no. 1047.

Kukcho Pogam 國朝寶鑑.
The Precious Dynastic Mirror [official history of the Yi Dynasty, +1392 to 1910].
Korea (Chosŏn), begun *c.* +1460, commissioned by King Sejo.
Kwŏn Nam 權擥 and many subsequent writers.
Courant (1), no. 1894, 1897.

Kukcho Sok Orye-ŭi 國朝續五禮儀.
A Continuation of the *Instruments for the Five Ceremonies of the* (Korean) *Court.*
Korea (Chosŏn) +1744.
Ed. Courant (1), no. 1047.

Kukcho Sok Orye-ŭi Po 國朝續五禮儀補.
An Extension of the *Continuation of the Instruments for the Five Ceremonies of the* (Korean) *Court.*
Korea (Chosŏn), +1751.
Ed. Courant (1), no. 1047.

Kung Khuei Chi 攻媿集.
Bashfulness Overcome; Recollections of My Life and Times.
Sung, *c.* +1210.
Lou Yo 樓鑰.

Kung Pu Chhang Khu Hsü Chih 工部廠庫須知.
What should be known (to officials) about the Factories, Workshops and Storehouses of the Ministry of Works.
Ming, +1615.
Ho Shih-Chin 何士晉.

Kung-Sha Hsiao Chung Chi 公沙効忠紀.
Eulogy of the Loyal and Gallant Gonçalvo [Teixeira-Correa, Captain of Artillery in the Chinese Service].
Ming, +1633.
Lu Jo-Han (João Rodrigues, S. J.) 陸若漢.
Pfister (1), p. 25* (add.)

Kuo Chhao Ming Chhen Shih Lüeh 國朝名臣事略.
Biographies of (47) Famous Statesmen and Generals of the Present Dynasty (Yuan)
Yuan, *c.* +1360.
Su Thien-Chio 蘇天爵.
Cf. H. Franke (14), p. 119

Kuo Chhao Wên Lei 國朝文類.
Classified Prose of the Present Dynasty (Yuan).
Yuan, *c.* +1340.
Ed. Satula (Thien Hsi) 薩都拉(天錫) & Su Thien-Chio 蘇天爵.
Cf. H. Franke (14), p. 119.

Kuo Chhao Wu Li I.
See *Kukcho Orye-ŭi.*

Lang Chi Tshung Than 浪跡叢談.
See Liang Chang-Chü (*1*).

Lao Hsüeh An Pi Chi 老學庵筆記.
Notes from the Hall of Learned Old Age.
Sung, *c.* +1190.
Lu Yu 陸游.

Li Shao Phien 蠡勺編.
Measuring the Ocean with a Calabash-Ladle [title taken from a diatribe against narrow-minded views in the biography of Tungfang Shuo in *CHS*].
Chhing, *c.* +1799.
Ling Yang Tsao 淩揚藻.

Li Wei Kung Wên Tui 李衛公問對.
The Answers of Li Wei Kung to Questions (of the emperor Thang Thai Tsung) (on the Art of War).
Supposedly Thang, but more probably produced in the Sung, +11th.
Writer unknown.
Perhaps composed by Juan I 阮逸.

Liao, Chin, Yuan I Wên Chih 遼金元藝文志.
Bibliography of the Liao, J/Chin and Yuan Dynasties [the official histories of which lack *i wên chih*].
Chhing.
Huang Yü-Chi (+1629 to +1691) 黃虞稷.
Ni Tshan (+1704 to 1841) & 倪燦.
Chhien Ta-Hsin (+1728 to 1804) 錢大昕.
and others.

Liao Shih 遼史.
History of the Liao (Chhi-tan) Dynasty [+916 to +1125].
Yuan, +1343 to +1345.
Tho-Tho (Toktaga) 脫脫 & Ouyang Hsüan 歐陽玄.
Partial tr. Wittfogel, Fêng Chia-Shêng *et al.*
Yin-Tê Index, no. 35.

Lieh Hsien Chuan 列仙傳.
Lives of Famous Immortals (cf. *Shen Hsien Chuan*).
Chin, +3rd or +4th century, though certain parts date from about −35 and shortly after +167.
Attrib. Liu Hsiang 劉向.
Tr. Kaltenmark (2).

Lien Ping Shih Chi 練兵實紀.
Treatise on Military Training.
Ming, +1568; pr. +1571, often repr.
Chhi Chi-Kuang 戚繼光.

Lien Ping Shih Chi Tsa Chi 練兵實紀雜集.
Miscellaneous Records concerning Military Training (and Equipment) [the addendum to *Lien Ping Shih Chi*, q.v., in 6 chs. following the 9 chs. of the main work].
Ming, +1568; pr. +1571.
Chhi Chi-Kuang 戚繼光.

Lien Yüeh Huo Chhi Chen Chi 練閱火器陣紀.
An Examination of Training in the Use of Gunpowder Weapons, Cannon and Catapults.
Chhing, +1696.
Hsüeh Hsi 薛熙.

Liu Pin-Kho Wên Chi 劉賓客文集.
Literary Records of the Imperial Tutor Liu.
Thang, after +842.
Liu Yü-Hsi 劉禹錫.

Liu Po-Wên Chien Hsien Phing Chê Chung 劉伯溫薦賢平浙中.
The Pacification of central Chekiang by the Able Officers recommended by (Commander) Liu Po-Wên [Liu Chi, in +1340 to + 1350, acting as a Yuan officer against the rebels and pirates of the region.]
Ch. 17 of Chou Chhing-Yuan's *Hsi Hu Erh Chi*, q.v.

Liu Thao 六韜.
The Six Quivers [treatise on the art of war].
H/Han, +2nd century, incorporating material as early as the −3rd.
Writer unknown:
See Haloun (5); L. Giles (11).

Lo-Yang Chhieh Lan Chi 洛陽伽藍記.
(or '*Loyang Ka-Lan Chi*'; *sêng ka-lan* transliterating *sanghārāma*).
Description of the Buddhist Temples and Monasteries at Loyang.
N/Wei, *c.* +547.
Yang Hsüan-Chih 楊衒之.

Lü Li Yuan Yuan 律曆淵源.
Calendrical and Acoustic, Ocean of Calculations (compiled by Imperial Order) [includes *Li Hsiang Khao Chhêng*, *Shu Li Ching Yün*, Lü Lü Chêng I, q.v.].
Chhing, +1723; printing probably not finished before +1730.
Ed. Mei Ku-Chhêng 梅毂成 & Ho Kuo-Tsung 何國宗.
Cf. Hummel (2), p. 285; Wylie (1), pp. 96 ff.

Lü Lü Chêng I 律呂正義.
Collected Basic Principles of Music (compiled by Imperial Order) [part of *Lü Li Yuan Yuan*, q.v.].
Chhing, +1713 (+1723).
Ed. Mei Ku-Chhêng 梅毂成 & Ho Kuo-Tsung 何國宗.
Cf. Hummel (2), p. 285.

Lun Hêng 論衡.
Discourses Weighed in the Balance.
H/Han, +82 or +83.
Wang Chhung 王充.
Tr. Forke (4); cf. Leslie (3).
Chung-Fa Index, no. 1.

Lung Hu Huan Tan Chüeh 龍虎還丹訣.
Explanation of the Dragon-and-Tiger Cyclically Transformed Elixir.
Wu Tai, Sung, or later.
Chin Ling Tzu 金陵子.
TT/902.

Man-Chou Shih Lu Thu 滿州實錄圖.
Veritable Records of the Manchus, with Illustrations [depicting the martial exploits of Nurhachi, Thai Tsu of the Chhing, d. +1626].
Alt. title of *Thai Tsu Shih Lu Thu*, q.v.

Man Shu 蠻書.
Book of the Barbarians [itineraries].
Thang, *c.* +862.
Fan Chho 樊綽.

Mêng Hua Lu
See *Tung Ching Mêng Hua Lu*.

Mêng Liang Lu 夢粱錄.
Dreaming of the Capital while the Rice is Cooking [description of Hangchow towards the end of the Sung].
Sung, +1275.
Wu Tzu-Mu 吳自牧.

Môko Shūrai Ekotoba 蒙古襲來繪詞.
Illustrated Narrative of the Mongol Invasions (of Japan) [+1274 and +1281].
Japan, +1293; facsim. ed. ed. Kubota Beisan (Kubota Yonenari), Tokyo, 1916.
Painted by some unknown master to illustrate the experiences of Takezaki Sueriaga 竹崎季長.

Mu An Chi 牧菴集.
Literary Collections of (Yao) Mu-An.
Yuan, *c.* +1310.
Yao Sui 姚燧.

Muye Tobo T'ongji Ŏnhae 武藝圖譜通志諺解.
Illustrated Encyclopaedia of Military Arts (the Korean translation of the *Wu I Thu Phu Thung Chih*).
Korea, after +1790.
Editor not known.
Courant (1), no. 2467.

Nan Thang Shu 南唐書.
History of the Southern Thang Dynasty [+923 to +936].
Sung, +11th.
Ma Ling 馬令.

Nan Thang Shu 南唐書.
History of the Southern Thang Dynasty [+923 to +936].
Sung, +12th.
Lu Yu 陸游.

Nihon Kokujokushi 日本國辱史.
History of Japan's Humiliation [the Mongol invasions of +1274 and +1281].
Japan, *c.* +1300.
Writer unknown.

No Kao Chi 諾皐記.
Records of No-Kao [collected popular beliefs concerning spirits, genii and Taoist gods].
Thang, *c.* +850.
Tuan Chhêng-Shih 段成式.
No-Kao was a Taoist military archangel analogous to St Michael, mentioned in *Pao Phu Tzu*, ch. 17, p. 4*b* (Ware tr. (5), p. 285).

Nung Chi 農紀.
Agricultural Record.
Sung, Yuan or Ming.
Writer unknown.
Not in Wang Yü-Hu (*1*).

O Yu Hui Phien.
See Miu Yu-Sun (*1*).

Pa Pien Lei Tsuan 八編類纂.
Classified Florilegium of Eight Literary

Pa Pien Lei Tsuan (*cont.*)
Collections.
Ming, *c.* +1620.
Chhen Jen-Hsi 陳仁錫.
Now extant only in quotations.

Pa Shih Ching Chi Chih 八史經籍志.
Bibliography of the Eight Histories (includes the lists in six dynastic histories and four supplementary bibliographies compiled during the Chhing period).
Chhing, pr. 1825 and 1883.
See Têng & Biggerstaff (1), 1st ed. p. 15, 2nd ed. p. 10.

Pai Chan Chi Fa 百戰奇法.
Wonderful Methods for (Victory in) a Hundred Combats.
Sung, *c.* +1260.
Writer unknown.

Pai Chan Ching.
See *Ping Fa Pai Chan Ching.*

Pai Pien 稗編.
Leaves of Grass [encyclopaedia].
Ming, +1581.
Ed. Thang Shun-Chih 唐順之.

Pao Yüeh Lu 保越錄.
The Defence of the City of Yüeh (Shao-Hsing) [+1358].
Yuan, +1359.
Hsü Mien-Chih 徐勉之.

Pei Mêng So Yen 北夢瑣言.
Fragmentary Notes Indited North of (Lake) Mêng.
Wu Tai (S/Phing), *c.* +950.
Sun Kuang-Hsien 孫光憲.
See des Rotours (4), p. 38.

Pei Pien Thun Thien Chhê Chhung I 備邊屯田車銃議.
Discussions on the Use of Military-Agricultural Settlements, Muskets, Field Artillery and Mobile Shields in the Defence of the Frontiers.
Ming, *c.* +1585.
Chao Shih-Chên 趙士禎.

Phing Han Lu 平漢錄.
Records of the Pacification of Han [the campaign of Chu Yuan-Chang and his generals in +1363 which overthrew the Han State of Chhen Yu-Liang in the Yangtse Valley and established the power of the Ming dynasty].
Ming, *c.* +1521.
Thung Chhêng-Hsü 童承敘.

Phing Hsia Lu 平夏錄.
Records of the Pacification of Hsia [the campaign of Chu Yuan-Chang and his generals in +1371 which overthrew the Hsia State of Ming Shêng in Szechuan and established the power of the Ming Dynasty].
Ming, *c.* +1544.
Huang Piao 黃標.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 56.

Phing Phi Pai Chin Fang 洴澼百金方.
The Washerman's Precious Salve; (Appropriate) Techniques (of Successful Warfare) [military encyclopaedia].
Ming, after +1626.
Ed. Hui Lu 惠麓.
The title is taken from a story in *Chuang Tzu*, ch. 1, tr. Legge (5), Vol. 1, p. 173; Fêng Yu-Lan (5), p. 39. A man of Sung State invented a salve for chapped hands, and it was used in his family, professional washers of silk, for several generations. A stranger bought the formula for 100 pieces of gold, went down to Wu State, and being made Admiral there, employed it for the sailors so that they gained a great victory over Yüeh. One application brought little gain; the other won great reward and a noble title.
The work seems to be rare (not in *SKCS/TMTY*).

Phing Wu Lu 平吳錄.
Records of the Pacification of Wu [the campaign by Chu Yuan-Chang and his generals in +1366 which overthrew the Chou State of Chang Shih-Chhêng and established the power of the Ming Dynasty].
Ming, *c.* +1472.
Wu Khuan 吳寬.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 57.

Pi Chou Kao Lüeh 敝帚稿略.
Classified Reminiscences swept up by an Old Broom.
Sung, *c.* +1250.
Pao Hui 包恢.

Ping Chhien 兵鈐.
Key to Military Affairs; or, Key of Martial Art.
Chhing, +1675.
Lü Phan 呂磻 & Lu Chhêng-Ên 盧承恩.

Ping Fa Pai Chan Ching 兵法百戰經.
Manual of Military Strategy for a Hundred Battles.
Ming, *c.* +1590.
Wang Ming-Hao 王鳴鶴.
Ed. Ho Chung-Shu 何仲叔.

Ping Lu 兵錄.
Records of Military Art.
Ming, +1606; pr. +1628. Later eds. have prefaces of +1630 and +1632.
Ho Ju-Pin 何汝賓.
Cf. Wang Chung-Min & Yuan Thung-Li (*1*), i, pp. 472, 475.

Ping Lüeh Tshuan Wên 兵略纂聞.
Classified Compendium of Things Seen and Heard on Military Matters.
Ming, late +16th.
Chhü Ju-Chi 瞿汝稷.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 127.

Pu Liao Chin Yuan I Wên Chih 補遼金元藝文志.
Additional Bibliography of the Liao, Chin and Yuan Dynasties.
A continuation of *Liao Chin Yuan I Wên Chih*, q.v. by many Chhing scholars especially Lu Wên-Chao 盧文弨 (or Chhao 弨) *c.* +1770. In *Pa Shih Ching Chi Chih*, q.v.

San Chhao Pei Mêng Hui Pien 三朝北盟會編.
Collected Records of the Northern Alliance during Three Reigns.
Sung, +1196.
Hsü Mêng-Hsin 徐夢莘.

San Kyūkai 算九回.
Mathematics in Nine Chapters [in each of three volumes or parts].
Japan, +1677.
Nozawa Sodanaga 野沢定長.
Cf. Itakura (1).

San Tshai Thu Hui 三才圖會.
Universal Encyclopaedia.
Ming, +1609.
Wang Chhi 王圻.

Shan Tso Chin Shih Chih 山左金石志.
Record of Inscriptions on Metal and Stone from the Left-hand Side of the Mountain.
Chhing, +1796.
Pi Yuan 畢沅 & Juan Yuan 阮元.

Shen Chhi Phu 神器譜.
Treatise on Extraordinary (lit. Magical) Weapons [musketry].
Ming, +1598.
Chao Shih-Chên 趙士禎.
Cf. W. Franke (3) no. 255, (4), p. 208; Goodrich (15).

Shen Chhi Phu Huo Wên 神器譜或問.
Miscellaneous Questions (and Answers arising out of) the Treatise on Guns.
Ming, +1599.
Chao Shih-Chên 趙士禎.
Cf. W. Franke (3) no. 255, (4), p. 208; Goodrich (15).

Shen Chi Chih Ti Thai Pai Ying Ching 神機制敵太白陰經.
Secret Contrivances for the Defeat of Enemies; the Manual of the White Planet.
Full title of *Thai Pai Yin Ching*, q.v.

Shen I Chi 神異記.
(Probably an alternative title of *Shen I Ching*, q.v.)
Records of the Spiritual and the Strange.
Chin, *c.* +290.
Wang Fou 王浮.

Shen I Ching 神異經.
Book of the Spiritual and the Strange.
Ascr. Han, but prob. +3rd, +4th or +5th century.
Attrib. Tungfang Shuo (−2nd.) 東方朔.
Probable author, Wang Fou 王浮.

Shen Wei Thu Shuo 神威圖說.
Illustrated Account of the Magically Overawing (Weapon, i.e. the Cannon).
Chhing, +1681.
Nan Huai-Jen (Ferdinand Verbiest, S. J.) 南懷仁.
This book, if it still exists at all, must be exceedingly rare; we know of no copy either in China or elsewhere.

Shih Chin Shih 試金石.
On the Testing of (what is meant by) 'Metal' and 'Mineral'.
See Fu Chin-Chüan (5).

Shih Hu Shih Chi 石湖詩集.
Collected Works of the Lakeside Poet.
Sung, *c.* +1190.
Fan Chhêng-Ta 范成大.

Shih Kuo Chhun Chhiu 十國春秋.
Spring and Autumn Annals of the Ten Kingdoms (the States of the Five Dynasties Period, +10th cent.).
Chhing, +1678.
Wu Jen-Chhen 吳任臣.

Shiseki Shūran 史籍集覽.
Collection of Historical Materials.
+15th to +18th centuries.
Ed. Kondō Heijō 近藤瓶城.
Kondō Shuppan-bu, Tokyo, 1907.

Shou Chhêng Chiu Ming Shu 守城救命書.
On Saving the Situation by the (Successful) Defence of Cities.
Ming, +1607.
Lü Khun 呂坤.
Cf. Goodrich & Fang Chao Ying (1), p. 1006.

Shou Chhêng Lu 守城錄.
Guide to the Defence of Cities [lessons of the sieges of Tê-an in Hupei, +1127 to +1132].
Sung, *c.* +1140 and +1193 (combined in +1225).
Chhen Kuei 陳規 & Thang Tao 湯璹.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 237.

Shu Nan Hsü Lüeh 蜀難叙略.
Collected Records of the Difficulties of Szechuan.
Chhing, *c.* +1663, but dealing with events in +1642 and after.
Shen Hsün-Wei 沈荀蔚.
Cf. Struve (1), pp. 346, 362.

Shu Yü Chou Tzu Lu 殊域周咨錄.
Record of Despatches concerning the Different Countries.
Ming, +1574.
Yen Tshung-Chien 嚴從簡.

Shui Hu Chuan 水滸傳.
Stories of the River-Banks [novel 'All Men are Brothers' and 'Water Margin'].
Ming, first collected *c.* +1380, but derived from older plays and stories. Oldest extant 100-ch. version, +1589, a reprint of an original earlier than +1550. Oldest extant 120-ch. version, +1614.
Ascr. Shih Nai-An 施耐庵.
Tr. Buck (1); Jackson (1).

Shui Lei Thu Shuo 水雷圖說.
Illustrated Account of Sea Mines.
See Phan Shih-Chhêng (1).

Ssu Hsüan Fu 思玄賦.
Thought the Transcender [ode on an imaginary journey beyond the sun].
H/Han, +135.
Chang Hêng 張衡.

Ssuma Fa 司馬法.
The Marshal's Art (of War).

Ssuma Fa (cont.)
Chou (late), prob. −4th or −3rd.
Writer unknown.

Su-a Munjip 西崖文集
Essays from the Western Cliff (one of Yu's names).
Korea, *c.* +1605, preface of +1633.
Yu Sŏngnyong 柳成龍
Courant (1), no. 624.

Suan Fa Thung Tsung 算法統宗.
Systematic Treatise on Arithmetic.
Ming, +1592.
Chhêng Ta-Wei 程大位.

Sun Tzu Ping Fa 孫子兵法.
Master Sun's Art of War.
Chou (Chhi), *c.* −345.
Attrib. Sun Wu 孫武, more probably by Sun Pin 孫臏.

Sung Chi Chao Chung Lu 宋季昭忠錄.
Records of Distinguished Patriots of the [Second Half of the Southern] Sung Dynasty.
Alt. title of *Chao Chung Lu*, q.v.

Sung Chi San Chhao Chêng Yao 宋季三朝政要.
The Most Important Aspects of Government as seen under the Last Three Courts of the (Southern) Sung Dynasty.
Yuan, *c.* +1285.
Writer unknown.
Cf. Balazs & Hervouet (1), p. 83.

Sung Hsüeh Shih Chhüan Chi 宋學士全集.
Complete Record of Sung Scholars.
Ming, *c.* +1371.
Sung Lien 宋濂.

Sung Hsüeh Shih Chhüan Chi Pu I 宋學士全集補遺.
Additions to the Complete Record of Sung Scholars.
Ming, *c.* +1375.
Sung Lien 宋濂.

Sung Hui Yao Kao 宋會要稿.
Drafts for the *History of the Administrative Statutes of the Sung Dynasty*.
Sung.
Collected by Hsü Sung (1809) 徐松.
From the *Yung-Lo Ta Tien*.

Sung Shih 宋史.
History of the Sung Dynasty [+960 to +1279].
Yuan, *c.* +1345.
Tho-Tho (Toktaga) 脫脫 & Ouyang Hsüan 歐陽玄.
Yin-Tê Index, no. 34.

Sung Shu 宋書.
History of the (Liu) Sung Dynasty [+420 to +478].
S/Chhi, +500.
Shen Yo 沈約.
A few chs. tr. Pfizmaier (58).
For translations of passages see the index of Frankel (1).

Sung Thung Chien Chhang Phien Chi Shih Pên Mo 宋通鑑長編紀事本末.
Comprehensive Mirror Chronological History of the Sung Dynasty from Beginning to End.
Sung, +1253.
Yang Chung-Liang 楊仲良.

Ta Chhing Shêng Tsu Jen Huang Ti Shih Lu 大清聖祖仁皇帝實錄.
Veritable Records of the Benevolent Emperor of the Great Chhing Dynasty Shêng Tsu [Sage Ancestor = Khang-Hsi, r. +1661 to +1722].
Chhing, *c.* +1729.
Ed. Chiang Thing-Hsi *et al.* 蔣廷錫.
Hu/143, 327.

Ta Hsüeh Yen I 大學衍義.
Extension of the Ideas of the Great Learning [Neo-Confucian ethics].
Sung, +1229.
Chen Tê-Hsiu 眞德秀.

Ta Hsüeh Yen I Pu 大學衍義補.
Restoration and Extension of the Ideas of the *Great Learning* [contains many chapters of interest for the history of technology].
Ming, *c.* +1480.
Chhiu Chün 丘濬.

Taiheiki 太平記.
Records of the Reign of Great Peace [a romance history of one of the most troubled periods of Japanese history, +1318 to +1368].
Japan, *c.* +1370.
Attrib. Kojuma (monk) 小嶋.

Tê-An Shou Chhêng Lu 德安守城錄.
See *Shou Chhêng Lu*.

Têng Than Pi Chiu 登壇必究.
Knowledge Necessary for (Army) Commanders.
Ming, +1599.
Wang Ming-Hao 王鳴鶴.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 208.

Têng Wu Shê Phien 登吳社編.
Records of a Journey up to the Cities of Wu (Chiangsu).
Sung.
Wang Chih 王稚.

Teppō-ki 鐵砲記.
Record of Iron Guns.
Japan, +1606; pr. +1649.
Nampo Bunshi 南浦文之.
Cf. Arima (*1*), pp. 617 ff.

Thai-Chhing Ching Thien-Shih Khou Chüeh 太清經天師口訣.
Oral Instructions from the Heavenly Masters [Taoist Patriarchs] on the Thai-Chhing Scriptures.
Date unknown, but must be after the mid +5th cent. and before Yuan.
Writer unknown.
TT/876.

Thai-Chhing Tan Ching Yao Chüeh 太清丹經要訣. (= *Thai-Chhing Chen Jen Ta Tan*)
Essentials of the Elixir Manuals, for Oral Transmission; a Thai-Chhing Scripture.
Thang, mid +7th (*c.* +640).
Prob. Sun Ssu-Mo 孫思邈.
In *YCCC*, ch. 71.
Tr. Sivin (1), pp. 145 ff.

Thai Pai Yin Ching 太白陰經.
Manual of the White (and Gloomy) Planet (of War; Venus) [military encyclopaedia]
Thang, +759.
Li Chhüan 李筌.

Thai Tsu Shih Lu Thu 太祖實錄圖.
Veritable Records of the Great Ancestor (Nurhachi, d. +1626, retrospectively emperor of the Chhing), with Illustrations.
Ming +1635; revised Chhing, +1781.
Writer unknown.
MS of +1740 reproduced by NE University, Mukden, 1930; in Chinese with captions in Chinese and Manchu for the illustrations.

Thang Yeh Chen Jen Chuan 唐葉眞人傳.
Biography of the Perfected Sage Yeh (Ching-Nêng) of the Thang.
Prob. Sung.
Chang Tao-Thung 張道統.
TT/771

Thien Kung Khai Wu 天工開物.
The Exploitation of the Works of Nature.
Ming, +1637.
Sung Ying-Hsing 宋應星.
Tr. Sun Jen I-Tu & Sun Hsüeh-Chuan (1)

Thien Wên 天問.
Questions about Heaven ['ode', perhaps a ritual catechism].
Chou, generally ascr. late +4th, but perhaps −5th century.
Attrib. Chhü Yuan, but probably earlier 屈原.
Tr. Erkes (8); Hawkes (1).

Thing Hsün Ko Yen 庭訓格言.
Talks on Experiences in the Hall of Edicts.
Chhing, *c.* +1722.
Aihsin-chüeh lo Hsüan-Yeh (Khang-Hsi emperor of the Chhing) 愛新覺羅玄燁.

Thung Tien 通典.
Comprehensive Institutes [a reservoir of source material on political and social history]
c. +812 (events down to +801).
Embodied the earlier *Chêng Tien* of Liu Chih.
Tu Yu 杜佑.
Têng & Biggerstaff (1) p. 148.

Thung Ya 通雅.
Helps to the Understanding of the *Literary Expositor* [general encyclopaedia with much of scientific and technological interest].
Ming and Chhing, finished +1636, pr. +1666.
Fang I-Chih 方以智.

Tiao Chi Li Than 釣磯立談.
Talks at Fisherman's Rock.
Wu Tai (S/Thang) & Sung, begun *c.* +935, finished after +975.
Shih Hsü-Pai 史虛白.

Tsao Chia Fa 造甲法.
Treatise on Armour-Making.
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Writer unknown.
Now extant only in quotations.

Tsao Shen Pei Kung Fa 造神臂弓法.
Treatise on the Making of the Strong Bow.
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Writer unknown.
Now extant only in quotations.

Tsê Kho Lu 則克錄.
Book of Instantaneous Victory.
Alt. title of *Huo Kung Chhieh Yao*, (q.v.) given only to the reprint of 1841 (Pelliot (55), p. 192), which introduced many mistakes and suppressed some of the illustrations.

Tshao Shêng Yao Lan 操勝要覽.
Important Perspectives for the Attainment of Victory.
= *Huo Chhi Lüeh Shuo*, q.v.

Tso Mêng Lu 昨夢錄.
Dreaming of the Good Old Days [written in the South after the victory of the Chin Tartars, recalling life in the former capital city of Khaifêng (Pien-ching) under the Northern Sung].
Sung, *c.* +1137.
Khang Yü-Chih 康譽之.

Tu Chhêng Chi Shêng 都城紀勝.
The Wonder of the Capital (Hangchow).
Sung, +1235.
Mr Chao 趙氏 [Kuan Pu Nai Tê Ong 灌圃耐得翁; The Old Gentleman of the Water-Garden who achieved Success through Forbearance]

Tu Shih Ping Lüeh 讀史兵略.
Accounts of Battles in the Official Histories.
See Hu Lin-I (*1*).

Tu Shu Min Chhiu Chi, Chiao Chêng 讀書敏求記校證.
Record of Diligently Sought for and Carefully Collated Books.
Chhing, +1684; first pr. +1726.
Chhien Tsêng 錢曾.
Cf. Têng & Biggerstaff (1), 1st ed. p. 42.

Tung Ching Chi 東京記.
Records of the Eastern Capital.
Sung, *c.* +1065.
Sung Min-Chhiu 宋敏求.
Now extant only in quotations.

Tung Ching Mêng Hua Lu 東京夢華錄.
Dreams of the Glories of the Eastern Capital (Khaifêng).
S/Sung, +1148 (referring to the two decades which ended with the fall of the capital of N/Sung in +1126 and the completion of the move to Hangchow in +1135).
Mêng Yuan-Lao 孟元老.

Wan Shu Chi 宛署記.
See *Yuan Shu Tsa Chi*.

Wang Wên Chhêng Kung Chhüan Shu 王文成公全書.
Collected Writings of Wang Shou-Jen (Wang Yang-Ming).
Ming, +1574.
Ed. Hsieh Thing-Chieh 謝廷傑.
Cf. Franke (4), p. 138.

Wei Kung Ping Fa Chi Pên 衛公兵法輯本.
Military Treatise of (Li) Wei-Kung.
Thang, +7th.
Li Ching 李靖.
Fragments collected by Wang Tsung-I (Chhing) 汪宗沂.

Wei Lüeh 魏略.
Memorable Things of the Wei Kingdom (San Kuo).
San Kuo (Wei) or Chin, +3rd or +4th century.
Yü Huan 魚豢.

Wên Li Su 問禮俗.
Questions on Popular Ceremonies and Beliefs.
San Kuo/Wei, *c.* +225.
Tung Hsün 董勛.
In *YHSF* ch. 28, pp. 72*a* ff.

Wo Chhing Thun Thien Chhê Chhung I 倭情屯田車銃議.
Discussions on the Use of Military-Agricultural Settlements, Muskets, Field Artillery and Mobile Shields against the Japanese (Pirates).
Ming, *c.* +1585.
Chao Shih-Chên 趙士禎.
Chhê Chhung Thu is a supplement to this.

Wu Ching Shêng Lüeh 五經聖略.
The (Essence of the) Five (Military) Classics, for Imperial Consultation.
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Wang Shu 王洙.
Now extant only in quotations.

Wu Ching Tsung Yao 武經總要.
Collection of the Most Important Military Techniques [compiled by Imperial Order].
Sung, +1040 (+1044). Repr. +1231 and *c.* +1510. This Ming edition is the oldest extant now.
Ed. Tsêng Kung-Liang 曾公亮 assisted by Yang Wei-Tê 楊惟德 and Ting Tu 丁度.

Wu Ching Yao Lan 武經要覽.
Essential Readings in the Most Important Military Techniques (lit. Classics).
Title of one of the Wan-Li editions of *Wu Ching Tsung Yao*.

Wu Hsien Chih 吳縣志.
Local History and Geography of Wu-hsien (Suchow in Chiangsu).
Chhing, +1691 (2nd ed.).
Ed. Sun Phei 孫佩.

Wu I Thu Phu Thung Chih 武藝圖譜通志.
Illustrated Encyclopaedia of Military Arts.
Korea (Chosŏn), +1790.
Ed. Pak Chega 朴齊家 & Yi Tŏngmu 李德懋.
Based on an earlier draft by Han Kyo 韓嶠 done in the +1590s in consultation with Chinese military technologists then in Korea fighting the Japanese under Hideyoshi (*Chongjo Sillok*, 30/31*a*).
Cf. *Muye Tobo T'ongji Ŏnhae*, the Korean version of the text.

Wu Li Hsiao Shih 物理小識.
Small Encyclopaedia of the Principles of Things.
Chhing, +1664.
Fang I-Chih 方以智.
Cf. Hirth (17)

Wu Lin Chiu Shih 武林舊事.
Institutions and Customs of the Old Capital (Hangchow).
Sung, *c.* +1270 (but referring to events from about +1165 onwards).
Chou Mi 周密.

Wu Lüeh Huo Chhi Thu Shuo 武略火器圖說.
Illustrated Account of Gunpowder Weapons and their Use in Various Tactical Situations.
Ming, *c.* +1560.
Incorporated in *Wu Pei Chhüan Shu*, q.v.
Hu Tsung-Hsien 胡宗憲.

Wu Lüeh Shen Chi 武略神機.
The Magically(Effective) Arm in Various Tactical Situations [musketry].
Ming, *c.* +1550.
Hu Hsien-Chung 胡獻忠 (perhaps Hu Hsien-Chung 胡憲仲).
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 139.

Wu Lüeh Shen Chi Huo Yao 武略神機火藥.
On Gunpowder for Muskets and their Use in Various Tactical Situations.
Ming, *c.* +1560.
Incorporated in *Wu Pei Chhüan Shu*, q.v.
Hu Tsung-Hsien 胡宗憲.

Wu Pei Chhüan Shu 武備全書.
Complete Collection of Works on Armament Technology (including Gunpowder Weapons).
Ming, +1621.
Ed. Phan Khang 潘康.

Wu Pei Chih 武備志.
Treatise on Armament Technology.
Ming, prefaces of +1621, pr. +1628.
Mao Yuan-I 茅元儀.
Cf. Franke (4), p. 209.

Wu Pei Chih Lüeh 武備志略.
Classified Material from the Treatise on Armament Technology.
Chhing, *c.* +1660.
Fu Yü 傅禹.

Wu Pei Chih Shêng Chih 武備制勝志.
The Best Designs in Armament Technology.
Ming, *c.* +1628.
Mao Yuan-I 茅元儀.
MS of 1843 in the Cambridge University Library.
Cf. Franke (4), p. 209.

Wu Pei Hsin Shu 武備新書.
New Book on Armament Technology [very similar to *Chi Hsiao Hsin Shu*, q.v.].
Ming, +1630.
Attrib. Chhi Chi-Kuang 戚繼光.
True compiler unknown.

Wu Pei Huo Lung Ching 武備火龍經.
The Fire-Drake Manual and Armament Technology [gunpowder weapons and firearms].
Ming, completed after +1628, but containing

Wu Pei Huo Lung Ching (cont.)
much material from earlier versions of the *Huo Lung Ching*.
Attrib. Chiao Yü 焦玉.
Cf. Ho Ping-Yü & Wang Ling (1).

Wu Pei Pi Shu 武備秘書.
Confidential Treatise on Armament Technology [a compilation of selections from earlier works on the same subject].
Chhing, late +17th; (repr. 1800).
Shih Yung-Thu 施永圖.

Wu Pien 武編.
Military Compendium [technology and equipment, including Western-influenced firearms].
Ming, *c.* +1550.
Thang Shun-Chih 唐順之.

Wu Shih Pên Tshao 吳氏本草.
Mr. Wu's Pharmaceutical Natural History.
San Kuo (Wei), *c.* +235.
Wu Phu 吳普.
Extant only in quotations in later literature.

Wu Shih Thao Lüeh 武試韜略.
A Classified Quiverful of Military Texts.
Ming, before +1621.
Wang Wan-Chhing 汪萬頃.

Wu Shu Ta Chhüan 武書大全.
Complete Collection of the Military Books.
Ming, +1636.
Ed. Yin Shang 尹商.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (2), p. 12.

Wu Tai Shih Chi 五代史記.
See *Hsin Wu Tai Shih*.

Wu Ti Chen Chhüan 無敵眞詮.
Reliable Explanations of Invincibility.
Ming, *c.* +1430.
Writer unknown.
Now extant only in quotations.

Wu Tu Fu 吳都賦.
Ode on the Capital of Wu (Kingdom).
Chin, *c.* +270.
Tso Ssu 左思.
Tr. von Zach (6).

Wu Yüeh Pei Shih 吳越備史.
Materials for the History of the Wu-Yüeh State (in the Five Dynasties Period).
Sung, *c.* +995.
Lin Yü 林禹.

Yawata Gudōki.
See *Hachiman Gudō-Kun*.

Yin Fu Ching 陰符經.
The Harmony of the Seen and the Unseen.
Thang, *c*, +735 (unless in essence a preserved late Warring States document).
Li Chhüan 李筌.
TT/30. Cf. *TT*/105–24. Also in *TTCY* (Tou Chi, 6).
Tr. Legge (5). Cf. Maspero (7), p. 222.

Yü Chhien Chün Chhi Chi Mu 御前軍器集模.
Imperial Specifications for Army Equipment.
Sung, *c.* +1150.
Writer unknown.
Now extant only in quotations.

Yü Chih Thang Than Wei 玉芝堂談薈.
Thickets of Talk from the Jade-Mushroom Hall.
Ming, *c.* +1620.
Hsü Ying-Chhiu (ed.) 徐應秋.

Yu Chu Shih I 友助事宜.
The Organisation of Friends for Mutual Protection (in the Ming militia).
Ming, *c.* +1600.
Chin Shêng 金聲.

Yü Ssu Chi 玉笥集.
Jade Box Collection [poetry].
Yuan, *c.* +1341.
Chang Hsien 張憲.

Yü Tung Hsü Lu 餘冬序錄.
Late Winter Talks.
Ming, +1528.
Ho Mêng-Chhun 何孟春.
Cf. Franke (4), p. 105.

Yü Tung Hsü Lu Tsê Chhao Wai Phien 餘冬序 (or 緒) 錄摘抄外扁.
Further Collection of Selected Excerpts from the 'Late Winter Talks'.
Orig. Ming, +1528.
Ho Mêng-Chhun 何孟春.

Yuan Shih 元史.
History of the Yuan (Mongol) Dynasty [+1206 to +1367].
Ming, *c.* +1370.
Sung Lien 宋濂 *et al.*
Yin-Tê Index, no. 35.

Yuan Shu Tsa Chi 宛署雜記.
Records of the Seat of Government at Yuan (-phing), (Peking). [or, Miscellaneous Records of a Minor Office].
Ming, +1593.
Shen Pang 沈榜.

Yüeh Ling Kuang I 月令廣義.
Amplifications of the 'Monthly Ordinances'.
Ming, soon after +1592.
Fêng Ying-Ching 馮應京.

Yüeh Shan Tshung Than 月山叢談.
Collected Discourses of Mr Moon-Mountain (i.e. Li Wên-Fêng; Yüeh Shan Tzu).
Ming, *c.* +1545.
Li Wên-Fêng 李文鳳.

Yün Lu Man Chhao 雲麓漫抄.
Random Jottings at Yün-Lu.
Sung, +1206 (referring to events of about +1170 onwards).
Chao Yen-Wei 趙彥衛.

Yünnan Chi Wu Chhao Huang 雲南機務鈔黃.
A Rough Statement of the Course of Affairs in Yunnan.
Ming, +1388.
Chang Tan 張紞.
Cf. W. Franke (4), p. 56.

B. CHINESE AND JAPANESE BOOKS AND JOURNAL ARTICLES SINCE +1800

Anon. (*33*).
San Mên Hsia Tshao Yün I Chi 三門峽漕運遺跡.
The Remains of the Canal [and the Trackers' Galleries] in the San Mên Gorge (of the Yellow River).
Kho-Hsüeh, Peking, 1959.
(Academia Sinica, Archaeological Field Studies, no. 8.)

Anon. (*209*).
Chung-Kuo Li-Shih Po-wu-kuan Chhen Lieh ti i phi Ming-Tai Huo-Chhi Fu-Yuan Mo-Hsing 中國歷史博物館陳列的一批明代火器復原模型.
Comments on the Reconstructions and Models of the Fire-Weapons of the Ming period displayed in the National Historical Museum.
WWTK, 1959, no. 10 (no. 110), 53.

Anon. (*210*).
Yin Chhiao Shan Han Mu Chu Chien 'Sun Tzu Ping Fa' 銀雀山漢墓竹簡「孫子兵法」.
The Versions of 'Master Sun's Art of War' found on Bamboo strips in a Han Tomb at Silver-sparrows Mountain.
Wên-wu, Peking, 1975, 1976.

Anon. (*211*) (ed.)
Nei Mêng-Ku Wên-Wu Tzu-Liao Hsüan Chi 內蒙古文物資料選集.
Choice Collection of Cultural Objects of Inner Mongolia [album].
Huhihot, 1964.

Anon. (*212*).
Chhing-Tai Chhou-Pan I-Wu Shih-Mo 清代籌辦夷務始末.
Complete Record of the Management of Barbarian Affairs during the Chhing Dynasty.
Peking, 1930.
Cf. Hummel (2), p. 383.

Anon. (*213*).
Mao Sê Chhiang Yung Fa Thu Shuo 毛瑟槍用法圖說.
Illustrated Manual of the Use of the Mauser Rifle.
c. +1890.

Anon. (*214*).
Hua Hsüeh Fa-Chan Chien Shih 化學發展簡史.
A Simple Introduction to the History of Chemistry.
Kho-Hsüeh Chhu-pan-shê, Peking, 1980.

Anon. (*262*).
Chichibu Muku Jinja no Ryūsei 秩父椋神社の龍勢.
The Dragon-Power Festival at the Muku (Shinto) Shrine in Chichibu District (formerly Saitama)—rocket-launching displays.
ANA 1983, no. 170, 9.

Anon. (*263*).
Ta-Tsu Shih Kho 大足石刻.
The Stone-Carvings (in the cave Temples) of Tu-Tsu (Szechuan).
Szechuan Fine Arts Academy, Chhêngtu, 1962.

Aoji Rinsō (*1*) 青地林宗.
Kikai Kanran 氣海觀瀾.
A Survey of the Ocean of Pneuma [astronomy and meteorological physics].
Japan, 1825; enlarged in 1851 by Kawamoto Kōmin.
In. *NKKZ*, vol. 6.
Cf. Tuge Hideomi (1), p. 81.

Arakawa Hideyoshi (*1*)
Bunkyu no Eki ni Mohogun wa Roketto o Rioy shita ka?
Were Rockets used in the Mongol Invasions (+1274 and +1281)?
NR, 1960, no. 148, 86.

Arima Seihō (*1*) 有馬成甫.
Kahō no Kigen to Sono Denryū 火砲の起原とその傳流.
On the Origin and Diffusion of Cannon and Firearms.
Yoshikawa Kōbunka, Tokyo, 1962.

Arima Seihō 有馬成甫 & Kuroda Genji (*1*) 黑田源次.
Kōbu Zaimeihō ni tsuite 洪武在銘砲について.
On Self-dated Inscribed Cannon of the Hung-Wu reign-period (+1368 to +1398).
MMO, 1934, **16**, 1.

Arizaka Shōzō (*1*) 有坂鉊藏.
Heiki Enkaku Zusetsu 兵器沿革圖說.
Illustrated Account of the Development of Military Weapons.
Tokyo.

Arisaka Shozō (*2*) 有坂鉊藏.
Heikikō 兵器考.
A Study of Military Armaments, 4 vols.
Yuzankaku, Tokyo, 1935–7.

Chang Chou-Hsün (*1*) 張焯熏.
Chhi-Shih Nien Lai Chung-Kuo Ping Chhi Chih Chih-Tsao 七十年來中國兵器之制造.
The Manufacture of Weapons in China during the past Seventy Years.
TFTC, 1936, **33** (no. 2), 21 (104053).

Chang Hui (*1*) 章回.
Huo-Yao ti Fa-Ming 火藥的發明
On the Invention of Gunpowder.
Thung-Su Tu-Wu, Peking, 1956.

Chang Wei-Hua (*1*) 張維華.
Ming Shih Fo-Lang-Chi Lü-Sung, Ho-Lan, I-Ta-Li-

Chang Wei-Hua (*1*) (*cont.*)
Ya, Ssu Chuan Chu Shih 明史佛郎機呂宋和蘭意大里亞四傳注釋.
A Commentary on the Four Chapters on Portugal, Spain, Holland and Italy in the *History of the Ming Dynasty*.
YCHP, Monograph Series, no. 7.
Peiping, 1934.

Chang Wên-Hu (*1*) 張文虎.
Shu I Shih Shih Tshun 舒藝室詩存.
Selected Poems from the Pavilion of Relaxed Aesthetic Contemplation.
Nanking, *c.* +1860.

Chang Yün-Ming (*1*) 張運明.
Hei Huo-Yao Shih Yung Thien Jam Liu-Huang Phei Chih ti Ma? 黑火葯是用天然硫磺配制的嗎.
Was Black (Gun-)Powder made from native Sulphur?
CKKC, 1982 (no. 1), 32.

Chao Erh-Hsün 趙爾巽 & Kho Shao-Min (*1*) 柯劭忞.
Chhing Shih Kao 清史稿.
Draft History of the Chhing Dynasty.
Peking, 1914–27; pr. 1927–8.

Chao Hua-Shan (*1*) 晁華山.
Sian Chhu-Thu-ti Yuan-Tai Thung Shou Chhung yü Hei Huo-Yao 西安出土的元代銅手銃與黑火藥.
A Bronze Hand-Gun excavated at Sian and still containing Traces of Gunpowder.
KKWW, 1981, no. 3 (no. 7), 73.

Chao Thieh-Han (*1*) 趙鐵寒.
Huo-Yao ti Fa-Ming 火藥的發明.
On the Invention of Gunpowder.
Nat. Hist. Museum, Thaipei, 1960.
With Engl. summary, in many ways misleading (*Coll. Papers on Hist. and Art of China*, 1st series, no. 4)
Abstr. J. Needham, *RBS*, 1967, 6, no. 686.

Chêng Chen-To (*1*) (ed.) 鄭振鐸.
Chhüan Kuo Chi-Pên Chien-Shê Kung-Chhêng Chung Chhu-Thu Wên-Wu Chan-Lan Thu Lu 全國基本建設工程中出土文物展覽圖錄.
Illustrated Catalogue of an Exhibition of Archaeological Objects discovered during the Course of Engineering Operations in the National Basic Reconstruction Programme. Exhibition Committee, Peking, 1954.

Chêng Shao-Tsung (*1*) 鄭紹宗.
Jehol Hsing-lung (Hsien) Fa-Hsien-ti Chan-Kuo Sêng-Chhan Kung-Chü Chu Fan 熱河興隆發現的戰國生產工具鑄範.
(Cast-Iron) Casting Moulds for Tool Production of the Warring States Period found at Hsing-lung (Hsien) in Jehol (Province).
KKTH, 1956, 2 (no. 1), 29.

Chêng Tso-Hsin (*2*) 鄭作新.
Chung-Kuo Niao Lei Fên Pu Ming Lu 中國鳥類分布名錄.
A Dictionary of Chinese Birds.
2nd ed. Kho-Hsüeh, Peking, 1976.

Chêng Wei (*1*) 鄭爲.
'Chia Khou Phan Chhê' Thu Chüan 閘口盤車圖卷.
The Scroll-Painting entitled 'The Horizontal Water-Wheels beside the Sluice-Gate' [by Wei Hsien, *c.* +970].
WWTK, 1966 (no. 2), 17.

Chhêng Tung (*1*) 成東.
Chiao Yü ti Chen Shih Shen Fên Chi Chhi Huo Kung Shu ti Shih Liao Chieh Chih 焦玉的眞實身份及其火攻書史料價值.
On Chiao Yü's Identity and Biography, with a Discussion of the Value of his Writings in the History of Firearms and Artillery.
Mimeographed article issued by the Chinese Arsenals Association (Chung Kuo Ping Kung Hsüeh Hui), Peking, 1983.

Chiang Chhen-Ying (*1*) 姜宸英.
Chan Yuan Cha Chi 湛園札記.
Notes (on the Classics) from the Still Garden. 1829.

Chou Chia-Hua (*1*) 周嘉華.
Huo Yao ho Huo Yao Wu Chhi 火藥和火藥武器.
On the History of Gunpowder and Firearms.
Art. in Anon (*202*), *Chung-Kuo Ku-Tai Kho Chi Chhêng-Chiu*, 1978, p. 203.

Chou Wei (*1*) 周緯.
Chung-Kuo Ping Chhi Shih Kao 中國兵器史稿.
A Draft History of Chinese Weapons.
Posthumous pub., ed. Kuo Pao-Chün 郭寶鈞.
San-Lien, Peking, 1957.

Chu Chhi-Chhien 朱啟鈐, Liang Chhi-Hsiung 梁啟雄 and Liu Ju-Lin (*1*) 劉儒林.
Chê Chiang Lu [part 7] 哲匠錄.
Biographies of [Chinese] Engineers, Architects, Technologists and Master-Craftsmen (continued).
BSRCA, 1934, *5* (no. 2), 74.

Chu Shêng (*1*) 朱晟.
Huo Yao, Shen, Yang ti Fa-Hsien yü Lien Tan Shu ti 'Fu Huo' yu Kuan 火藥砷氧的發現與煉丹術的「伏火」有關.
The Relationship of the Concept of 'Subduing by Fire' in Alchemical Elixir-making to the Discovery of Gunpowder, Arsenic and Oxygen.
Paper given at the Second National Conference on the History of Chemisty (Chinese Society for the History of Science and Technology).

Chu Shêng & Ho Tuan-Shêng (*1*) 朱晟 & 何端生.
Huo Yao, Yang, ti Fa-Hsien yü Lian Tan Shu ti 'Fu Huo' yu kuan 火藥，氧的發現與煉丹術的「伏火」有關.
How the Concept of 'Subduing by Fire' in Alchemical Elixir-making relates to the Discoveries of Gunpowder and Oxygen.
Typed paper without indication of origin, in

Chu Shêng & Ho Tuan-Shêng (*1*) (*cont.*)
East Asian History of Science Library, Cambridge.

Chung Thai (*1*) 鍾泰.
Chung-Kuo Chê-Hsüeh Shih 中國哲學史
A History of Chinese Philosophy.
Com. Press, Shanghai, *c.* 1930.

Chhen Chêng-Hsiang (*2*) 陳正祥.
'Chen-La Feng Thu Chi' ti Yen-Chiu 眞臘風土記的研究.
Researches on [Chou Tai-Kuan's] 'Description of Cambodia' [+1297].
Chinese University Press, Shatin, Hongkong, 1975.

Chhen Shou-Chhi (*1*) (ed.) 陳壽祺.
Fukien Thung Chih 福建通志
Gazetteer of Fukien Province.
Completed 1833, pr. 1867.

Chhen Thing-Yuan 陳廷元 & Li Chen (*1*) (ed.) 李震.
Chung-Kuo Li-Tai Chan-Chêng Shih 中國歷代戰爭史.
A History of Wars and Military Campaigns in China, 16 vols. (with abundant maps).
Armed Forces University and Li-Ming Wên-Hua Shih-Yeh, Thaipei, 1963; repr. 1972; finalised 1976.

Chhen Wên-Shih (*1*) 陳文石.
Chhing-Jen Ju Kuan Chhien ti Shou Kung Yeh 清人入關前的手工業.
The Technical Handicrafts and Industries of the Manchus before their Invasion of China.
AS/BIHP, 1962, **34** (Hu Shih Festschrift), 291.
Abstr. *RBS*, 1969, **8**, no. 246.

Chhen Yuan (*3*) 陳垣.
Yuan Hsi-Yü Jên Hua Hua Khao 元西域人華化考.
On the Sinisation of 'Western People' During the Yuan Dynasty.
Pt I. *KHCK*, 1923, **1**, 573.
Pt II. *YCHP*, 1927, **2**, 171.

Fang Hao (*3*) 方豪.
Fu Miu Yen-Wei hsien-sêng Lun Pei Chhao Hu Su Shu 復繆彥威先生論北朝胡俗書.
A Letter in answer to a Letter of Mr Miu Yen-Wei discussing the Foreign Customs Prevalent in the Northern Dynasties.
ISP/WSFK, no. 26.

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*1*) 馮家昇.
Huo-Yao ti Fa-Hsien chi chhi Chhuan Pu 火藥的發現及其傳佈.
The Discovery of Gunpowder and its Diffusion.
AP/HJ, 1947, *5*, 29.
Abstr. in *KMJP* 1952, 7 June (Li Shih Chiao Hsüeh, no. 34).

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*2*) 馮家昇.
Hui Chiao Kuo Wei Huo-Yao Yu Chung-Kuo Chhuan Ju Ou-Chou ti Chhiao Liang 回教國爲火藥由中國傳入歐洲的橋樑.
The Muslims as the Transmitters of Gunpowder from China to Europe.
AP/HJ, 1949, 1.

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*3*) 馮家昇.
Tu Hsi-Yang ti Chi Chung Huo-Chhi Shih Hou 讀西洋的幾種火器史後.
Notes on reading some of the Western Histories of Firearms.
AP/HJ, 1947, *5*, 279.

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*4*) 馮家昇.
Huo-Yao ti Yu Lai chi chhi Chhuan Ju Ou-chou ti Ching Kuo 火藥的由來及其傳入歐洲的經過.
On the Origin of Gunpowder and its Transmission to Europe.
Essay in Li Kuang-Pi & Chhien Chün-Yeh, (q.v.), p. 33.
Peking 1955.

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*6*) 馮家昇.
Huo-Yao ti Fa-Ming ho Hsi Chhuan 火藥的發明和西傳.
The Discovery of Gunpowder and its Transmission to the West.
Hua-tung, Shanghai, 1954.
Revised eds. Jen-min, Shanghai, 1962, 1978.

Fêng Chia-Shêng (*8*) 馮家昇.
Tu Hsi-Yang ti Chi Phien Huo Yao Huo Chhi Wên Hou 讀西洋的幾篇火藥火器文後.
Notes on Reading some of the Western Histories of Gunpowder and Firearms.
AP/HJ, 1949, **7**, 241.

Fu Chin-Chhüan (*5*) 傅金銓.
Shih Chin Shih 試金石.
On the Testing of (what is meant by) 'Metal' and 'Mineral'.
c. 1820.
In *Wu Chen Phien Ssu Chu* ed.

Han Kuo-Chün (*1*) 韓國鈞.
Wu Wang Chang Shih-Chhêng Tsai Chi 吳王張士誠載紀.
A Memoir on Chang Shih-Chhêng, Prince of Wu (rebel against the Yuan dynasty, and founder of the short ill-fated dynasty of Chou, +1354 to +1357).
Shanghai, 1932.

Hara Tomio (*1*) 洞富雄.
Teppō Denrai to son Eikyo 鐵砲傳來.
The Social Effects of the Coming of Muskets to Japan.
Azekura Shobō, Tokyo, 1959.

Hara Tomio (*2*) 洞富雄.
Tanegashima Jū 種子島銃.
The Muskets of Tanegashima Island.
Awaji Shobō Shinsha, Tokyo, 1958.

Harada Yoshito 原田淑人 & Komai Kazuchika (*1*) = (1) 駒井和愛.
Shina Koki Zukō 支那古器圖考.
Chinese Antiquities (Pt. 1, Arms and Armour; Pt. 2 Vessels [Ships] and Vehicles).
Tōhō Bunka Gakuin, Tokyo, 1937.

Harada Yoshito 原田淑人 & Komai Kazuchika (*2*) = (2) 駒井和愛.
Jōto, Mōko Ronnōru ni okeru Gendai miyako-ato no Chōsa 上都蒙古ロニノールに於ける元代都址の調査.

Harada Yoshito (*cont.*)
Shangtu; the Summer Capital of the Yuan Dynasty at Dolon Nor, Mongolia.
Toa-Koko Gaku Kwai, Tokyo, 1941 (Archaeologia Orientalis, B, no. 2). With English résumé.

Ho Ping-Yü (*1*) 何丙郁.
Sung Ming Ping Shu so Chien ti 'Tu Yen', 'Tu Wu' ho 'Yen Mu' 宋明兵書所見的「毒煙」,「毒霧」和「煙幕」.
On the 'Poison-smoke', 'Poison-fog' and 'Smoke-screen', described in the Military Texts of the Sung and Ming Periods.
KKPT, 1983, **2**, 1 (Twentieth Anniversary Commemoration Volume).

Hu Chien-Chung (*1*) 胡建中.
Cho-Lung ti Shêng Tan Hsia 卓隆的盛彈匣.
The Best Type of Magazine for Artillery Pieces (discusses the use of bronze casting, surrounded by cast-iron for cannons in Chhing tewes, "composite castings", called *thieh hsin thung* 鐵心銅).
TCC, 1984, no. 2, 24.

Hu Lin-I (*1*) 胡林翼.
Tu Shih Ping Lüeh 讀史兵略.
Accounts of Battles in the Official Histories.
Peking, 1861.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 159.

Huang Shang (*1*) 黃裳.
Shu ti Ku Shih 書的故事.
A Bookman's Reminiscences.
TSHU, 1979, **4**, 126.

Hung Huan-Chhun (*1*) 洪煥椿.
Shih chih Shih-san Shih-Chi Chung-Kuo Kho-Hsüeh-ti Chu-Yao Chhêng-Chiu 十至十三世紀中國科學的主要成就.
The Principal Scientific (and Technological) Achievements in China from the +10th to the +13th centuries (inclusive), [the Sung Period].
LSYC, 1959, **5** (no. 3), 27.
Abstr. J. Needham, *RBS*, 1965, **5**, no. 809.

Huang Thien-Chu, Tshai Chhang-Chhi & Liao Yuan-Chhüan (*1*) 黃天柱, 蔡長溪 & 廖淵泉.
Kho Hsüeh Chia Ting Kung-Chhen, Chung-Kuo Chin Tai Chün Huo 科學家丁拱辰中國近代軍火.
The Scientist (and Engineer) Ting Kung-Chhen and Modern Chinese Fire-Weapons.
FCLT 1982, no. 1, 81.

Hsi Tsê-Tsung (*6*) 席澤宗.
Huo Chien ti Chia Shih 火箭的家世.
Our Rocket Heritage.
CKHW, 7 June 1962.

Hsiang Ta (*5*) 向達.
Liang Chung Hai Tao Chen Ching 兩種海道針經.
An Edition of Two Rutters [the *Shun Fêng Hsiang Sung* (Fair Winds for Escort), perhaps *c.* +1430, from a MS of *c.* +1575; and the *Chih Nan Chêng Fa* (General Compass-Bearing Sailing Directions) of *c.* +1660].
Chung-Hua, Peking, 1961.

Hsiung Fang-Shu (*1*) 熊方樞.
Huo Chhi Ming Chung 火器命中.
Artillery Exercises.
c. 1850.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 163, (*2*), p. 19.

Hsü Chi-Yü (*1*) 徐繼畬.
Ying Huan Chih Lüeh 瀛環志略.
Classified Records of the Encircling Oceans (world geography).
1850; repr. 1866.

Hsü Hui-Lin (*1*) 許會林.
Chung-Kuo Huo-Yao Huo-Chhi Shih Hua 中國火藥火器史話.
Historical Talks on (the Development of) Gunpowders and Fire-Weapons in China.
Kho Hsüeh, Peking, 1986.

Inosaki Takaoki (*1*) 井崎隆興.
Gendai no Take no Sembai to Sono Shikō-igi 元代の竹の專とその施行意義.
On the Bamboo Monopoly [for bows, crossbows, arrows and even charcoal for gunpowder] in the Yuan period [between +1267 and +1292].
TK, 1957, **16**, 135.
Abstr. *RBS*, 1962, **3**, no. 263.

Iwasaki Tetsushi (*1*) 岩崎鐵志.
Takeshima-ryu Hojutsu Denpan no Kenkyu; Mikawa Tawara Hanshi Murakami Sadahe-o Chūshin-ne 高島流砲術伝播の研究；三河田原藩士村上定平を中心に.
A Study of the Diffusion of the Knowledge of Gunnery from Takeshima, with special reference to the Master Murakami Sadahe of the Tawara Clan (1808 to 1872).
Art. in *Higashi-asia no Kagaku*, ed. Yoshida Tadashi (*1*), p. 109.

Jih Yüeh 日月 & Chung Yung-Ho 鍾永和 (*1*) = (*1*).
Yen-shui Kuan Fêng Phao 鹽水觀蜂炮.
'Rocket Hives' in Yen-shui; a Peculiar Tradition.
SINRA, 1984, **9** (no. 3), 106.

Kawamoto Kōmin (*1*) 川本幸民.
Kikai Kanran Kōgi 氣海觀瀾廣義.
Enlargement of the 'Survey of the Ocean of Pneuma'.
Japan, 1851.
Cf. Tuge Hideomi (*1*), p. 81.

Kao Chih-Hsi 高至喜, Liu Lien-Yin 劉廉銀 *et al.* (*1*).
Chhangsha Shih Tung-pei Chiao Ku Mu Tsang Fa-Chüeh Chien-Pao 長沙市東北郊古墓葬發掘簡報.
Short Report on the Excavations of Tombs (of Warring States and Later Periods) in the North-eastern Suburbs of Chhangsha.
KKTH, 1959 (no. 12), 649.

Kho Shao-Min (*1*) 柯紹忞.
Hsin Yuan Shih 新元史.
New History of the Yuan Dynasty (issued as an official dynastic history by Presidential Order).
Peiping, 1922.

Ku Yün-Chhüan (*1*) 古連泉.
Kuangtung Kao-yao Hsien Fa-Hsien Ming Chhu Thung Thieh Chhung 廣東高要縣發現明初銅鐵銃.
Hand-guns of Bronze and Iron, Early Ming in Date, found at Kao-yao Hsien in Kuangtung.
WW, 1981, no. 4 (no. 299), 94.

Kuan Chhêng-Hsüeh & Wang Yü (*1*) 管成學 & 王禹.
Tsung 'Khua Fu Chu Jih' Than Chhi; Wo Kuo Ku-Tai Chieh-Chhü-ti Kho-Hsüeh Fa-Ming 从「夸父逐日」談起；我國古代傑出的科學發明.
'Khua Fu pursuing the sun'; Talks on the Great Scientific Discoveries made in our Country in Older Times. (Pp. 110–110 has a brief account of the Invention of Gunpowder and Firearms).
Chhilin Jen Min, Chhangchhuen, 1978.

Kung Chen-Lin (*1*) 龔振麟.
Thieh Mu Thu Shuo 鐵模圖說.
Illustrated Account of a Method of (Casting Cannon in Cast-) Iron Moulds.
Shanghai, 1846.
Reprinted in *Hai Kuo Thu Chih*, ch. 86, pp. 1 *a* ff.

Kuo Chêng-I (*1*) 郭正誼.
Kuan-Yu Huo-Yao Fa-Ming ti I-Hsieh Shih-Liao 關於火藥發明的一些史料.
Some New Materials on the Discovery of Gunpowder.
HHSTP, 1981, no. 6.

Kuo Chêng-I (*2*) 郭正誼.
Sun Ssu-Mo pu shih Huo Yuo Fa-Ming Jen 孫思邈不是火藥發明人.
That Sun Ssu-Mo was not the Discoverer of Gunpowder.
TJPCF, 1981 (no. 5), 62.

Kuo Chêng-I (*3*) 郭正誼.
Huo-Yao Fa-Ming ti Hsin Than Thao 火藥發明的新探討.
New Investigations on the Discovery of Gunpowder.
Offprint without indication of origin (in EAHoSL).

Kuo Hua-Jo (*1*) 郭化若.
Chin I Hsin Pien 'Sun Tzu Ping Fa' 今譯新編「孫子兵法」.
A New Transcription of the 'Art of War of Master Sun' into Modern Chinese.
Jen-Min, Peking, 1957; repr. Chung-hua, Shanghai, 1964; Jen-Min, Shanghai, 1977.

Kuroda Genji (*1*) 黑田源次.
Shinki Kahōron 神機火砲論.
On the Magically Efficacious Weapons (Early Chinese Hand-guns and Bombards).
MGK, 1936, 4, 43.
Abstr. in *SHHH*, 1937, 1 (no. 4), 24.

Lei Hai-Tsung (*1*) 雷海宗.
Chung-Kuo ti Ping 中國的兵.
The Historical Development of the Chinese Soldier.
SHKS, 1935, 1, 1.
Eng. abstr. in *CIB*, 1936, 1, 5 (abstr. no. 12).

Li Chhung-Chou (*3*) 李崇州.
Chung-Kuo Ming-Tai-ti Shiu Lei-Shih-Chieh Shui Lei-ti Pi Tsu 中國明代的水雷；世界水雷的鼻祖.
The Chinese Naval Mine of the Ming Period; a Pioneer Device in the World History of Naval Mines.
CKKCSL 1985, 6 (no. 2), 32.

Li I-Yu (*1*) 李逸友.
Nei Mêng-Ku Tho-Kho-Tho Chhêng ti Khao-Ku Fa-Hsien 內蒙古托克托城的考古發現.
Archaeological Discoveries at Thokhto City in Inner Mongolia.
WWTLTK, 1981, 4, 210.

Li Shan-Lan (*1*) 李善蘭.
Huo Chhi Chen Chüeh 火器眞訣.
Instructions on Artillery.
c. 1845.
Cf. Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*), p. 162, (*2*), p. 19.

Li Shao-I (*1*) 李少一.
Shuo Phao 說礮.
Brief Discourse on Trebuchets.
PKCS, 1981, no. 5 (no. 22), 32 (1312).

Li Ti (*1*) 李迪.
Chung-Kuo Jen Min tsai Huo-Chien Fang-Mien-ti Fa-Ming chhuang-Tsao 中國人民在火箭方面的發明創造.
On the Discovery and Development of Rocket Propulsion among the Chinese People.
LHHP, 1978 (no. 1), 81.

Li Yen (*1*) 李岩.
Tshung Hei Huo Yao tao Hsien-Tai Kung Yeh Cha Yao 從黑火藥到現代工業炸藥.
From Black Powder to the Contemporary Explosives used in Industry.
PKCS, 1980, no. 2, 63 (143).

Liang Chang-Chü (*1*) 梁章鉅.
Lang Chi Tshung Than 浪跡叢談.
Impressions Collected during Official Travels.
c. 1845.

Lin Tsê-Hsü (*2*) 林則徐.
Chao Phao Fa 炸礮法.
On the Manufacture of Artillery Shells.
In *HKTC*, ch. 87, pp. 6 *a*, *b*.

Lin Wên-Chao & Kuo Yung-Fang (*1*) 林文照 & 郭永芳.
Kuan-yü Fo-lang-chi Huo-Chhung tsui-tsao Chhuan Ju Chung-Kuo-ti Shih Chien Khao 關于佛郎機火銃最早傳入中國的時間考.
Textual Researches on the Date of the spread of the Fo-lang-chi (Portuguese breech-loading culverin) into China.
3rd. International Conference on the History of Science in China, Peking, 1984, Paper no. 69.

Liu Hsien-Chou (*12*) 劉仙洲.
Wo Kuo Ku-Tai Man Phao, Ti Lei ho Shui Lei Tzu-Tung Fa Huo Chuang Chih ti Fa Ming 我國古代慢炮, 地雷和水雷, 自動發火裝置的發明.
Chinese Inventions in the Field of the Construction and Timing of Bombs, Land Mines, Sea Moves and Limpet Mines.
WWTK, 1973, no. 11 (no. 210), 46.

Liu Yao-Han (*1*) 劉堯漢.
Yi Tsu ti Huo Chhi; 'Hu-Lu Fei Lei' 彝族的火器; 葫蘆飛雷.
A Fire-weapon of the Yi (Minority) People; the 'Gourd-shaped Flying Thunder' [an explosive bomb containing lead pellets].
Art. in Anon (*202*), *Chung-Kuo Ku-Tai Kho Chi Chhêng-Chiu*, 1978, p. 699.

Lo Hsiang-Lin (*6*) 羅香林.
Researches on a Cannon made in the 4th year of the Yang-Li reign-period of the Southern Ming (+1650) in Hongkong.
THSH, 1957, 2 (no. 10).

Lu Mou-Tê (*1*) 陸懋德.
Chung-Kuo Jen Fa-Ming Huo-Yao Huo-Phao Khao 中國人發明火藥火礮考.
A Study of the Invention of Gunpowder and Gunpowder Weapons by the Chinese.
CHJ, 1928, 5 (no. 1), 1489.

Lu Ta-Chieh (*1*) 陸達節.
Li-Tai Ping Shu Mu-Lu 歷代兵書目錄.
A Bibliography of (Chinese) Books on Military Science [all periods].
Nanking, 1933; repr. Thaipei, 1970.

Lu Ta-Chieh (*2*) 陸達節.
Chung-Kuo Ping-Hsüeh Hsien-Tsun Shu Mu; fu Li-Tai Ping Shu Kai Lun 中國兵學現存書目; 附歷代兵書概論.
A Bibliography of Extant Books on Military Science; with an Appended Essay on this genre of literature.
Kuangchow, 1944; repr. 1949.

Lung Wên-Pin (*1*) (ed.) 龍文彬.
Ming Hui Yao 明會要.
History of the Administrative Statutes of the Ming Dynasty.
c. 1870; pr. 1887.
Cf. Têng & Biggerstaff (1), p. 163.

Mêng Sên (*1*) 孟森.
Ming Tai Shih 明代史.
A History of the Ming Period.
Chunghua Tshung-Shu, Thaipei, 1957.

Mikami, Yoshio (*21*) 三上義夫.
Sō no Chinki no 'Shujōroku' notosekin ki no Kansetsu-shageki 宋の陳規の守城錄と投石機の間接射撃.
The *Shou Chhêng Lu* (Guide to the Defence of Cities) of Chhen Kuei of the Sung Dynasty, and the Use of Trebuchets.
TBGZ, 1941, no. 600.

Mikami Yoshio (*22*) 三上義夫.
'Kaisanki' no Dandō Mondai 改算記の彈道問題.
Problems of Ballistics in the *Kaisanki* (+1659).
KGZ, 1913, 8 (no. 4), 251.

Mikami Yoshio (*23*) 三上義夫.
Shizuki Tadao yaku 'Kaki Happō-den' no Dandō Mondai 志筑忠雄譯「火器發法傳」の彈道問題.
Ballistic Problems in the *Kaki Happō-den* translated by Shizuki Tadao (from the Dutch).
KGZ, 1915, 10 (no. 1), 1.

Mikami Yoshio (*24*) 三上義夫.
Koide Shūki no Dandō ni Kansuru Kenkyū 小出修喜の彈道に關する研究.
Studies on the Ballistics of Koide Shūki (1847).
KGZ, 1913, 8 (no. 1), 13.

Mikami Yoshio (*25*) 三上義夫.
'Kikai Kanran Kōgi' no Dandō-ron 「氣海觀瀾廣義」の彈道論.
Ballistics in the *Kikai Kanran Kōgi* (by Kawamoto Kōmin, following Aoji Rinsō).
KGZ, 1914, 9 (no. 4), 117.

Mikami Yoshio (*26*) 三上義夫.
Ikebe Harutsune no Dandō ni Kansuru Kōshiki 池部春常の彈に關する公式.
The Ballistic Formulae of Ikebe Harutsune.
KGZ, 1913, 8 (no. 3).

Miu Yu-Sun (*1*) 繆祐孫.
O Yu Hui Pien 俄遊彙編.
Narrative of a Journey into Russia (with Diary).
Peking, 1889.

Naganuma Kenkai (*1*) 長沼賢海.
Teppō no Denrai 鐵砲の傳來.
On the Introduction of Firearms to Japan.
RC, 1914, 23 (no. 6), 623.

Naganuma Kenkai (*2*) 長紹賢海.
Teppō no Denrai Hosetsu 鐵砲の傳來補說.
Further Evidence on the Introduction of Firearms to Japan.
RC, 1914, 24 (no. 2), 131.

Naganuma Kenkai (*3*) 長紹賢海.
Teppō no Deurai Ōtō 鐵砲の傳來應答.
A Reply on the Introduction of Firearms to Japan.
RC, 1915, 25 (no. 1), 52.

Naganuma Kenkai (*4*) 長紹賢海.
Dai Nihonshi Kōza 大日本史講座.
Lectures on the History of Japan.
Tokyo, 1929.

Nambō Heizō (*1*) 南坊平造.
Kayaku-wa Darega Hatsumei Shitaka? 火藥は誰が發明したか.
Who Really Invented Explosives?
KYHY, 1969, 28 (no. 4), 322; (no. 5), 403.

Okada Noboru (*1*) 岡田登.
Chūgoku Sōdai ni okeru Kaki to Kayaku Heiki 中國宋代における火器と火藥兵器.
Chinese Firearms and Guns in the Sung Dynasty.
JHPHARM, 1981, 16 (no. 2), 50.

Okada Noboru (*2*) 岡田登.

Okada Noboru (*2*) (*cont.*)
Chūgoku ni okeru Bakuchiku, Bakujō, Enka no Kigen to sono shoki no Haten 中國における爆竹，爆仗，煙火の起源とその初期の發展.
The Origin and Development of Crackers, Fire-Crackers and Fireworks in China.
RROWC, 1982, 15, 63.

Okada Noboru (*3*) 岡田登.
Hekireki Kakyū no Kigen to Haten 霹靂火毬の起源と發展.
The Origin and Development of the Thunderbolt Fire-Ball.
FSH, 1980, 7, 66.

Okada Noboru (*4*) 岡田登.
Gendai Shoki ni okeru, Gengun no Chūgoku Kokunai ni okeru Kaki to Kayaku Heiki 元代初期における，元軍の中國國內における火器と火藥兵器.
Firearms and Gunpowder Weapons of the Yuan Army used in China at the beginning of the Yuan Period.
RROWC, 1983, 16, 47.

Okamura Shōji (*1*) 奥村正二.
Hinawajū Kara Karofune made: Edojidai Gijutsu-Shi 火縄銃から黒船まで；江戸時代技術史.
The Matchlook Musket and the "Black (European) Ships'; as aspect of the History of Technology of the Yedo Period. (Includes chapters on Shipbuilding, Metals Mining and Hydraulic Machinery together with Clockwork).
Tokyo, 1970, repr. 1973.
岩波新書 no. 750.

Ong Thung-Wên (*1*) 翁同文.
'Chen Yuan Miao Tao Yao Lüeh' ti Chhêng Shu Shih-Tai chi hsiang-kuan-ti Huo Yao Shih Wên-Thi 「眞元妙道要略」的成書時代及相關的火藥史問題.
The Dating of the *Chen Yuan Miao Tao Yao Lüeh* in relation to the History of Gunpowder.
NYTHP, 1975, 5, 73 (Engl. abstr. 80).

Pak Hae-ill (*1*) 朴惠一.
李舜臣龜船의鐵裝甲과李朝鐵甲의現存原型의對比.
Parallelisms between the Iron Cladding of Admiral Yi Sunsin's Combat Turtle-Ships and Extant Iron Armouring of Yi Dynasty [City Gates].
HKH, 1979, 1 (no. 1), 27.

Pak Hae-ill (*2*) 朴惠一.
李舜臣龜船의鐵裝甲에對한補遺的註釋.
Supplementary Remarks on the Armoured Iron-clad Combat Turtle-Ships of Admiral Yi Sunsin (+1592).
HKH, 1982, 4 (no. 1), 26.

Phan Chi-Hsing (*13*) 潘吉星.
Lun Huo-Chien-ti Chhi Yuan 論火箭的起源.
On the Origin of the Rocket.
TJKHSYC 1985, 4 (no. 1), 64.
Engl. abstract in Proc. 3rd. International Conference on the History of Chinese Science, Peking, 1984, paper no. 68.

Phan Shih-Chhêng (*1*) 潘仕成.
Shui Lei Thu Shuo 水雷圖說.
Illustrated Account of Sea Mines.
Canton, 1843.
Later incorporated as chs. 92 and 93 of *Hai Kuo Thu Chih*.

Sakamoto Shunjō (*1*) 坂本俊奘.
Taihō Chūzōhō 大砲鑄造法.
On the Casting of Great Cannon.
Japan, begun 1804, finished *c.* 1835 (repr. *NKKZ*, vol. 10, ch. 10, no. 4, p. 463; 2nd ed. vol. 5, ch. 10, p. 463).

Shen Li-Shêng (*1*) (ed.) 申力生.
Chung-Kuo Shih Yu Kung Yeh Fa Chan Shih 中國石油工業發展史.
Pt. 1 Ku-Tai-ti Shih Yu yü Thien-Jan Chhi 古代的石油與天然氣.
A History of the Development of the Oil Industry in China Pt. 1 Petroleum and Natural Gas in Ancient and Mediaeval Times.
Shih Yu Kung Yeh Chhu-Pan-Shih, Peking, 1984.

Tanaka Katsumi (*1*) 田中克己.
Tai Kokusenya sen ni okeru Kangun no yakuwari 對國姓爺戰における漢軍の役割.
On the Warfare of the Chinese Army at the beginning of the Chhing Dynasty.
Wada hakase koki kinen tōyōshi ronsō (Wada Festschrift), p. 589.
Abstr. *RBS*, 1968 (for 1961), 7, no. 243.

Than Tan-Chhiung (*2*) 譚旦冏.
Chhêngtu Kung Chien Chih Tso Thiao-Chha Pao-Kao 成都弓箭製作調查報告.
Report of an Investigation of the Bow and Arrow Making Industry in Chhêngtu (Szechuan).
AS/BIHP, 1951, 23 (no. 1), 199 (Fu Ssu-Nien Festschrift).
Tr. C. Swinburne (unpub.).
Abstr. H. Franke (22), p. 238.

Thang Mei-Chün (*1*) 唐美君.
Thai-wan Thu Chu Min Tsu chih Nu chi Nu chih Fên Pu Yü Chhi-Yuan 臺灣土著民族之弩及弩之分佈與起源.
The Crossbows of the Aboriginal Peoples of Formosa, and the Origin and Diffusion of the Crossbow.
KKJL, 1958, no. 11, 5.

Thu Chi (*1*) 屠寄.
Mêng Wu Erh Shih Chi 蒙兀兒史記.
A History of the Mongols.
Peking, 1912.

Ting Fu-Pao (*3*), (d.) 丁福保.
Chhüan Han San-Kuo Chin Nan-Pei-Chhao Shih 全漢三國晉南北朝詩.
Complete Collection of Poetry from the Han, Three Kingdoms, Chin and Northern and Southern Kingdoms periods. (i.e. from the be-

Ting Fu-Pao (3), (d.) (*cont.*)
ginning of Han to the beginning of Sui).
Peking, *c.* 1935.
Tshao Yuan-Yü (4) 曹元宇.
Chung-Kuo Hua-Hsüeh Shih Hua 中國化學史話.
Talks on the History of Chemistry in China.
Chiangsu Kho-Hsüeh Chi-Shu, Nanking, 1979.
Tshên Chia-Wu (1) 岑家梧.
Liao Tai Chhi-Tan ho Han Tsu chi Chhi-Tha Min-Tsu-ti Ching-Chi Wên-Hua Lien-Hsi 遼代契丹和漢族及其他民族的經濟文化聯繫.
The Relations in Economics and Culture between the Chinese, the Liao (Chhi-Tan Tartars) and other minorities.
LSYC, 1981, no. 1, 114.
Tshui Hsüan (1) 崔璿.
Nei Mêng-Ku Fa-Hsien-ti Ming Chhu Thung Huo Chhung 內蒙古發現的明初銅火銃.
Metal-Barrel Bombards of Bronze Discovered in Inner Mongolia.
WWTK, 1973, no. 11 (no. 210), 55.
Tu Ya-Chhüan, 杜亞泉, Tu Chiu-Thien 杜就田 *et al.* (1).
Tung Wu Hsüeh Ta Tzhu Tien 動物學大辭典.
A Zoological Dictionary.
Com. Press, Shanghai, 1932; repr. 1933.

Udagawa Yōan (2) *et al.* 宇田川榕庵.
Kaijo Hojitsu Zenshō 海上砲術全書.
Complete Treatise on Naval Artillery (contains a translation of J. N. Caltin's book (1) on this subject).
Tokyo, *c.* 1847.

Wan Pai-Wu (1) 萬百五.
Wo Kuo Ku-Tai Tzu-Tung Chuang-Chih-ti Yuan-Li Fên-Hsi chi chhi Chhêng-Chiu-ti Than-Thao 我國古代自動裝置的原理分析及其成就的探討.
On certain Automatic Devices and Machines in Ancient (and Medieval) China—A Discussion of their Principles and Achievements.
AAS, 1965, **3** (no. 2), 57.
Wang Hsien-Chhen & Hsü Pao-Lin (1) 王顯臣 & 許保林.
Chung-Kuo Ku-Tai Ping Shu Tsa Than 中國古代兵書籍談.
A Discussion of the Ancient and Mediaeval Chinese Military Books.
Chan Shih Chhu-Fan-Shih, Peking, 1983.
Wang Jen-Chün (1) 王仁俊.
Ko Chih Ku Wei 格致古微.
Scientific Traces in Olden Times.
1896.
Wang Jung (1) 王榮.
Yuan Ming Huo Chhung-ti Chuang-chih Fu-Yuan 元明火銃的裝置復原.
On the Restoration of the Carriage Mountings of the Yuan and Ming Bombards.
WWTK, 1962, no. 3 (no. 137), 41.

Wang Khuei-Kho 王奎克 & Chu Shêng (1) 朱晟.
Chin-Tai Ta Lien Tan Chia Ko Hung yu Kuan Chih Chhü Tan Chih Shen ho Huo Yao Chhi Yuan Wên-Thi ti Chi Tsai 晉代大煉丹家葛洪有關制取單質砷和火藥起源問題的記載.
On the Great Alchemist Ko Hung of the Chin Period, and the Problem of Getting Pure Metallic Arsenic in connection with the Origin of Gunpowder.
HHSTP, 1982, no. 1.
Wang Thao (1) 王韜.
Tshao Shêng Yao Lan 操勝要覽.
A Review of the Important Factors for Gaining Victories [cannon, cannon-founding, gunpowder manufacture, etc.]
Chhing, *c.* 1870.
In *THTYW*, 2, 3.
Wang Yü (1) 王愚.
Huo-Yao ti Fa-Ming Jen, Ma Chün; San Kuo Shih Fa-Ming Ta Chia chih I 火藥的發明人馬鈞; 三國時發明大家之一.
The Inventor of Gunpowder, Ma Chün; one of the Greatest Inventive Geniuses of the Three Kingdoms Period.
Art. in a journal about 1944, p. 39.
Wei Kuo-Chung (1) 魏國忠.
Heilungchiang A-chhêng Hsien Pan-la-chhêng-tzu Chhu-Thu-ti Thung Huo Chhung 黑龍江阿城縣半拉城子出土的銅火銃.
A Bronze Bombard excavated at Pan-la-chhêng-tzu in A-chhêng Hsien in Heilungchiang province (datable before +1290 because its accompanying objects were J/Chin in character).
WWTK, 1973, no. 11 (no. 210), 52.
Wei Yuan 魏源 & Lin Tsê-Hsü (1) 林則徐.
Hai Kuo Thu Chih 海國圖志.
Illustrated Record of the Maritime [Occidental] Nations
1844, enlarged 1847, further enlarged 1852, abridged edition 1855.
For the problem of authorship see Chhen Chhi-Thien (1) and Hummel (2), p. 851.
Wei Yûn-Kung (1) (ed.)
Chiang-nan Chih Tsao Chü Chi 江南製造局記.
A Record of the Kiangnan Arsenal.
Wên-Pao, Shanghai, 1905.
Wu Chü-Hsien (7) 衛聚賢.
Huo Yü Huo Yao 火與火藥.
Fire and Fire-Weapons (lit. Gunpowder).
Shuo Wên Press, Hsin Cha, Taiwan, 1979.

Yang Chia-Lo (3) 楊家駱.
Ta-Tsu Thang Sung Shih Kho 大足唐宋石刻.
The Thang and Sung Rock-carved (Temples) at Ta-tsu (Szechuen).
Taipei, 1968.
Yang Hung (1) 楊泓.
Chung-Kuo Ku Ping Chhi Lun Tshung 中國古兵器論叢.
Ancient Chinese Weapons and War-Gear.

Yang Hung (*1*) (*cont.*)
Wên Wu, Peking, 1980.
Yang Khuan (*1*) 楊寬.
Chung-Kuo Ku-Tai Yeh-Thieh Ku-Fêng Lu ho Shui-Li Yeh Thieh Ku Fêng Lu ti Fa-Ming 中國古代冶鐵鼓風爐和水力冶鐵鼓風爐的發明.
On the Blast Furnaces used for making Cast Iron in Ancient China, and the Invention of Hydraulic Blowing Engines for them.
Essay in Li Kuang-Pi & Chhien Chün Yeh, (q.v.), p. 71.
Peking, 1955.
Yang Khuan (*6*) 楊寬.
Chung-Kuo Ku-Tai Yeh Thieh Chi-Shu ti Fa-Ming ho Fa-Chan 中國古代冶鐵技術的發明和發展.
The Origins, Inventions, and Development of Iron [and steel] Technology in Ancient and Medieval China.
Jen-Min, Shanghai, 1956.
Yano Jinichi (*1*) 矢野仁一.
Kindai Shina Seiji Oyobi Bunka 近代支那政治及文化.
Political and Cultural Trends in China during the Modern Age.
Tokyo, 1926.
Yoshida Mitsukuni (*7*) 吉田光邦.
Chūgoku Kagaku-gijitsu-shi Ronshū 中國科學技術史論集.
Collected Essays on the History of Science and Technology in China.
Tokyo, 1972.
Yoshida Mitsukuni (*8*) 吉田光邦.
Sōgen no Gunji Gijutsu 宋元の軍事技術.
Military Technology in the Sung and Yuan Periods.
Art. in Yabuuchi (26), p. 211.
Yoshida Tadashi (*1*) (ed.) 吉田忠.
Higashi-asia no Kagaku 東アジアの科学.
Science and its History in Eastern Asia.
Tokyo, 1982.

C. BOOKS AND JOURNAL ARTICLES IN WESTERN LANGUAGES

ACKER, WILLIAM R. B. (1). 'The Fundamentals of Japanese Archery.' Pr. pr. Kyoto, 1937 (with introduction in Japanese by Toshisuke Nasu).

ACKROYD, JOYCE (1) (tr.). *Told round a Brushwood Fire; the Autobiography of Arai Hakuseki* (+1657 to +1725). (Writer of the *Honchō Gunkikō.*) Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N.J., 1980; Tokyo Univ. Press, Tokyo, 1980. Rev. I. J. McMullen, *JRAS*, 1982 (no. 1), 95.

ADLER, B. (1). 'Das nordasiatische Pfeil; ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis d. Anthropo-Geographie des asiatischen Nordens.' *IAE*, 1901, 14 (Suppl.) 1.

ADLER, B. (2). 'Die Bogen Nordasiens' [including the Chinese bow]. *IAE*, 1902, 15, 1 (with notes by G. Schlegel, pp. 31 ff. and footnotes in the paper itself by Ratzel and Conrady).

ALEXANDER, A. E. & JOHNSON, P. (1). *Colloid Science.* 2 vols. Oxford, 1949.

ALLAN, SARAH (1). 'Sons of Suns; Myth and Totemism in Early China.' *BLSOAS*, 1981, *44*, 290.

ALLEN, W. G. B. (1). *Pistols, Rifles and Machine-Guns; a Straightforward Explanation of their Mechanism, Construction and Role in Battle.* Eng. Univ. Press, London, 1953.

ALMOND, R., WALCZEWSKI, J., GOSSETT, R. W., MATTHEWS, A. J. & ROFE, B. (1). 'Meteorological Rocket Systems.' *PAA*, 1969, 22, 29.

AMIOT, J. J. M. *See* de Rochemonteux (1).

AMIOT, J. J. M. (2). 'Sur l'Art Militaire des Chinois.' *MCHSAMUC*, 1782, 7, 1–397+xx; Supplément, 1782, 8, 327–75. (The translations of *Sun Tzu Ping Fa* and *Wu Tzu* were first sent to Europe in 1766.) The material of the main part first appeared in a separate book: *Art Militaire des Chinois, ou Recueil d'anciens Traités sur la Guerre, composés avant l'Ère Chrétienne, par différents Généraux Chinois.* Didot and Nyon, Paris, 1772. This prompted the work of de St Maurice & de Puy-Ségur (q.v.). The Supplement was stimulated by remarks in the *Recherches Philosophiques sur les Égyptiens et les Chinois* of de Pauw (q.v.).

ANON. (29). *The Arms and Armour of Old Japan.* Japan Society, London, 1905 (Catalogue of an exhibition).

ANON. (157). 'Feuerwerkbuch (in diesem buch das da heisset das fürwerckbuch).' A collection of gunpowder techniques of many decades from about +1430 onwards, contained in at least five MSS (*see* Partington (5), p. 152). First printed as an appendix to *Flavii Vegetii Renati Vier Büchern von der Ritterschaft.* Augsburg, 1529. Ed. Hassenstein (1).

ANON. (158). *Livre de Canonnerie et Artifice de Feu,* with appendix: 'Petit Traicté contenant plusieurs Artifices du Feu, très-utile pour l'Estat de Canonnerie, recueilly d'un vieil Livre écrit à la main et nouvellement mis en lumière.' Paris, 1561. The MS in question (Paris BN 4653) is largely a translation of the German *Feuerwerkbuch,* and dates from about +1430. It was entitled: *Le Livre de Secret de l'Art de l'Artillerie et Canonnerie. See* Partington (5), pp. 101, 154.

ANON. (159). 'The Manner of Making Flowers in the Chinese Fire-Workes, illustrated with an elegantly engraved Copper-Plate—from the 4th Volume [just published] of the Memoirs Presented to the Academy of Sciences [at Paris].' *UM*, 1764, 34, 21.

ANON. (162) *Twentieth-Century Science Fiction Writers.* Macmillan, London, 1982.

ANON. (163). 'China Successfully Launches another Man-made Earth Satellite.' *PKR*, 1976 (no. 50, Dec. 10), 5.

ANON. (164). 'Man Beats Hailstorms.' *PKR*, 1975 (no. 33, Aug. 15), 30.

ANON. (167). 'Apuntes Historicos sobre la Invencion de la Polvora.' *MART*, 1847, 3, 19.

ANON. (169). 'Quicksilver in China.' *EMJ*, 1907, 84, 152.

ANON. (170). 'Silver and Gold Mining in China.' *EMJ*, 1888, 46, 194.

ANON. (196). 'The History of Making Gunpowder.' Art. in T. Sprat (1), 1667, p. 277.

ANON. (197). *How Things Work; the Universal Encyclopaedia of Machines.* 2 vols. Allen & Unwin, London, 1967; Granada–Paladin, London, 1972; reprinted many times. Tr. from the German of 1963 by C. van Amerongen.

APPIER (dit HANZELET), JEAN (1). *La Pyrotechnie de Hanzelet, ou sont representez les plus rare et plus appreuvez Secrets des Machines et des Feux Artificiels propres pour assieger, battre, surprendre et deffendre toutes places.* Bernard, Pont-à-Mousson, 1630.

APPIER (dit HANZELET), JEAN & THYBOUREL, FRANÇOIS, (Maître Chyrurgien), (1). *Receuil de plusieurs Machines Militaires, et Feux Artificiels pour la Guerre, et Récréation. Avec l'Alphabet de Tritemius, par laquelle chacun qui sçait écrire, peut promptement composer congrument en Latin. Aussi le moyen d'escrire la nuict à son amy absent.* Marchant, Pont-à-Mousson, 1620. See Partington (5), p. 176.

ARENDT, W. W. (1). 'The Scythian Stirrup [on the Chertomlyk Vase].' *ESA*, 1934, 9, 206.

ARPAD, HORVÁTH (1). *Az Agyu Históridja* (A History of Gunpowder) (in Magyar). Zrínyi Katansi Kiadó, Budapest, 1966.

ASHTON, T. S. (1). 'Iron and Steel in the Industrial Revolution.' *MUP*, Manchester, 1924.
ATKINSON, W. C. (1) (tr.). *Camoens' 'The Lusiads'*. Penguin, London, 1952.
ATTWATER, R. *See* Duhr, J. (1), whose book he adapted for English readers.
AUBIN, FRANÇOISE (1) (ed.). *Études Song in Memoriam Étienne Balazs*. Sér. 1: 'Histoire et Institutions' 3 fascicles. Mouton, Paris, 1970–76. Sér. 2: 'Civilisation'. École des Hautes Études en Sciences Sociales, Paris, 1980– .
[AUDOT, L. E.] (1). *L'Art de Faire, à peu de Frais, les Feux d'Artifice*. Paris, 1818.
AYALON, DAVID (1). *Gunpowder and Firearms in the Mamluk Kingdom*. Vallentine Mitchell, London, 1956.
AYALON, DAVID (2). *The Mamlūk Military Society; Collected Studies*. Variorum, London, 1979. Contains a reprint of Ayalon (3).
AYALON, DAVID (3). 'A Reply to Professor J. R. Partington.' *ARAB*, 1963, 10, 64. Critique of Partington (5).

BADDELEY, F. (1). *The Manufacture of Gunpowder*. HMSO, Waltham Abbey, 1830, 1857.
BAK HAE-ILL. *See* Pak Hae-ill.
BAKER, DAVID (1). *The Rocket; a History and Development of Rocket and Missile Technology*. New Cavendish, London, 1978.
BALAZS, E. & HERVOUET, Y. (1). *A Sung Bibliography*. Chinese University Press, Hongkong, 1978.
BALBI DA CORREGGIO, FRANCISCO. *See* di Correggio, F. Balbi (1).
BALFOUR, H. (3). 'On the Structure and Affinities of the Composite Bow.' *JRAI*, 1889, 19, 220.
BALFOUR, H. (4). 'On a Remarkable Ancient Bow and Arrows believed to be of Assyrian Origin.' *JRAI*, 1897, 26, 210.
BALFOUR, H. (5). 'The Archer's Bow in the Homeric Poems.' *JRAI*, 1921, 51, 291.
BALL, J. DYER (1). *Things Chinese; being Notes on Various Subjects connected with China*. Hongkong, 1892; Murray, London, 1904; 5th ed. revised by E. T. C. Werner, Kelly & Walsh, Shanghai, 1925; repr. London, 1926.
BANKS, G. (1). 'Chinese Guns.' *ILN*, 1861, 325 (5 Apr.).
BARBA, ALVARO ALONZO (1). *El Arte de los Metales*. Madrid, 1640. Fr. tr. *Métallurgie, ou l'Art de tirer et de purifier les Métaux*. Paris, 1751.
BARBOSA, DUARTE (1). *A Description of the Coasts of East Africa and Malabar in the Beginning of the +16th Century, by D. B., a Portuguese*. Eng. tr. from a Spanish MS, by H. E. J. Stanley (Lord Stanley of Alderley). Hakluyt Society, London, 1866 (Hakluyt Soc. Pubs., 1st ser., no. 35). Eng. tr. from the Portuguese, by Hakluyt Society, London, 1918 (Hakluyt Soc. Pubs., 2nd. ser., no. 44).
BARBOTIN, A. (1). *L'Industrie des Pétards au Tonkin*. Paris, 1913.
BARNETT, R. D. & FALKNER, M. (1). *The Sculptures of Aššur-naṣir-apli II* (Ashurnasirpal; r. -883 to -859), *Tiglath-pileser III and Esarhaddon from the Central and Southwest Palaces at Nimrud*. London, 1962.
BAROWA, I. & BERBELICKI, WL. (1). *The Polish Scientific Book of the +15th to +18th Centuries; Exhibition Catalogue of the Jagellonian Library* [on the occasion of the International Congress of the History of Science]. Kraków, 1965.
BARROW, SIR JOHN (1). *Travels in China, containing Descriptions, Observations and Comparisons, made and collected in the Course of a Short Residence at the Imperial Palace of Yuen-Min-Yuen, and on a subsequent Journey through the Country from Pekin to Canton; in which it is attempted to appreciate the Rank that this Extraordinary Empire may be considered to Hold in the Scale of Civilised Nations*. Cadell & Davies, London, 1804. German tr. 1804; French tr. 1805; Dutch tr. 1809.
BASTIAN, A. (1). 'Die Völker des ostlichen Asiens; Studien und Reisen', 6 vols. Vol. 6. *Reisen in China; von Peking zur mongolischen Grenze, und Rückkehr nach Europa*. Hermann Costenoble, Jena, 1871.
BATE, JOHN (1). *The Mysteryes of Nature and Art: conteined in foure severall Tretises, the first of Water Workes, the second of Fyer Workes, the third of Drawing, Colouring, Painting and Engraving, the fourth of Divers Experiments, as wel serviceable, as delightful; partly collected, and partly of the authors peculiar practice and invention*. Harper, Mab, Jackson & Church, London, 1634, 1635, 1654. Photolitho reproduction, Theatrum Orbis Terrarum, Amsterdam, 1977 (The English Experience, no. 845). Bibliography in John Ferguson (2).
BAUERMEISTER, H. (1). 'Geschichte d. See-mine.' *BGTI/TG*, 1938, 27, 98.
BEAL, S. (4). 'Account of the *Shui Lui* [*Shui Lei*] or Infernal Machine, described in the 58th volume [chapter] of the *Hoi Kwak To Chi* [*Haikuo Thu Chih*].' *JRAS* (trans.)/*NCB* 1859, 2 (no. 6), 53.
BEAZLEY, C. R. (3). *The Texts and Versions of John de Plano Carpini and William de Rubruquis*. Hakluyt Society, London, 1903.
BECK, T. (1). *Beiträge z. Geschichte d. Maschinenbaues*. Springer, Berlin, 1900.
BELL OF ANTERMONY, JOHN (1). *Travels from St Petersburg in Russia to Diverse Parts of Asia*. Vol. 1, *A Journey to Ispahan in Persia*, 1715 to 1718; *Part of a Journey to Pekin in China, through Siberia*, 1719 to 1721. Vol. 2, *Continuation of the Journey between Mosco and Pekin; to which is added, a translation of the Journal of Mr de Lange, Resident of Russia at the Court of Pekin*, 1721 and 1722, etc., etc. Foulis, Glasgow, 1763; repr. 1806. Repr. as *A Journey from St Petersburg to Pekin*, ed. J.L. Stevenson. University Press, Edinburgh, 1965.
BERGMAN, FOLKE (3). 'A Note on Ancient Laminar Armour.' *ETH*, 1936, 1 (no. 5).

BERNAL, J. D. (1). *Science in History*. Watts, London, 1954 (Beard Lectures at Ruskin College, Oxford, 1948). Repr. 4 vols. Penguin, London, 1969.

BERNAL, J. D. (2). *The Extension of Man; a History of Physics before 1900*. Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1972. (Lectures at Birkbeck College, London, posthumously published.)

BERNAL, J. D. (3). *The Social Function of Science*. Routledge, London, 1939.

BERNARD, W. D. (1). *Narrative of the Voyages and Services of the 'Nemesis' from 1840 to 1843, and of the Combined Naval and Military Operations in China; comprising a complete account of the Colony of Hongkong, and Remarks on the Character of the Chinese, from the Notes of Cdr. W. H. Hall R.N., with personal observations*. 2 vols. Colburn, London, 1844.

BERNARD-MAITRE, H. (7). 'L'Encyclopédie Astronomique du Père Schall, *Chhung-Chêng Li Shu* (+1629) et *Hsi Yang Hsin Fa Li Shu* (+1645). La Réforme du Calendrier Chinois sous l'Influence de Clavius, Galilée et Kepler.' *MS*, 1937, 3, 35, 441.

BERNARD-MAITRE, H. (18). 'Les Adaptations Chinoises d'Ouvrages Européens; Bibliographie chronologique depuis la venue des Portugais à Canton jusqu'à la Mission française de Pékin (+1514 à +1688).' *MS*, 1945, 10, 1–57, 309–88.

BERNIER, FRANÇOIS (1). *Bernier's Voyage to the East Indies; containing The History of the Late Revolution of the Empire of the Great Mogul; together with the most considerable passages for five years following in that Empire; to which is added A Letter to the Lord Colbert, touching the extent of Hindostan, the Circulation of the Gold and Silver of the world, to discharge itself there, as also the Riches Forces and Justice of the Same, and the principal Cause of the Decay of the States of Asia—with an Exact Description of Delhi and Agra; together with* (1) *Some Particulars making known the Court and Genius of the Moguls and Indians; as also the Doctrine and Extravagant Superstitions and Customs of the Heathens of Hindustan,* (2) *The Emperor of Mogul's Voyage to the Kingdom of Kashmere, in 1664, called the Paradise of the Indies*... Dass (for SPCK), Calcutta, 1909. [Substantially the same title-page as the editions of 1671 and 1672.]

BERNINGER, E. H. (1). Introduction to the *Vollkommene Geschütz-, Feuerwerck-, und Büchsenmeisterey-Kunst* (+1676) *of Casimir Siemienowicz* (d. +1650). Akad. Druck u. Verlagsanstalt, Graz, 1976. (Veröfftl. d. Forschungsinst. d. Deutschen Museums, A, 186.)

BERNOULLI, JOHANNES, the elder (1). *Dissertatio de Effervescentia et Fermentatione nova hypothesi fundata*. Bertsch, Basel, 1690. Often reprinted with *De Motu Musculorum*, e.g. Venice, 1721. Also in *Opera Omnia*, Lausanne & Geneva, 1742.

BERTHELOT, M. (4). 'Pour l'Histoire des Arts Mécaniques et de l'Artillerie Vers la Fin du Moyen Age (I).' *ACP*, 1891 (6e sér.), 24, 433. (Descr. of Latin MS Munich, no. 197, the Anonymous Hussite engineer (German), *c.* +1430; of Ital. MS Munich, no. 197: Marianus Jacobus Taccola of Siena, *c.* +1440; of *De Machinis*, Marcianus, no. XIX, 5, *c.* +1449; and of *De Re Militari*, Paris, no. 7239: Paulus Sanctinus, *c.* +1450, the MS from Istanbul.)

BERTHELOT, M. (5). 'Histoire des Machines de Guerre et des Arts Mécaniques au Moyen Age; (II) Le Livre d'un Ingénieur Militaire à la Fin du 14ème Siècle.' *ACP*, 1900 (7e sér.), 19, 289. (Descr. of MS *Bellifortis*, Göttingen, no. 63, Phil. K. Kyeser +1395 to +1405 and of Paris, MS no. 11015, Latin, Guido da Vigevano, *c.* +1335.)

BERTHELOT, M. (6). 'Le Livre d'un Ingénieur Militaire à la Fin du 14ème Siècle.' *JS*, 1900, 1 & 85. (Konrad Kyeser and his *Bellifortis*.)

BERTHELOT, M. (7). 'Sur le Traité *De Rebus Bellicis* qui accompagne le *Notitia Dignitatum* dans les Manuscrits.' *JS*, 1900, 171.

BERTHELOT, M. (8). 'Les Manuscrits de Léonard da Vinci et les Machines de Guerre.' *JS*, 1902, 116. (Argument that L. da Vinci knew the drawings in the +4th-century anonymous *De Rebus Bellicis* and also many inventions and drawings of them by the +14th- and early +15th-century military engineers.)

BERTHELOT, M. (9). 'Les Compositions Incendiaires dans l'Antiquité et Moyen Ages.' *RDM*, 1891, 106, 786. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

BERTHELOT, M. (10). *La Chimie au Moyen Age*; vol. 1, *Essai sur la Transmission de la Science Antique au Moyen Age* (Latin texts). Impr. Nat. Paris, 1893. Photo-repr. Zeller, Osnabrück; Philo, Amsterdam, 1967. Rev. W. P[agel], *AX*, 1967, 14, 203.

BERTHELOT, M. (12). 'Archéologie et Histoire des Sciences; avec Publication nouvelle du Papyrus Grec chimique de Leyde, et Impression originale du *Liber de Septuaginta* de Geber.' *MRAS/P*, 1906, 49, 1–377. Sep. pub. 197.

BERTHELOT, M. (13). *Sur la Force des Matières Explosives d'après la Thermochimie*. 3rd ed. Paris, 1883. Vol. 1, pp. 352 ff. has section: 'Des Origines de la Poudre et des Matières Explosives'. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

BERTHELOT, M. (14). 'Histoire des Corps Explosifs' (review of S. J. M. von Romocki's book). *JS*, 1895, 684.

BERTHELOT, M. & DUVAL, R. (1). *La Chimie au Moyen Age*; vol. 2. *l'Alchimie Syriaque*. Impr. Nat. Paris, 1893. Photo-repr. Zeller, Osnabrück; Philo, Amsterdam, 1967. Rev. W. P[agel], *AX*, 1967, 14, 203.

BERTHELOT, M. & HOUDAS, M. O. (1). *La Chimie au Moyen Age*: vol. 3, *l'Alchimie Arabe*. Impr. Nat. Paris, 1893. Photo-repr. Zeller, Osnabrück; Philo, Amsterdam, 1967. Rev. W. P[agel], *AX*, 1967, 14, 203.

BEVERIDGE, H. (1). 'Oriental Crossbows.' *AQR*, 1911, 32 (no. 3), 344.

BIBILASHVILI, N. S. *et al.* (1). *Anti-hail Rockets and Shells*. Proc. WMO/IAMAP Scientific Conference on Weather Modification, Tashkent, Oct. 1973. (WMO Paper no. 399, 1974, pp. 333–41.)

BINGHAM, Cdr. J. ELLIOTT (1). *Narrative of the Expedition to China, from the Commencement of the War to the present Period*. 2 vols. Colburn, London, 1842.

BIOT, E. (18). 'Mémoire sur les Colonies Militaires et Agricoles des Chinois.' *JA*, 1850 (4e Ser.), 15, 338 & 529.

BIRCH, THOMAS (1). *The History of the Royal Society of London, for Improving of Natural Knowledge, from its first rise; in which The most considerable of those Papers communicated to the Society, which have hitherto not been published, are inserted in their proper order, As a Supplement to the Philosophical Transactions*. 4 vols. Millar, London, 1756–7.

BIRINGUCCIO, VANNOCCIO (1). *Pirotechnia*. Venice, 1540, 1559. Eng. tr. C. S. Smith & M. T. Gnudi, Amer. Inst. Mining Engineers, New York, 1942. Account in Beck (1), ch. 7. *See* Sarton (1), vol. 3, p. 1554, 1555. Bibliography in John Ferguson (2).

BIRKENMAIER, A. (2). 'Zur Lebensgeschichte und wissenschaftlichen Tätigkeit von Giovanni Fontana (*c.* +1395 bis *c.* +1455).' *ISIS*, 1932, 17, 34.

BISHOP, C. W. (10). 'Notes on the Tomb of Ho Chhü-Ping' [Han general, d. –117]. *AA*, 1928, 4, 34.

BISHOP, C. W. (11). 'The Horses of Thang Thai Tsung; on the Antecedents of the Chinese Horse.' *MUJ* 1918, 9, 244.

BISHOP, C. W. (14). 'An Ancient Chinese Cannon.' *ARSI*, 1940, 431 (and pl. 10).

BISSET, N. G. (1). 'Arrow Poisons in China, Pt. I.' *JEPH*, 1979, 1, 325.

BISSET, N. G. (2). 'Arrow Poisons in China, Pt. II; *Aconitum*, its Botany, Chemistry and Pharmacology.' *JEPH*, 1981, 4, 247.

BISWAS, ASIT K. (3). *A History of Hydrology*. North-Holland, Amsterdam and London, 1970.

BLACKMORE, HOWARD L. (1). *Guns and Rifles of the World*. Batsford, London, 1965.

BLACKMORE, HOWARD L. (2). *The Armouries of the Tower of London; I. Ordnance*. HMSO, for the Dept. of the Environment, London, 1976.

BLACKMORE, HOWARD L. (3). 'The Seven-Barrel Guns.' *JAAS*, 1954, 1 (no. 10), 165.

BLACKMORE, HOWARD L. (4). *Firearms*. Dutton Vista, New York, 1964; Studio Vista, London, 1964.

BLACKMORE, HOWARD L. (5). *Hunting Weapons*. Walker, London, 1971.

BLAIR, C. (1). 'A Note on the Early History of the Wheel-Lock.' *JAAS*, 1961, 3, 221.

BLOCH, M. R. (5). 'Two Ancient Saltpetre Plants by the Dead Sea.' Introduction to *Report on the Excavations at Um Baraque* [on the Western Coast of the Dead Sea], by M. Gichon. In the press.

BLOCHET, E. (2). *Introduction à l'Histoire des Mongols* (tr. from the *Jami 'al-Tawārīkh* of Fadl Allah Raschid ed-Din al-Hamadānī), E. J. W. Gibb Memorial series, vol. XII. Leyden, London, 1910.

BÖCKMANN, F. (1). *Die Explosiven Stoffe*... Hartleben, Leipzig, 1880.

BODDE, DERK (25). *Festivals in Classical China: New Year and Other Annual Observances During the Han Dynasty, 206 B.C.–A.D. 220*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1975.

BOEHEIM, WENDELIN (1). *Handbuch d. Waffenkunde; das Waffenwesen in seiner historischen Entwickelung vom Beginn des Mittelalters bis zum Ende des 18. Jahrhunderts*. Seemann, Leipzig, 1890. Photolitho reprint, Zentralantiquariat d. Deutschen Demokratischen Republik, Leipzig, 1982.

BOERHAAVE, H. (1). *Elementa Chemiai, quae anniversario labore docuit, in publicis, privatisque, scholis*. 2 vols. Severinus and Imhoff, Leiden, 1732. Eng. tr. by P. Shaw: *A New Method of Chemistry; including the History, Theory and Practice of the Art*. 2 vols. Longman, London, 1741, 1753.

BOGUE, R. H. (1). *The Chemistry and Technology of Gelatin and Glue*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 1922.

BONAPARTE, PRINCE NAPOLÉON-LOUIS & FAVÉ, Col. I. (1). *Études sur le Passé et l'Avenir de l'Artillerie*. 4 vols., the first two written by Bonaparte, the second two by Favé, on the basis of the emperor's notes. Dumaine, Paris, 1846–51 and 1862–63. Vol. 1. First Part, chs. 1–4, Artillery on the Battlefield 1328 to 1643. Vol. 2. Second Part, chs. 1–4, Artillery in Siege Warfare 1328 to 1643. Vol. 3. Third Part, chs. 1–9, History of Gunpowder and Artillery to 1650. Vol. 4. Third Part, chs. 10–14, History of Artillery 1650–1793. Schneider (1) p. 10 gives date and place of first publication Liège, 1847 and Sarton (1), vol. 3, p. 726, describes 6 vols to 1871.

BONGARS, JACQUES (1) (ed.). *Gesta Dei per Francos, sive Orientalium Expeditionum, et Regni Francorum Hierosolimitani Historia*. 2 vols. Hannover, 1611.

BOODBERG, P. A. (5). *The Art of War in Ancient China; a Study based upon the 'Dialogues of Li, Duke of Wei' [Li Weikung Wên Tui]*. Inaug. Diss., Berkeley, 1930.

BOOTS, J. L. (1). 'Korean Weapons and Armour [including Firearms].' *JRAS/KB*, 1934, 23 (no. 2), 1–37.

BORNET, P. (1). 'La Préface des *Novissima Sinica*.' *MS*, 1956, 15, 328.

BORNET, P. (2). 'Au Service de la Chine; Schall et Verbiest, maîtres-fondeurs, I. Les Canons.' *BCP*, 1946 (no. 389), 160.

BORNET, P. (3) (tr.). '"Relation Historique" [de Johann Adam Schall von Bell S.J.]; Texte Latin avec Traduction française.' Hautes Études, Tientsin, 1942 (part of *Lettres et Mémoires d'Adam Schall S.J.*, ed. H. Bernard-[Maître]).

BOSIO, GIACOMO (1). *Dell'Istoria della Sacra Religione e Illustra Militia di San Giovanni Gierosolimitano.* 2 vols. Rome, 1594.

BOSMANS, H. (2). 'Ferdinand Verbiest, Directeur de l'Observatoire de Pékin.' *RQS*, 1912, 71, 196 & 375. Sep. pub. Louvain, 1912.

BOSMANS, H. (4). *Documents relatifs à Verbiest.* Bruges, 1912.

BOURNE, WILLIAM (2). *The Art of Shooting in Great Ordnaunce.* London, 1587.

BOURNE, WILLIAM (3). *Inventions or Devises, Very Necessary for all Generalles and Captaines, or Leaders of Men, as wel by Sea as by Land, Written by W.B.* Woodcock, London, 1578.

BOVILL, E. W. (1). 'Queen Elizabeth's Gunpowder.' *MMI*, 1947, 33 (no. 3), 179.

BOWERS, F. (1). *The Dramatic Works in the Beaumont & Fletcher Canon.* 2 vols. Cambridge, 1966.

BOXER, C. R. (7). *The Christian Century in Japan.* Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley, Calif., 1951.

BOXER, C. R. (8). 'Notes on Chinese abroad in the Late Ming and Early Manchu Periods, compiled from contemporary European Sources (+1500 to +1700).' *TH*, 1939, 454.

BOXER, C. R. (11). 'Asian Potentates and European Artillery in the +16th to +18th Centuries; a Footnote to Gibson-Hill.' *JRAS/M*, 1965, 38, 156.

BOXER, C. R. (12). 'Portuguese Military Expeditions in aid of the Ming against the Manchus, +1621 to +1647.' *TH*, 1938, 24.

BOXER, CAPT. [EDWARD] (1). *The Congreve Rocket.* 1853. Pr. in *Treatise on Artillery* as Sect. 1, pt. 2. Eyre & Spottiswoode, London, 1860. Repr. Museum Restoration Service, Ottawa, 1970.

BOYLE, J. A. (1) (tr.). *The 'Ta'rīkh-ī Jahān-Gushā' (History of the World Conqueror, Chingiz Khan), by 'Alā'al-Dīn 'Aṭā-Malik [al-]Juvaynī [+1233 to +1283].* 2 vols. Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1958.

BOYLE, ROBERT (6). *New Experiments Physico-Mechanicall touching the Spring of the Air.* Oxford, 1660.

BOYLE, ROBERT (7). *A Continuation of New Experiments Physico-Mechanicall touching the Spring and Weight of the Air.* Oxford, 1669.

BOYLE, ROBERT (8). *Some Considerations touching the Usefulnesse of Experimental Natural Philosophy, propos'd in a Familiar Discourse to a Friend, by way of Invitation to the Study of it.* Hall & Davis, Oxford, 1663; 2nd ed. 1664.

I, Pt. 1, 126 pp. followed by an index. Pt. 2, Sect. 1, 416 pp. followed by 'Citations Englisht'. Pt. 2, Sect. 2 (1671), 'Generall Considerations', followed by separate title-pages for:

II, 'Of the Usefulnesse of Mathematicks to Naturall Philosophy'.

III, 'Of the Usefulnesse of Mechanicall Disciplines to Naturall Philosophy'.

IV, 'That the Goods of Mankind may be much encreased by the Naturalists Insight into Trades' (with an Appendix).

V, 'Of doing by Physicall Knowledge what is wont to require Manuall Skill'.

VI, 'Of Mens great Ignorance of the Uses of Naturall Things'.

BRACKENBURG, SIR HENRY (1). 'Ancient Cannon in Europe; Pt. 1, from their First Employment to +1350.' *PRAI*, 1865–6, 4, 287. Pt. 2 'From +1351 to +1400'. *PRAI*, 1867, 5, 1.

BRADFORD, ERNLE (1). *The Great Siege; Malta, +1565.* Hodder & Stoughton, London, 1961; Penguin, London, 1964; repr. 1966, 1968, 1970, 1971.

BRADFORD, ERNLE (2). *The Shield and the Sword; the Knights of Malta.* Hodder & Stoughton, London, 1972; Penguin, London, 1974.

BRAUDEL, F. (2). *Civilisation Matérielle et Capitalisme (+15e au +18e Siècle).* 2 vols. Colin, Paris, 1967. (Deals with the early history of artillery in vol. 1, pp. 294 ff.)

VON BRAUN, WERNHER & ORDWAY, FREDERICK I. (1). *The Rockets' Red Glare; an Illustrated History of Rocketry through the Ages.* Anchor Doubleday, New York, 1976.

VON BRAUN, WERNHER & ORDWAY, FREDERICK I. (2). *A History of Rocketry and Space Travel.* Nelson, London, 1966. (With illustrations by H. H. K. Lange.)

BREDON, J. & MITROPHANOV, I. (1). *The Moon Year; a Record of Chinese Customs and Festivals.* Kelly & Walsh, Shanghai, 1927.

BREDT, CLAYTON (1). 'Fighting for Fun, and in Earnest' (Notes on the History of Martial Arts, Gunpowder and Firearms in China). *HEM*, 1977, 21 (no. 10), 9.

BREWER, J. S. (1) (ed.). *Fr. Rogeri Bacon: 'Opus Tertium, Opus Minus, Compendium Philosophiae'.* Longman Green Longman & Roberts, London, 1859 (Rolls Series no. 15).

BREWER, W. H. (1). *Up and down California in 1860–64* [a journal], ed. F. P. Farquhar. New York, 1900.

BRINK, C. O. (2). *Horace on Poetry*, with text of *De Arte Poetica.* 3 vols. Cambridge, 1963, 1971, 1982.

BROCK, A. St H. (1). *A History of Fireworks.* Harrap, London, 1949.

BROCK, A. St H. (2). *Pyrotechnics; the History and Art of Firework Making.* O'Connor, London, 1922.

BROCKBANK, W. (1). *Ancient Therapeutic Arts.* Heinemann, London, 1954. (Fitzpatrick Lectures, Royal College of Physicians, 1950–1.)

BROMEHEAD, C. E. N. (9). 'Mining and Quarrying [from Early Times to the Fall of the Ancient Empires].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, Oxford, 1954, vol. 1, p. 558.

BROWN, DELMER M. (1). 'The Impact of Firearms on Japanese Warfare, +1543 to +1598.' *FEQ*, 1947, 7, 236.

BROWN, M. L. (1). *Firearms in Colonial America; the Impact on History and Technology, 1492 to 1792*. Smithsonian Inst. Press, Washington, D.C., 1980. Rev. V. Foley, *TCULT*, 1982, 23, 118.

BUCK, P. (1) (tr.). *All Men are Brothers (Shui Hu Chuan)*. London, 1937. A translation based on the 70-chapter version but without the verses.

BUCKLE, H. T. (1). *A History of Civilisation in England*. 2 vols. Parker, London, 1857.

BUDGE, SIR E. A. WALLIS (2). *The Monks of Kûblâi Khân, Emperor of China; or, The History of the Life and Travels of Rabban Şawmâ, Envoy and Plenipotentiary of the Mongol Khâns to the Kings of Europe, and Markôs who as Mâr Yahbh-Allâhâ III became Patriarch of the Nestorian Church in Asia; translated from the Syriac...* Religious Tract Society, London, 1928. Reprod. AMS Press, New York, 1973. (Tr. from *Yish'iata demâr Yahbalâdha vderaban Şauma*.)

BUEDELOR, W. (1). *Geschichte der Raumfahrt*. Sigloch, Kuenzelsau, 1979. Rev. E. F. M. Rees, *TCULT* 1981, 22 (no. 4), 816.

BULL, H. B. (1). *Physical Biochemistry*. Wiley, New York, 1943.

BURTON, SIR RICHARD (1). *The Book of the Sword*. Chatto & Windus, London, 1884.

BURTT, JOSEPH (1). 'Extracts from the Pipe Roll of the Exchequer for 27 Edw. III (+1353) relating to the Early Use of Guns and Gunpowder in the English Army.' *ARJ*, 1862, 19, 68.

BUTLER, A. R., GLIDEWELL, C. & NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (1). 'The Solubilisation of Cinnabar; Explanation of a Sixth-Century Chinese Alchemical Recipe.' *JCR(S)*, 1980, 47; (*M*), 1980, 0817–0832.

BUTLER, A. R. & NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (1). 'An Experimental Comparison of the East Asian, Hellenistic and Indian (Gandhāran) stills in relation to the Distillation of Ethanol and Acetic Acid.' *AX*, 1980.

BYRON, ROBERT (1). *The Byzantine Achievement; an historical perspective A.D. 330–1454*. London, 1929.

CABLE, M. & FRENCH, F. (1). *The Gobi Desert*. Hodder & Stoughton, London, 1942; Macmillan, New York, 1944.

CADONNA, A. (1). 'Astronauti' Taoisti da Chhang-an alla Luna; Note sul Manoscritto di Dunhuang S 6836 alla Luce di alcuni Lavori di Edward H. Schafer.' *OV*, 1983.

'Cafari et Continuatorum Annales Januae.' *See* Pertz, G. H. (1).

CAHEN, C. (1) 'Un Traité d'Armurerie composé pour Saladin' (Salaḥ al-Dīn, +1138/+1193) (the *al-Tabṣira...fi'l Ḥurūb*.... (Explanations of Defence and Descriptions of Military Equipment) written by Murdā ibn 'Alī ibn Murdā al-Tarsūsī, an Armenian of Alexandria, about +1185). *BEO/IFD*, 1947, 12, 103.

CAILLOIS, R. (1) 'Lois de la Guerre en Chine' (a study of *Sun Tzu, Wu Tzu, Ssuma Ping Fa*, etc. after Amiot, 2). *PVS*, 1956, 16

CAILLOT, A. (1). *Curiosités Naturelles, Historiques et Morales de l'Empire de la Chine; ou, Choix des Traits les plus Intéressans de l'Histoire de ce Pays, et des Relations des Voyageurs qui l'ont-Visité, à l'Usage de la Jeunesse*. 2 vols. Ledentu, Paris, 1818.

CALTEN, J. N. (1). *Leiddraad bij het Onderrigt in de Zee-artillerie...* Zweesaardt, Amsterdam, 1832. 2nd ed. 1847.

CAMDEN, WILLIAM (1). *Remaines concerning Britaine, reviewed, corrected and encreased*. Legatt & Waterson, London, 1614.

DE CAMOENS, LUIS (1). *Os Lusiados*. Lisbon, 1572 (facsimile Lisbon, 1943). Eng. trns. *see* Fanshawe, R. (1); Aubertin, J. J. (1) (with Portuguese); Burton, R. F. (2); Atkinson, W. C. (1) (prose); Mickle, W. J. (1) (Popian couplets, not recommended, and contains insertions and deletions, but with interesting notes).

CARDWELL, D. S. L. (1). *Steam Power in the +18th Century; a Case Study in the Application of Science*. Sheed & Ward, London, 1963. (Newman History & Philosophy of Science Series, no. 12.)

CARDWELL, ROBERT (1). 'Pirate-Fighters of the South China Sea.' *NGM*, 1946, 89 (no. 6), 787.

CAREY, W. (1). 'An Account of the Funeral Ceremonies of a Burman Priest.' *ASKR*, 1816, 12, 186.

CARNAT, G. (1). *Le Fer à Cheval à travers l'Histoire et l'Archéologie; contributions à l'histoire de la Civilisation*. Paris, 1951.

CARON, FRANÇOIS & SCHOUTEN, JOOST (1). *A True Description of the Mighty Kingdoms of Japan and Siam. Written...in Dutch... and now rendred into English by Capt. Roger Manley*. London, 1663, 1671. Repr. ed. C. R. Boxer, Argonaut, London, 1935.

CARPEAUX, C. (1). *Le Bayon d'Angkor Thom; Bas-Reliefs publiés... d'après les documents recueillis par le Mission Henri Dufour*. Leroux, Paris, 1910.

CASIRI, M. (1). *Bibliotheca Arabico-Hispana Escurialensis sive Librorum Omnium MSS quos Arabicè ab Auctoribus magnam partem Arabo-Hispanis compositos Bibliotheca Coenobii Escurialensis complectitur. Recensio et Explanatio Operâ et Studio Michaelis Casiri*. 2 vols. Madrid, 1770.

CELLINI, BENEVENUTO (1). Autobiography, *Vita di Benvenuto Cellini, Orefice e Scultore Fiorentino, da lui medesimo Scritta*. Ed. N. Bettoni. Milan, 1821. Eng. tr. by R. H. H. Cust. 2 vols. Bell, London, 1910.

CHABOT, J. B. (1). *Histoire de Mar Jabalaha III.* Paris, 1895.
CHABOT, J. B. (2). 'Note sur les Relations du Roi Arghun [the Mongol Ilkhan of Persia] avec l'Occident.' *ROL*, 1894, **2**, 570.
CHAKRAVARTI, P. C. (1). *The Art of War in Ancient India.* Dacca, 1941.
CHAMBERS, JAMES (1). *The Devil's Horsemen; the Mongol Invasion of Europe.* Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1979.
CHAN HOK-LAM. *See* Chhen Ho-Lin.
CHANG THIEN-TSÊ (1). *Sino-Portuguese Trade from +1514 to +1644; a Synthesis of Portuguese and Chinese Sources.* Brill, Leyden, 1933; repr. 1969.
CHAVANNES, E. (20). 'Une Stèle de l'Année +554' in *Six Monuments de la Sculpture Chinoise.* van Oest, Paris & Brussels, 1914 (Ars Asiatica, no. 2).
CHAVANNES, E. (22). 'Leou Kî [Lou Chi] et Sa Famille.' *TP*, 1914, **15**, 193. (Includes a discussion of Lou Chi's descendant, Lou Chhien-Hsia, who held Nan-ning against the Mongols for the Sung, and who blew up his men and himself with gunpowder bombs in +1277, seeing that further resistance was useless.)
CHÊNG CHEN-TO (1). 'Building the New, Uncovering the Old.' *CREC*, 1954, **3** (no. 6), 18.
CHÊNG LIN (2) (tr.). *The Art of War, a Military Manual [Sun Tzu Ping Fa] written c.* −510 (with original Chinese Text). World Encyclopaedia Institute, Chungking, 1945. Repr. World Book Co., Shanghai, 1946.
CHÊNG TÊ-KHUN (18). 'Cannons of the Opium War on the Campus of Amoy University, Fukien.' *CJ*, 1937. Adapted from *Hsia-Mên Ta-Hsüeh Hsiao-Chih Khao* (in Chinese). *BAU*, 1936, **22** (no. 15), 3. Repr. in Chêng Tê-Khun (19), p. 119.
CHÊNG TÊ-KHUN (19). *Studies in Chinese Archaeology.* Chinese Univ. Press, Shatin, Hongkong, 1982 (Centre for Chinese Archaeology and Art Studies Series, no. 3).
CHERONIS, N. D. (1). 'Chemical Warfare in the Middle Ages; Kallinikos' "Prepared Fire".' *JCE*, 1937, **14**, 360.
CHERTIER, F. M. (1). *Nouvelles Recherches sur les Feux d'Artifice.* Paris, 1854.
CHHEN CHHI-THIEN (1). *Liu Tsê-Hsü; Pioneer Promoter of the Adoption of Western Means of Maritime Defence in China.* Dept. of Economics, Yenching Univ., Vetch (French Bookstore), Peiping, 1934. ([Studies in] Modern Industrial Technique in China, no. 1.)
CHHEN CHHI-THIEN (2). *Tsêng Kuo-Fan; Pioneer Promoter of the Steamship in China.* Dept. of Economics, Yenching Univ., Vetch (French Bookstore), Peiping, 1935. ([Studies in] Modern Industrial Technique in China, no. 2.)
CHHEN CHHI-THIEN (3). *Tso Tsung-Thang; Pioneer Promoter of the Modern Dockyard and the Woollen Mill in China.* Dept. of Economics, Yenching Univ., Vetch (French Bookstore), Peiping, 1938. ([Studies in] Modern Industrial Technique in China, no. 3.)
CHHEN HO-LIN (1). 'Liu Chi (+1311 to +1375) in the *Ying Lieh Chuan*; the Fictionalisation of a Scholar-Hero.' *JOSA*, 1967, **5**, 25.
CHHEN YUAN (1). *Western and Central Asians in China under the Mongols; their Transformation into Chinese.* Tr. and annot. Chhien Hsing-Hai & L. C. Goodrich. Monumenta Serica, Univ. Calif., Los Angeles, 1966. (Monumenta Serica Monographs, no. 15.)
CHHIEN HSÜEH-SÊN (Tsien Hsue-Shen) & MALINA, F. J. (1). 'Flight Analysis of a Sounding Rocket with Special Reference to Propulsion by Successive Impulses.' *JAEROS*, 1938, **6**, 50.
CHIANG CHÊNG-LIN (1). *Ancient Chinese Rockets.* Unpub. typescript issued by China Features Office (Chhen Lung), 1963.
CIOLKOVSKIJ, KONSTANTIN E. *See* Tsiolkovsky.
CIPOLLA, C. M. (1). *Guns and Sails in the Early Phase of European Expansion, +1400 to +1700.* Collins, London, 1965. Ital. tr. 1969. Subsequently published together with (2) as 'European Culture and Overseas Expansion'. Penguin, London, 1970.
CLAGETT, MARSHALL (4). 'The Life and Works of Giovanni Fontana.' *AIMSS*, 1976, **1**, 5.
CLAGETT, MARSHALL (5). *Archimedes in the Middle Ages.* 3 vols. Philadelphia, 1978.
CLARK, BRACY (1). *Essay on the Knowledge of the Ancients respecting the Art of Shoeing the Horse, and of the probable period of the Commencement of the Art.* London, 1831.
CLARK, GRAHAME (2). 'Horses and Battle-Axes.' *AQ*, 1941, **15**, 50.
CLARK, JOHN D. (1). *Ignition; an Informal History of Liquid Rocket Propellants.* Rutgers Univ. Press, New Brunswick, N.J., 1972.
CLEPHAN, R. COLTMAN (1). 'An Outline of the History of Gunpowder and that of the Hand-Gun, from the Epoch of the Earliest Records to the end of the 15th century.' *ARJ*, 1909, **66** (2nd ser.), **16**, 145.
CLEPHAN, R. COLTMAN (2). 'The Ordnance of the +14th and +15th Centuries.' *ARJ*, 1911, **68** (2nd ser.), **18**, 49–138.
CLEPHAN, R. COLTMAN (3). 'The Military Handgun of the +16th Century.' *ARJ*, 1910, **67** (2nd ser.), **17**, 109.

CLEPHAN, R. COLTMAN (4). 'Some Very Early Types of Hand-Guns.' *ANTIQ*, 1909, **45**, 93. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (*8*).

CLEPHAN, R. COLTMAN (5). *An Outline of the History and Development of Hand Firearms.* London and Felling-on-Tyne, 1906.

CLOW, A. & CLOW, NAN L. (1). *The Chemical Revolution; a Contribution to Social Technology.* Batchworth, London, 1952.

COLIN, G. S., AYALON, DAVID, PARRY, V. J., SAVORY, R. M. & YAR MUHAMMAD KHAN (1). Art. 'Bārūd' (saltpetre, later gunpowder itself) in *Enc. of Islam.* Brill and Luzac, Leiden and London, 1958, vol. 1, pt. 2, pp. 1055 ff.

COLLADO, LUYS (1). *Pratica Manuale di Artiglieria, nella quale si tratta della Inventione di essa, dell'ordine di condurla & piantarla sotto à qualcunque Fortezza, fabricar Mine da far volar im alto le Fortezze, spiaviar le Montagne, divertir l'acque offensive à i Regni & Provincie, tirar co i pezzi in molti & diversi modi, far fuochi artificieli*, etc. Venice, 1586.

COLLINS, A. L. (1). 'Fire-setting; the Art of Mining by Fire.' *TFIME*, 1892, 5, 82.

CONGREVE, WILLIAM (1). *A Concise Account of the Origin and Progress of the Rocket System; with a View of the apparent advantages, both as to the Effect produced, and the... Saving of Expence, arising from the peculiar facilities of application which it possesses, as well for Naval as Military purposes.* Whiting, London, 1807.

CONGREVE, COL. [WILLIAM] (2). *The Details of the Rocket System: Shewing the Various Applications of this Weapon, both for Land and Sea Service, and its Different Uses in the Field and in Sieges; illustrated by Plates of the Principal Equipments, Exercises, and Cases of Actual Service, with General Instructions for its Application, and Demonstration of the Comparative Economy of the System...* Whiting, London, 1814. Repr. Museum Restoration Service, Ottawa, 1970.

CONGREVE, MAJOR-GENERAL SIR W[ILLIAM] (3). *A Treatise on the General Principles, Powers, and Facility of Application of the Congreve Rocket System, as compared with Artillery: showing the Various Applications of this Weapon, both for Land and Sea Service...* Enlarged 2nd. ed. of Congreve (2) but more elegantly printed, with folding plates of engravings. Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown and Green, London, 1827.

CONNOLLY, P. (1). *Greece and Rome at War.* Macdonald Phoebus, London, 1981.

CONNOR, J. (1). 'Tests of Response to Detonative Stimuli.' Paper in *Proc. 1st International Loss Prevention Symposium.* The Hague, Netherlands, 1974, p. 104.

CONNOR, J. (2). 'Explosion Risk of Unstable Substances.' Paper in *Proc. 1st International Loss Prevention Symposium.* The Hague, Netherlands, 1974, p. 265.

COOK, M. A. (1) (ed.). *Studies in the Economic History of the Middle East, from the Rise of Islam to the Present Day.* Oxford, 1970.

COOMARASWAMY, A. K. (7). 'The Blow-pipe in Persia and India.' *AAN*, 1943, **45**, 311.

COOPER, MICHAEL (1). *Rodrigues the Interpreter; an Early Jesuit in Japan and China.* Weatherhill, Tokyo and New York, 1974.

CORDIER, H. (1). *Histoire Générale de la Chine.* 4 vols. Geuthner, Paris, 1920.

CORDIER, H. (8). *Essai d'une Bibliographie des Ouvrages publiés en Chine par les Européens au 17e et au 18e siècle.* Leroux, Paris, 1883.

CORNELISSE, J. W., SCHÖYER, H. F. R. & WAKKER, K. F. (1). *Rocket Propulsion and Spaceflight Dynamics.* Pitman, London, 1981 (1st ed. 1979).

CORRÉARD, J. (1). *Histoire des Fusées de Guerre; ou, Recueil de tout ce qui a été publié ou écrit sur ce Projectile.* Paris, 1841.

DI CORREGGIO, FRANCISCO BALBI (1). *La Verdadera Relacion de todo lo que esto Año de MDLXV ha sucedido en la Isla de Malta.* Alcala de Henares, 1567; Barcelona, 1568. Eng. tr. by H. A. Balbi, *The Siege of Malta, 1565.* Copenhagen, 1961.

CORTESAO, A. (2) (tr. & ed.). *The* Suma Oriental *of Tomé Pires, an Account of the East from the Red Sea to Japan...written in...1512 to 1515...* London, 1944 (Hakluyt Society Pubs., 2nd ser. nos. 89, 90).

COURANT, M. (1). *Bibliographie Coréenne.* Paris, 1894–6, 3 vols. with one suppl. vol. (Pub. École. Langues Or. Viv. (3e sér.), nos. 18, 19, 20.) Photolitho reproduction, Burt Franklin, New York, 1975.

COWPER, H. S. (1). *The Art of Attack, being a Study in the Development of Weapons and Appliances of Offence, from the Earliest Times to the Age of Gunpowder.* Holmes, Ulverston, 1906.

CRANSTONE, B. A. L. (1). 'The Blow-gun in Europe.' *MA*, 1949, **49**, 119.

CRAUFURD, QUINTIN (1). *Sketches chiefly relating to the History, Religion, Learning and Manners of the Hindoos.* London, 1790; 2nd ed. 1792.

CRICK, FRANCIS (1). *Life Itself; its Origin and Nature.* McDonald, London and Sydney, 1981.

DE CRISTOFORIS, LUIGI (1). 'Di Una Macchina Igneo-pneumatica.' *ARIL*, 1841, 2, 22.

CRUCQ, K. C. (1). 'Cannon surviving in Indonesia.' *TBG*, 1930, 70, 195; 1937, 77, 105; 1938, 78, 93, 359; 1940, 80, 34; 1941, 81, 74.

DA CRUZ, GASPAR (1). *Tractado em que se cotam muito por esteco as cousas da China.* Evora, 1569, 1570 (the first book on China printed in Europe), tr. Boxer (1), and originally in *Purchas his Pilgrimes*, vol. 3, p. 81. London, 1625.

CURWEN, C. A. (1). *Taiping Rebel; the Deposition of Li Hsiu-Chhéng*. Cambridge, 1977.
CURWEN, M. D. (1), (ed.). *Chemistry and Commerce*, 4 vols. Newnes, London, 1935.
CUSHING, F. H. (1). 'The Arrow.' *AAN*, 1895, 8, 344.
CUTBUSH, JAMES (1). *A System of Pyrotechny, Comprehending the Theory and Practice, with the Application of Chemistry; Designed for Exhibition and for War*. Philadelphia, 1825.
CUTBUSH, JAMES (2). 'Remarks on the Composition and Properties of the Chinese Fire, and on the so-called Brilliant Fires.' *AJSC*, 1823, 7, 118.

DARDESS, J. W. (1). *Conquerors and Confucians; Aspects of Political Change in Late Yuan China*. Columbia Univ. Press, New York and London, 1973.
DARMSTÄDTER, L. (1) (with the collaboration of R. duBois-Reymond & C. Schäfer). *Handbuch zur Geschichte d. Naturwissenschaften u. d. Technik*. Springer, Berlin, 1908.
DATE, Q. T. (1). *The Art of War in Ancient India*. Mysore and Oxford, 1929.
DAUMAS, M. (3). 'Le Brevet du Pyréolophore des Frères Niepce (1806).' *DHT*, 1961, 1, 23.
DAVIS, J. F. (1). *The Chinese; a General Description of China and its Inhabitants*. 1st ed. 1836. 2 vols. Knight, London, 1844, 3 vols., 1847, 2 vols. French tr. by A. Pichard, Paris, 1837, 2 vols. Germ. trs. by M. Wesenfeld, Magdeburg, 1843, 2 vols. and M. Drugulin, Stuttgart, 1847, 4 vols.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. (10). 'Early Chinese Rockets.' *TR*, 1948, 51, 101, 120, 122.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. (11). 'Early Pyrotechnics; I, Fire for the Wars of China, II, Evolution of the Gun, III, Chemical Warfare in Ancient China.' *ORD*, 1948, 33, 52, 180, 396.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. (15). 'The Cultural Relationships of Explosives.' *NFR*, 1944, 1, 11.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. (17). *The Chemistry of Powder and Explosives*. 2 vols. Wiley, New York, Chapman & Hall, London, 1941, 1943. 4th repr. 1956 (bound in one vol.).
DAVIS, TENNEY L. (18). 'The Early Use of Potassium Chlorate in Pyrotechny; Dr Moritz Meyer's Coloured Flame Compositions.' *CHYM*, 1948, 1, 75.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. & CHAO YÜN-TSHUNG (9) (tr.). 'Chao Hsüeh-Min's Outline of Pyrotechnics [*Huo Hsi Lüeh*]; a Contribution to the History of Fireworks.' *PAAAS*, 1943, 75, 95.
DAVIS, TENNEY L. & WARE, J. R. (1). 'Early Chinese Military Pyrotechnics' (analysis of *Wu Pei Chih*, chs. 119 to 134). *JCE*, 1947, 24, 522.
DAWES, H. F. (1). 'Chinese Silver Mining in Mongolia.' *EMJ*, 1891, 54, 335.
DAWSON, H. CHRISTOPHER (3) (ed.). *The Mongol Mission; Narratives and Letters of the Franciscan Missionaries in Mongolia and China in the +13th and +14th Centuries, translated by a Nun of Stanbrook Abbey*. Sheed & Ward, London, 1955.
DAY, D. J. H. (1). 'Early Non-Electric Ignition Systems for Internal Combustion Engines.' *TNS*, 1981, 53, 171.
DEBUS, A. G. (9). 'The Aerial Nitre in the +16th and early +17th Centuries.' Communication to the Xth International Congress of the History of Science, Ithaca, N.Y., 1962. In *Communications*, p. 835.
DEBUS, A. G. (10). The Paracelsian Aerial Nitre.' *ISIS*, 1964, 55, 43.
DEBUS, A. G. (13). 'Solution Analyses Prior to Robert Boyle.' *CHYM*, 1962, 8, 41.
DEBUS, A. G. (18). *The English Paracelsians*. Oldbourne, London, 1965; Watts, New York, 1966. Rev. W. Pagel, *HOSC*, 1966, 5, 100.
DEBUS, H. (1). 'The Chemical Theory of Gunpowder' (Bakerian Lecture). *PRS*, 1882, no. 218, 361.
DELLRÜCK, H. (1). *Geschichte d. Kriegskunst im Rahmen der politischen Geschichte*. Stilke, Berlin, 1907–36. 7 vols.
DEMMIN, A. (1). *Die Kriegswaffen in ihrer historischen Entwicklung*. Leipzig, 1886, then 1893. Eng. tr. C. C. Black, *Weapons of War, being a history of arms and armour from the earliest period to the present time*. Bell & Daldy, London, 1870. Re-issued, with changed title: *Illustrated History of Arms and Armour from the earliest period to the present time*. Bell, London, 1877.
DENING, W. (1). *The Life of Toyotomi Hideyoshi*. 5 parts, Tokyo, 1888–90. 3rd ed. ed. M. E. Dening, Thompson, Kobe, and Kegan Paul, London, 1930.
DENIS, E. (1). *Hus et la Guerre des Hussites*. Paris, 1930.
DENNIS, A. S. (1). *Weather Modification by Cloud Seeding*. Academic Press, New York, 1980 (International Geophysics Series, no. 24).
DENWOOD, P. (1) (ed.). *Arts of the Eurasian Steppelands*. David Foundation, London, 1978 (Colloquies on Art and Archaeology in Asia, No. 7).
DESSENS, J. (1). 'Cloud seeding for hail suppression (programme of the Association Nationale de Lutte contre les Fléaux Atmosphériques).' *JWM*, 1979, 11, 4.
DIBNER, B. (1). 'Leonardo da Vinci; Military Engineer' in *Studies and Essays in the History of Science and Learning* (Sarton Presentation Volume), ed. M. F. Ashley-Montagu. Schuman, New York, 1944, p. 85. Sep. pub. Burndy Library, New York, 1946.
DICK, STEVEN J. (1). *Plurality of Worlds; the Extra-terrestrial Life Debate, from Democritus to Kant*. Cambridge, 1982.

DICKINSON, H. W. (4). *A Short History of the Steam-Engine.* Cambridge, 1939. Re-issued, with introduction by A. E. Musson, Cass, London, 1963. Rev. L. T. C. Rolt, *TCULT*, 1965, **6**, 115.
DICKINSON, H. W. (6). 'The Steam-Engine to 1830.' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 4, p. 168. Oxford, 1958.
DICKINSON, H. W. (7). 'James Watt, Craftsman and Engineer.' Cambridge, 1936.
DICKINSON, H. W. & TITLEY, A. (1). *Richard Trevithick, the Engineer and the Man.* Cambridge, 1934.
DIELS, H. (1). *Antike Technik.* Teubner, Leipzig & Berlin, 1914. 2nd ed. 1920. Rev. B. Laufer, *AAN*, 1917, **19**, 71.
DIELS, H. & SCHRAMM, E. (3) (ed. & tr.). 'Excerpte aus Philons Mechanik [Bks. VII, *Paraskeuastika*, and VIII, *Poliorketika*] vulgo Bk IV' (mostly on tactical use of artillery). *APAW/PH*, 1919, no. 12.
DIKSHITAR, V. R. R. (1). *War in Ancient India.* Macmillan, Madras, 1944 (2nd edition 1948).
DOOIEL, I. (1). 'Ein Mittel, die Gestalten der Schneeflocken künstlich zu erzeugen.' *MPCASP*, 1879, **9**, 266.
DOLLFUS, C. (1). *The First Burden- or Payload-carrying Rockets.* Allocution à la Réunion de la Commission d'Histoire de l'Académie Internationale Astronautique, Sept. 1963.
DORÉ, H. (1). *Recherches sur les Superstitions en Chine.* 15 vols. T'u-Se-Wei Press, Shanghai, 1914–29.
Pt. I, vol. 1, pp. 1–146: 'Superstitious' practices, birth, marriage and death customs (*VS*, no. 32).
Pt. I, vol. 2, pp. 147–216: talismans, exorcisms and charms (*VS*, no. 33).
Pt. I, vol. 3, pp. 217–322: divination methods (*VS*, no. 34).
Pt. I, vol. 4, pp. 323–488: seasonal festivals and miscellaneous magic (*VS*, no. 35).
Pt. I, vol. 5, sep. pagination: analysis of Taoist talismans (*VS*, no. 36).
Pt. II, vol. 6, pp. 1–196: Pantheon (*VS*, no. 39).
Pt. II, vol. 7, pp. 197–298: Pantheon (*VS*, no. 41).
Pt. II, vol. 8, pp. 299–462: Pantheon (*VS*, no. 42).
Pt. II, vol. 9, pp. 463–680: Pantheon, Taoist (*VS*, no. 44).
Pt. II, vol. 10, pp. 681–859: Taoist celestial bureaucracy (*VS*, no. 45).
Pt. II, vol. 11, pp. 860–1052: city-gods, field-gods, trade-gods (*VS*, no. 46).
Pt. II, vol. 12, pp. 1053–1286: miscellaneous spirits, stellar deities (*VS*, no. 48).
Pt. III, vol. 13, pp. 1–263: popular Confucianism, sages of the Wên miao (*VS*, no. 49).
Pt. III, vol. 14, pp. 264–606: popular Confucianism, historical figures (*VS*, no. 51).
Pt. III, vol. 15, sep. pagination: popular Buddhism, life of Gautama (*VS*, no. 57).
DRACHMANN, A. G. (2). 'Ktesibios, Philon and Heron; a Study in Ancient Pneumatics.' *AHSNM*, 1948, **4**, 1–197.
DRACHMANN, A. G. (4). 'Remarks on the Ancient Catapults [Calibration Formulae].' *Actes du VIIe Congrès International d'Histoire des Sciences, Jerusalem, 1953*, p. 279.
DRACHMANN, A. G. (9). 'The Mechanical Technology of Greek and Roman Antiquity; a Study of the Literary Sources.' Munksgaard, Copenhagen, 1963.
DREW, R. B. (1). 'The Hide and Bone Glue Industries' in *Chemistry and Commerce*, ed. M. D. Curwen (1), vol. 4.
DREYER, E. L. (1). *The Emergence of Chu Yüan-Chang, +1360 to +1365.* Inaug. Diss., Harvard, 1970.
DREYER, E. L. (2). 'The Po-yang [Lake] Campaign, +1363; Inland Naval Warfare in the Founding of the Ming Dynasty.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 202.
DUBOIS-REYMOND, C. (2). 'Notes on Chinese Archery.' *JRAS/NCB*, 1912, **43**, 32.
DUHEM, P. (4). *Un Fragment Inédit de 'l'Opus Tertium' de Roger Bacon.* Quaracchi, Florence, 1909.
DUHR, J. (1). *Un Jésuite en Chine, Adam Schall.* Desclée de Brouwer, Paris, 1936. Eng. adaptation by R. Attwater, *Adam Schall, a Jesuit at the Court of China, 1592 to 1666.* Geoffrey Chapman, London, 1963. Not very reliable sinologically.
DUNLOP, D. M. (10). 'Hāfiz-i Abru's Version of the Timurid Embassy to China in +1420.' *TGUOS*, 1948, **11**, 15.
DURRANT, P. J. (1). *General and Inorganic Chemistry.* 2nd ed. repr. Longmans Green, London, 1956.
DUTHEIL, G. *See* de la Porte du Theil, G. (1).
DUYVENDAK, J. J. L. (19). 'Desultory Notes on the *Hsi Yang Chi* [Lo Mou-Têng's novel of +1597 based on the Voyages of Chêng Ho]' (concerns spectacles and bombards). *TP*, 1953, **42**, 1.

EBBUTT, M. I. (1). *Hero Myths and Legends of the British Race.* Harrap, New York. (*Beowulf* repr. in *PAR*, 1982, **7** (no. 4), 20.)
EBERHARD, W. (2). 'Lokalkulturen im alten China.' *TP* (Suppl.), 1943, **37**; *MS* Monograph no. 3, 1942. (Crit. H. Wilhelm, *MS*, 1944, **9**, 209.)
EBERHARD, W. (3). 'Early Chinese Cultures and their Development, a Working Hypothesis.' *ARSI*, 1937, 513 (Pub. no. 3476).
EBERHARD, W. (27). *The Local Cultures of South and East China.* Brill, Leiden, 1968.
EBERHARD, W. (31). *Chinese Festivals.* Orient Cultural Service, Thaipei, 1972 (Asian Folklore and Social Life Monographs, no. 38).

EGERTON OF TATTON, LORD (1). *A Description of Indian and Oriental Armour.* Allen, London, 1896.

ELLERN, H. & LANCASTER, R. (1). *Military and Civilian Pyrotechnics.* Chem. Pub. Co., New York, 1968. Rev. *SAM,* 1969, 220 (no. 4), 140.

ELLIOTT, SIR H. M. (1). *The History of India as told by its own Historians; the Muhammedan Period.* (Posthumous papers edited and continued by J. Dowson.) 6 vols. London, 1867–75.

EMME, E. M. (1) (ed.). *The History of Rocket Technology; Essays on Research, Development and Utility.* Wayne State Univ. Press, Detroit, 1970.

ERBEN, W. (1). 'Beiträge z. Geschichte des Geschützwesens im Mittelalter.' *ZHWK,* 1916, 7, 85, 117.

ERCKER, L. (1). *Beschreibung Alle-fürnemsten Mineralischen Ertzt und Berckwercks Arten....* Prague, 1574. 2nd ed. Frankfurt, 1580. Eng. tr. by Sir John Pettus, as *Fleta Minor, or, the Laws of Art and Nature, in Knowing, Judging, Assaying, Fining, Refining and Inlarging the Bodies of confin'd Metals...* Dawks, London, 1683. *See* Sisco & Smith (2); Partington (7), vol. 2, pp. 104 ff.

VON ERDBERG-CONSTEN E. (1). 'A *Hu* with Pictorial Decoration' (late Chou battle scenes). *ACASA,* 1952, 6, 18.

ESNAULT-PELTERIE, R. (1). *L'Exploration par Fusée de la très haute Atmosphère et la Possibilité des Voyages Interplanétaires.* Soc. Astron. de France, Paris, 1928.

ESNAULT-PELTERIE, R. (2). *L'Astronautique.* Lahure, Paris, 1930.

ESPÉRANDIEU, E. (2). *Recueil Général des Bas-Reliefs, Statues et Bustes de la Gaule Romaine.* Imp. Nat. Paris, 1908, 1913.

VON ESSENWEIN, A. (2). *Quellen zur Geschichte der Feuerwaffen.* Leipzig, 1877.

EVANS, J. (1). *The History of St. Louis* [by Jean de Joinville, 1309]. London, 1938.

ÉVRARD, R. & DESCY, A. (1). *Histoire de l'Usine des Vennes, suivie de Considérations sur les Fontes Anciennes.* Éditions Solédi, Liège, 1948.

FABER, FELIX (1). *F. Fabri Evagatorium in Terrae Sanctae, Arabiae et Egyptae Peregrinationem* [+1483]. Ed. C. D. Hassler. Stuttgart, 1843.

FABER, H. B. (1). *Military Pyrotechnics; the Manufacture of Military Pyrotechnics, an Exposition of the Present Methods and Materials Used.* 3 vols. Govt. Printing Office, Washington D.C., 1919.

FAIRBANK, J. K. (3). 'Varieties of the Chinese Military Experience.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare,* p. 1.

FAIRBANK, J. K. (4). 'The Creation of the Treaty System.' Art. in *Cambridge History of China,* ed. D. Twitchett & J. K. Fairbank, vol. 10, p. 213. Cambridge, 1978.

FALK, H. S. & TORP, ALF (1). *Norwegisch-Dänisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch.* Universitetsforlaget, Oslo, 1960.

FANSHAWE, RICHARD (1) (tr.). *The Lusiad, or Portugalls Historicall Poem...* Moseley, London, 1655. Ed. and repr. J. D. M. Ford. Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1940.

DE FARIA Y SOUSA, MANUEL (1). *Imperio de la China y Cultura Evangelica en el por los Religiosos de la Compañia de Jesus....* Officinà Herreriana, Lisbon, 1731.

FARIS, NABIH AMIN & ELMER, R. P. (1). *Arab Archery; an Arabic MS of about +1500: 'A Book on the Excellence of the Bow and Arrow' and the Description thereof.* Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N.J., 1945.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (1). *Die Technik der Vorzeit, der Geschichtlichen Zeit, und der Naturvölker* (encyclopaedia). Engelmann, Leipzig and Berlin, 1914. Photographic reprint; Liebing, Würzburg, 1965.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (2). *Die Technik d. Antike u. d. Mittelalter.* Athenaion, Potsdam, 1931. Crit. H. T. Horwitz, *ZHWK,* 1933, 13 (NF 4), 170.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (28). 'Eine Chinesische Stangenbüchse von +1421.' *ZHWK,* 1907, 4, 256.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (29). 'Geschützkonstruktionen von Leonardo da Vinci.' *ZHWK,* 1913, 6, 128.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (30). 'Zur ältesten Geschichte des Schiesspulvers in Europa.' *ZAC,* 1906, 19, 465.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (31). 'Die ältesten Nachrichten über Berthold den Schwarzen, den angeblichen Erfinder des Schiesspulvers.' *CHZ,* 1907, 31, 831.

FELDHAUS, F. M. (32). 'Der Pulvermönch Berthold, +1313 oder +1393?' *ZAC,* 1908, 21, 639, *CHZ,* 1908, 32, 316.

FÊNG CHIA-SHÊNG (1). 'The Origin of Gunpowder and its Diffusion Westwards.' Unpub. MS.

FÊNG TA-JAN & KILBORN, L. G. (1). 'Nosu and Miao Arrow Poisons.' *JWCBRS,* 1937, 9, 130.

FENTON, H. J. H. (1). *Notes on Qualitative Analysis, Concise and Explanatory.* Cambridge, 1916.

FERGUSON, J. C. (8) [& CHANG, S. K.]. 'The Six Horses of Thang Thai Tsung.' *JRAS/NCB,* 1936, 67, 1.

FERGUSON, J. C. (9). 'The Tomb of Ho Chhü-Ping' [Han general, d. −117]. *AA,* 1928, 4, 228.

FERNALD, H. E. (2). 'The Horses of Thang Thai Tsung and the Stele of Yü [Shih-Hsiung].' *JAOS,* 1935, 55, 420.

FFOULKES, C. (1). *Armour and Weapons.* Oxford, 1909.

FFOULKES, C. (2). *Arms and Armament, an Historical Survey of the Weapons of the British Army.* Harrap, London, 1945.

FIELD, D. C. (1). 'Internal-Combustion Engines' [in the Late Nineteenth Century]. Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, Oxford, 1958, vol. 4, p. 157.

FINDLAY, A. (1). *Practical Physical Chemistry*. Longmans Green, London, 1923.

FIRIGER, F. G. *et al.* (1). 'The Compatibility of Meteorological Rocketsonde Data as indicated by International Comparison Tests.' *JATMOS*, 1975, **32**, 1705.

FISCHER-WIERUSZOWSKI, F. (1). 'Kriegerischer Einfall d. Mongolen in Japan; eine japanische Bildrolle.' *OAZ*, 1935 (NF), **11**, 121.

FISCHLER, G. (1). 'Über Pulverproben früherer Zeiten.' *ZHWK*, 1927, **11**, 49.

FISHER, I. (1). 'A New Method for Indicating Food Values.' *AJOP*, 1906, **15**, 417.

FLAMMARION, CAMILLE (1). *Mondes Imaginaires et Mondes Réels*. Paris, 1865.

DE FLURANCE, RIVAULT (1). *Les Elemens de l'Artillerie*. 1607.

FOLEY, V. & PERRY, K. (1). 'In Defence of *Liber Ignium*; Arab Alchemy, Roger Bacon, and the Introduction of Gunpowder into the West.' *JHAS*, 1979, **3** (no. 2), 200.

DE FONTENELLE, B. (1). *Entretiens sur la Pluralité des Mondes*. Brunet, Paris, 1698. (1st ed. 1686; Eng. trs. 1688, 1702.)

FOOTE, G. B. & KNIGHT, C. A. (1). *Hail; a Review of Hail Science and Hail Suppression*. Amer. Meteorol. Soc., Boston, 1977 (Meteorological Monographs, no. 38).

[FORBES, R. J.] (4*a*). *Histoire des Bitumes, des Époques les plus Reculées jusqu'à l'an 1800*. Shell, Leiden, n.d.

FORBES, R. J. (4*b*). *Bitumen and Petroleum in Antiquity*. Brill, Leiden, 1936.

FORBES, R. J. (8). 'Metallurgy [in the Mediterranean Civilisations and the Middle Ages].' In *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 2, p. 41. Oxford, 1956.

FORBES, R. J. (20). *Studies in Early Petroleum History*. Brill, Leiden, 1958.

FORBES, R. J. (21). *More Studies in Early Petroleum History*. Brill, Leiden, 1959.

FORDHAM, S. (1). *High Explosives and Propellants*. Pergamon, Oxford, 1981.

FORKE, A. (17). 'Der Festungskrieg im alten China.' *OAZ*, 1919, **8**, 103. (Repr. from Forke (3), pp. 99 ff.)

FORKE, A. (18). 'Über d. chinesischen Armbrust.' *ZFE*, 1896, **28**, 272.

FOSTER, J. (1). 'Crosses from the Walls of Zaitun [Chhüanchow].' *JRAS*, 1954, 1–25.

FRANKE, H. (14). 'Some Aspects of Chinese Private Historiography in the +13th and +14th Centuries.' Art. in *Historians of China and Japan*, ed. W. G. Beasley & E. G. Pulleyblank, p. 115. London, 1961.

FRANKE, H. (20). *Sino-Western Contacts under the Mongol Empire*. Hume Memorial Lecture, Yale University, New Haven, 1965.

FRANKE, H. (22). 'Besprechungen ostasiatische Neuerscheinungen.' *ORE*, 1956, **3** (no. 2), 234.

FRANKE, H. (23) (tr.). 'Die Verteidigung von Shao-Hsing; *Pao Yüeh Lu* von Hsü Mien-Chih.' Unpub. typescript, 1957.

FRANKE, H. (24). 'Siege and Defence of Towns in Mediaeval China.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 151.

FRANKE, H. (25). 'Die Belagerung von Hsiang-yang; eine Episode aus dem Krieg zwischen Sung und Chin, +1206 bis +1207.' Art. in *Society and History* (Wittfögel Festschrift), ed. G. L. Ulmen, 1978.

FRANKE, H. (26). Review of L. Olschki's *Marco Polo's Asia* (10). *ZDMG*, 1962, **112** (NF **37**), 228.

FRANKE, O. (1). *Geschichte d. chinesischen Reiches*. 5 vols. de Gruyter, Berlin, 1930–53. Crit. O. B. van der Sprenkel, *BLSOAS*, 1956, **18**, 312.

FRANKE, W. (3). *Preliminary Notes on Important Literary Sources for the History of the Ming Dynasty Chhéngtu, 1948*. (SSE Monographs Ser. A, no. 2.)

FRANKE, W. (4). *An Introduction to the Sources of Ming History*. Univ. Malaya Press, Kuala Lumpur and Singapore, 1968.

FRANKEL, SIGMUND (1). *Die Aramäische Fremdwörter in Arabische*. Brill, Leiden, 1886.

DELLA FRATTE E MONTALBANO, MARIO ANTONIO (1). *Pratica Minerale*. Bologna, 1678.

FRÉDÉRIC, LOUIS. *See* Louis-Frédéric.

FRÉZIER, A. FRANÇOIS (1). *Traité des Feux d'Artifice, pour le Spectacle*. Paris, 1706; repr. 1747.

FROISSART, JEAN (1). *Chronicles*, 1400, ed. J. A. Buchon. Paris, 1824. K. de Lettenhove, Brussels, 1867. Cf. Sarton (1), vol. 5, p. 1751.

FRONSPERGER, LEONHARD (1). *Grossem Kriegsbuch; dass ist Fünff Bücher, vonn Kriegs-Regiment und Ordnung, wie sich ein jeder Kriegssmann in seinem Ampt unnd Beuelch halten soll*. Frankfurt a/Main, 1555, 1558, 1564, 1596, 1598. The second edition has woodcuts by Jost Amman. The title varies greatly according to the edition, some include mention of Wagenburg tactics.

FRONSPERGER, LEONHARD (2). *Vonn Geschütz und Fewerwerck, wie dasselb zuwerffen und schiessen; Auch von gründtlicher Zubereytung allerley Gezeugs, unnd rechtem Gebrauch der Fewerwerck...Das ander Buch. Von erbawung, erhaltung, besatzung und profantierung der wehrlichen Beuestigungen...* Lechler, Frankfurt a/Main, 1557, 1564.

FUCHS, W. (7). 'Ein Gesandschaftsbericht ü. Fu-Lin in chinesischer Wiedergabe aus den Jahren +1314 bis +1320.' *ORE*, 1959, **6**, 123.

FUJIKAWA YU (1). *Geschichte der Medizin in Japan; Kurzgefasste Darstellung der Entwicklung der japanischen*

Medizin, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Einführung der europäischen Heilkunde in Japan. Imper. Jap, Ministry of Education, Tokyo, 1911.

FULLER, J. F. C. (1). *Dragon's Teeth; a Study of War and Peace.* Constable, London, 1932.

FULLMER, J. Z. (1). 'Technology, Chemistry and the Law in Early 19th-Century England.' *TCULT*, 1980. 21 (no. 1), 1.

FURTENBACH, J. (1). *Architectura Navalis. Das ist: Von dem Schiff Bebäw.* Ulm, 1629.

FURTENBACH, J. (2). *Halinitro Pyrbolia: Schreibung eine newen Büchsenmeisterey, nemlichen: Gründlicher Bericht wie die Salpeter, Schwefel, Kohlen unnd das Pulfer zu praepariren, zu probieren, auch langwirzig gut zu behalten: Das Fewerwerck zu Kurtzweil und Ernst zu laboriren... Alles aufz eygener Experientza.* Ulm, 1627.

FURTTENBACH, J. *See* Furtenbach, J.

LE GALLEC, Y. (1). 'Les Origines du Moteur à Combustion Interne.' *MC/TC*, 1951, 2, 28.

GALLOWAY, R. L. (1). *The Steam-Engine and its Inventors; a Historical Sketch.* Macmillan, London, 1881.

GARDNER, G. B. (1). *Keris (Kris) and other Malay Weapons.* Progressive Pub. Co., Singapore, 1936.

GARLAN, Y. (1). *Recherches de Poliorcétique Grecque.* Boccard, Limoges, 1974. (Bibl. des Écoles Françaises d'Athènes et de Rome, no. 223.)

GARNIER, JOSEPH (1). *L'Artillerie des Ducs de Bourgogne, d'après les Documents conservés aux Archives de la Côte-d'Or.* Paris, 1895.

GARNIER, JOSEPH (2). *L'Artillerie de la Commune de Dijon, d'après les Documents conservés dans les Archives.* Paris, 1863.

GARRISON, F. H. (3). *An Introduction to the History of Medicine.* Saunders, Philadelphia, 1913; 4th ed. 1929.

GASSER, ACHILLES (1). *Chronica der Weitberempten Keyserlichen Freyen... Statt Augspurg.* Frankfurt, 1595.

GAUBIL, A. (12). *Histoire de Gentchiscan [Chingiz Khan] et de toute la Dinastie des Mongous ses Successeurs, Conquérans de la Chine.* Briasson & Piget, Paris, 1739.

DE GAYA, LOUIS (1). *Traité des Armes.* Paris, 1678. Repr. and ed. C. Ffoulkes, Oxford, 1911. Eng. tr. by R. Harford: *A Treatise of Arms, of Engines, Artificial Fires, Ensignes, and of all Military Instruments.* Harford, London, 1680.

GEIL, W. E. (3). *The Great Wall of China.* Murray, London, 1909.

GENOESE ANNALS. *See* Pertz, G. H. (1).

GERLAND, E. & TRAUMÜLLER, F. (1). *Geschichte d. physikalischen Experimentierkunst.* Engelmann, Leipzig, 1899.

GIBB, HUGH (1). *The River Mekong.* Script for a BBC Television programme, 1965.

GIBBS-SMITH, C. H. (10). 'The Rockets' Red Glare.' *LI*, 1956, 55 (no. 1409), 320.

GIBSON, C. E. (2). *The Story of the Ship.* Schuman, New York, 1948; Abelard-Schuman, New York, 1958.

GIBSON-HILL, C. A. (1). 'Notes on the Old Cannon found in Malaya and known to be of Dutch Origin.' *JRAS/M*, 1953, 26, 145.

GILES, L. (11) (tr.). *Sun Tzu on the Art of War* ['*Sun Tzu Ping Fa*']; *the Oldest Military Treatise in the World.* Luzac, London, 1910 (with original Chinese text). Repr. without notes, Nanfang, Chungking, 1945; also repr. in *Roots of Strategy*, ed. Phillips, T. R. (q.v.).

GILLE, B. (14). 'Machines [in the Mediterranean Civilisations and the Middle Ages].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 2, p. 629, Oxford, 1956.

GILLE, B. & BURTY, P. (1). *Les Moteurs à Combustion Interne.* Paris, 1948.

GLUCKMAN, COL. ARCADI (1). *United States Rifles, Muskets and Carbines.* Ulbrich, Buffalo, N.Y., 1948.

GODDARD, R. H. (1). *Rockets.* American Rocket Society, New York, 1946 (reprints of Goddard's two classical papers originally published in 1919 and 1936; both in *SMC*: 'A Method of Reaching Extreme Altitudes', 71 (no. 2) and 'Liquid-Propellant Rocket Development').

GODDARD, R. H. (2). *Rocket Development; Liquid-Fuel Rocket Research, 1929–41.* Prentice-Hall, New York, 1948. (Extracts from Goddard's notebooks, 1929 to 1941.)

GODDARD SPACE FLIGHT CENTER. *See* Rosenthal, Alfred (1).

GODE, P. K. (1). 'The Mounted Bowman on Indian Battlefields from the Invasion of Alexander (–326) to the Battle of Panipat (+1761).' *DCRI*, 1947, 8 (no. 1), 1 (K. N. Dikshit Memorial Volume). Repr. in *Studies in Indian Cultural History* vol. 2 (Gode Studies, vol. 5), p. 57.

GODE, P. K. (6). 'The Manufacture and Use of Firearms in India between +1450 and 1850.' Art. in *Munshi Diamond Jubilee Indological Volume*, Pt. 1. *BV*, 1948, 9, 202.

GODE, P. K. (7). *The History of Fireworks in India between +1400 and 1900.* Rasavangudi, for Indian Institute of Culture, Bangalore, 1953 (Transaction, no. 17).

GOETZ, HERMANN (1). 'Das Aufkommen der Feuerwaffen in Indien.' *OAZ*, 1923, NF 2 (no. 2/3), 226.

GOHLKE, W. (1). *Geschichte d. gesamten Feuerwaffen bis 1850; die Entwicklung der Feuerwaffen von ihren ersten Auftreten bis zur Einführung der gezogenen Hinterlader, unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Heeresbewaffnung.* Göschen, Leipzig, 1911.

GOHLKE, W. (2). 'Das älteste Latierte Gewehr.' *ZWHK*, 1916, 7, 205.

GOHLKE, W. (3). 'Handbrandgeschosse aus Ton.' *ZWHK*, 1913, 6, 377.

GOLAS, P. (1). 'Chinese Mining: where was the Gunpowder?' Art. in *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China*, ed. Li Kuo-Hao, Chang Mêng-Wên, Tshao Thien-Chhin & Hu Tao-Ching, Shanghai, 1982, p. 453.

GOLONBEV, V. (2). 'Quelques Sculptures Chinoises.' *OAZ*, 1913, **2**, 326.

GOODALL, A. M. (1). 'Gunnery and Firearms.' *CME*, 1961, **8** (no. 8), 489.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON (15). 'Firearms among the Chinese; a supplementary note.' [Dated bombards preserved in China.] *ISIS*, 1948, **39**, 63.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON (23). 'A Cannon from the end of the Ming Period' [+1650]. *JRAS/HKB*, 1967, **7**, 152.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON (24). 'Note on a few Early Chinese Bombards.' *ISIS*, 1944, **35**, 211. Reply to Sarton (14), a query.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON (25). 'Early Cannon in China' [Report on Wang Jung (*1*)]. *ISIS*, 1964, **55**, 193.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON (26). 'Westerners and Central Asians in Yuan China.' *OPO*, 1957, 1–21.

GOODRICH, L. CARRINGTON & FÉNG CHIA-SHÊNG (1). 'The Early Development of Firearms in China.' *ISIS*, 1946, **36**, 114. With important addendum giving a missing page, *ISIS*, 1946, **36**, 250.

GORDON, D. H. (1). 'Swords, Rapiers and Horse-Riders.' *AQ*, 1953, **27**, 67.

GRAM, H. (1). 'Om Bysse-Krud [gunpowder], naar det er opfundet i Europa, hvorlaenge det har voeret i Brug i Danmark.' *SKSL*, 1745, pt. 1, 213. For Latin and German translations, *see* Partington (5), p. 131.

GRANT, EDWARD (2). *Much Ado about Nothing; Theories of Space and Vacuum from the Middle Ages to the Scientific Revolution*. Cambridge, 1981.

GRAY, EILEEN (1). *Charcoals for Gunpowder*. Inaug. Diss., Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 1982.

GRAY, EILEEN, MARSH, H. & MCLAREN, M. (1). 'A Short History of Gunpowder, and the Role of Charcoal in its Manufacture.' *JMATS*, 1982, **17**, 3385.

GREENER, W. W. (1). *The Gun and its Development*. New York, 1881. 9th ed. New York, 1910.

GRIFFITH, S. B. (1) (tr.). *Sun Tzu; the Art of War*. Oxford, 1963. With foreword by R. H. Liddell Hart.

DE GROOT, J. J. M. (2). *The Religious System of China*. Brill, Leiden, 1892.
Vol. 1, Funeral rites and ideas of resurrection.
Vols. 2, 3, Graves, tombs and *fêng-shui*.
Vol. 4, The soul, and nature-spirits.
Vol. 5, Demonology and sorcery.
Vol. 6, The animistic priesthood (*wu*).

GROSIER, J. B. G. A. ABBÉ (1). *De la Chine; ou, Description Générale de Cet Empire, redigée d'après les Mémoires de la Mission de Pé-kin—Ouvrage qui contient la Description Topographique des quinze Provinces de la Chine... les trois Règnes de son Histoire Naturelle...; et l'Exposé de toutes les Connoissances acquises et parvenues jusqu'ici en Europe sur le Gouvernement, la Religion, les Lois, les Moeurs, les Usages, les Sciences et les Arts des Chinois*. 3rd ed. 7 vols. Pillet, Paris 1818–20. 1st ed. 1785; 2nd ed. 1787. Eng. tr.: *General Description of China, containing the Topography of the Fifteen Provinces which compose this vast Empire, that of Tartary... the Natural History of its Animals, Vegetables and Minerals, together with the latest Accounts which have reached Europe, of the Government, Religion, Manners, Customs, Arts and Sciences of the Chinese—illustrated by a New and Correct Map of China, and other Copper-Plates*. 2 vols. Robinson, London, 1788. Partial Eng. tr. by Lana Castellano & Christina Campbell-Thomson: *The World of Ancient China*. Gifford, London, 1972 (well illustrated but contains many mistakes, and does not make clear which portions of Grosier's original text were drawn upon).

GROSLIER, G. (1). *Recherches sur les Cambodgiens*. Challamel, Paris, 1921.

GROUSSET, R. (1) *Histoire de l'Extrême-Orient*. 2 vols. Geuthner, Paris, 1929. (Also appeared in *BE/AMG*, nos. 39, 40.)

GRUBE, W. (1) (tr.). *Die Metamorphosen der Götter* (*Fêng Shen Yen I*), [Stories of the Promotions of the Martial Genii], chs. 1–46, with summary of chs. 47–100. 2 vols. Brill, Leiden, 1912.

GUERLAC, H. (1). 'The Poets' Nitre; Studies in the Chemistry of John Mayow, II.' *ISIS*, 1954, **45**, 243.

GUERLAC, H. (2). 'John Mayow and the Aerial Nitre; Studies in the Chemistry of John Mayow, I.' *Actes du VIIe Congrès International d'Histoire des Sciences*, Jerusalem. 1953, p. 332.

GUILMARTIN, J. F. (1). *Gunpowder and Galleys; Changing Technology and Mediterranean Warfare at Sea in the +16th Century*. Cambridge, 1974.

GUTTMANN, OSCAR (1). '*Monumenta Pulveris Pyrii*'; *Reproductions of Ancient Pictures concerning the History of Gunpowder, with Explanatory Notes*. Pr. pr., Artists Press, London, 1906. ('The text is useless': Partington (5), p. 129.)

GUTTMANN, OSCAR (2). 'The Oldest Document in the History of Gunpowder.' *JSCI*, 1904, **23**, 591. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (*8*).

GUTTMANN, OSCAR (3). *The Manufacture of Explosives*. 2 vols. Macmillan, New York, 1895.

HAGERMAN, CAPT. G. M. (1). 'Lord of the Turtle-Boats.' *USNIP*, 1967, **93**, 69.

HAHN, H., HINTZE, W. & TREUMANN, H. (1). 'Safety and Technological Aspects of Black Powder.' *PAE*, 1980, 5, 129.

DU HALDE, J. B. (1). *Description Géographique, Historique, Chronologique, Politique et Physique de l'Empire de la Chine et de la Tartare Chinoise.* 4 vols. Paris, 1735, 1739; The Hague, 1736. Eng. tr. R. Brookes, London, 1736, 1741. Germ. tr. Rostock, 1748.

HALE, WILLIAM (1). *A Treatise on the Comparative Merits of a Rifle Gun and a Rotary Rocket.* Mitchell, London, 1863.

HALEY, A. G. (1). *Rocketry.* Van Nostrand, New York, 1970. Rev. *LI*, 1970 (21 May), 687.

HALL, A. R. (1). *Ballistics in the Seventeenth Century; a Study in the Relations of Science and War, with reference principally to England.* Cambridge, 1951. Rev. T. S. Kuhn, *ISIS*, 1953, 44, 284.

HALL, A. R. (2). 'A Note on Military Pyrotechnics [in the Middle Ages].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 2, p. 374. Oxford, 1956.

HALL, A. R. (3). *The Military Inventions of Guido da Vigerano.* Proc. VIIIth International Congress of the History of Science, p. 966. Florence, 1956.

HALL, A. R. (5). 'Military Technology [from the Renaissance to the Industrial Revolution].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 3, p. 347. Oxford, 1957.

HALL, A. R. (6). 'Military Technology [in the Mediterranean Civilisations and the Middle Ages].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, vol. 2, p. 695. Oxford, 1956.

HALL, BERT, S. & WEST, DELMO C. (1) (ed.). *On Pre-Modern Technology and Science; Studies in Honour of Lynn White, Jr.*; being vol. 1 of *Humana Civilitas;* Sources and Studies relating to the Middle Ages and the Renaissance. Center for Mediaeval & Renaissance Studies, Univ. of California, Los Angeles, 1976.

HALL, F. CARGILL (1) (ed.). *Essays on the History of Rocketry and Astronautics.* Proc. 3rd to 6th. History Symposia of the International Academy of Astronautics, NASA Conference Pub. no. 2014. NASA, Washington, D.C., 1977.

HALLAM, HENRY (1). *A View of the State of Europe during The Middle Ages—History of Ecclesiastical Power—Constitutional History of England—The State of Society in Europe.* London 1875; repr. 1877. First pub. 3 vols., 1819 and at least eight other editions.

HALOUN, G. (5). 'Legalist Fragments, I; *Kuan Tzu* ch. 55, and related texts.' *AM*, 1951 (n.s.), 2, 85.

VON HAMMER-PURGSTALL, J. (2). 'Ü. d. Verfertigung und den Gebrauch von Bogen und Pfeil bei den Arabern und Türken.' *SWAW/PH*, 1851, 6, 239, 278.

HANA, KORINNA (1) (tr.). *Bericht über die Verteidigung der Stadt Tê-an während der Periode Khai-Hsi (+1205 bis +1208); der 'Khai-Hsi Tê-An Shou Chhêng Lu' von Wang Chih-Yuan—ein Beitrag zur privaten Historiographie des 13.-Jahrhunderts in China.* Steiner, Wiesbaden, 1970. (Münchener Ostasiatische Studien, no. 1.)

HANČAR, M. (1). 'Das Pferd in Mittelasien.' *KS/WBKL*, 1952.

HANSJAKOB, HEINRICH (1). *Der Schwarze Berthold, der Erfinder des Schiesspulvers und der Feuerwaffen.* Freiburg i/Breisgau, 1891. Summaries in von Romocki (1), vol. 1, pp. 106 ff. von Lippmann (22) and Hime (1), p. 124.

HANZELET, JEAN. *See* Appier, Jean (his original name).

HARADA, YOSHITO & KOMAI, KAZUCHIKA (1) = (1). *Chinese Antiquities.* Pt. 1, *Arms and Armour*; Pt. 2, *Vessels [Ships] and Vehicles.* Academy of Oriental Culture, Tokyo Institute, Tokyo, 1937.

HARADA, YOSHITO & KOMAI, KAZUCHIKA (2) = (2). *Shangtu, the Summer Capital of the Yuan Dynasty at Dolon Nor, Mongolia.* Toa-Koko Gakukwai, Tokyo, 1941. (Archaeologia Orientalis B, no. 2.)

HARDING, D. (1) (ed.). *Weapons; an International Encyclopaedia from −5000 to +2000.* Macmillan, London, 1980.

HARDY, SIR WILLIAM BATE (1). 'On the Mechanism of Gelation in Reversible Colloidal Systems.' *PRS*, 1899, 66, 95. Repr. in Hardy (3), p. 322.

HARDY, SIR WILLIAM BATE (2). 'On the Coagulation of Proteid by Electrolytes.' *JOP*, 1899, 24, 288. Repr. in Hardy (3), p. 294.

HARDY, SIR WILLIAM BATE (3). *Collected Scientific Papers of Sir W. B. Hardy.* Cambridge, 1936.

HARPER, DONALD J. (2). 'Chinese Divination and Portent Interpretation'. Paper given to the ACLS Conference, 1983.

HARRISON, H. S. (4). 'Fire-making, Fuel and Lighting [from Early Times to the Fall of the Ancient Empires].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, Oxford, 1954., vol. 1, p. 216.

HART, MRS ERNEST (1) (ALICE MARION). *Picturesque Burma, Past and Present.* Dent, London, 1897.

HART, B. H. LIDDELL (1). *The Decisive Wars of History; a Study in Strategy.* Bell, London, 1929. New ed. *The Strategy of Indirect Approach.* London, 1941.

HART, B. H. LIDDELL (2). *Great Captains Unveiled.* London, 1927.

HART, C. (1). 'Mediaeval Kites and Windsocks.' *JRAES*, 1969, 73, 1019.

HART, I. B. (2). *The Mechanical Investigations of Leonardo da Vinci.* Chapman & Hall, London; Open Court, Chicago, 1925. 2nd ed. Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley & Los Angeles, 1963.

HART, I. B. (4). *The World of Leonardo da Vinci, Man of Science, Engineer, and Dreamer of Flight* (with a note on Leonardo's Helicopter Model, by C. H. Gibbs-Smith). McDonald, London, 1961. Rev. K. T. Steinitz, *TCULT*, 1963, 4, 84.

HASSAN, AHMAD YUSUF (1). 'A Note on Gunpowder and Cannon in Arabic Culture.' *Proc. XVIth Internat. Congress Hist. of Science, Bucharest*, 1981, vol. 1, p. 51.

HASSENSTEIN, W. (1) (ed.). *Das Feuerwerkbuch von 1420; Sechshundert Jahre Deutsche Pulverwaffen und Büchsenmeisterei. Neudruck des Erstdruckes aus dem Jahre 1529 mit Übertragung ins hochdeutsche und Erläuterungen....* Verlag d. Deutschen Technik, München, 1941.

HASSENSTEIN, W. (2). 'Die Chinesen und die Erfindung des Pulvers.' *ZGSS*, 1944, 39 (no. 1), 1; (no. 2), 22.

HASSENSTEIN, W. (3). 'Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte der Rakete.' *ZGSS*, 1939, 34, 172.

HATTAWAY, M. (1) (ed.). *The Knight of the Burning Pestle* (Beaumont & Fletcher). Benn, London, 1969.

DE HAUTEFEUILLE, JEAN (1). *Pendule Perpétuelle, avec un nouveau Balancier, et la Manière d'élever l'eau par le Moyen de la Poudre à Canon...* Paris, 1678.

DE HAUTEFEUILLE, JEAN (2). *Réflexions sur quelques Machines à élever les Eaux, avec la Description d'une nouvelle Pompe.* Paris, 1682.

HAWKINS, W. M. (1). 'Japanese Swords' (chart).

HAYWARD, J. F. (1). *Die Kunst d. alten Büchsenmeister.* Germ. tr., by G. Espig, of *The Art of the Gun-Maker.* 2 vols. Vol. 1: *From +1500 to +1660.* Vol. 2: *From +1660 to 1830.* London, 1962–3; 2nd ed. London, 1965.

VAN HÉE, L. (17). *Ferdinand Verbiest, Mandarin Chinois.* Bruges, 1913.

HEIM, J. (1). [Archery among the Osmanli.] *DI*, 1925.

HEMMERLIN, FELIX (1). *Felicis Malleoli...De Nobilitate et Rusticate Dialogus.* Basel, 1490 (?). Later editions 1495 (?) and 1497.

HENTZE, C. (7). *'Ko' und 'Chhi' Waffen in China und Amerika; Studien z. frühchinesischen Kulturgeschichte.* 1943.

D'HERBELOT, BARTHÉLEMY (1). *Bibliothèque Orientale, ou Dictionnaire Universel, contenant généralement tout ce qui regarde la Connoissance des Peuples de l'Orient, leurs Histoires et Traditions véritables ou fabuleuses...leurs Sciences et leurs Arts, leur Théologie, Mythologie, Magie, Physique, Morale, Médecine, Mathématiques, Histoire Naturelle, Chronologie, Géographie, Observations Astronomiques, Grammaire et Rhétorique, les Vies et Actions remarquables de tous leurs Saints, Docteurs, Philosophes, etc...* With Supplements by C. de Visdelou and A. Galand. 4 vols. Dufour & Roux, Maestricht, 1776–80. Suppl. vol. p. 117 has article: 'De l'Invention des Canons en Chine'.

HEWISH, M. (1). 'China makes Ground in the Space Race.' *NS*, 1980, 86 (no. 1207), 378.

HEYMANN, R. E. (2). 'Prehistoric spear-throwers.' Paper to the XIth International Congress of the History of Science, Warsaw, 1965.

HILL, DONALD R. (1). 'Trebuchets.' *VIAT*, 1973, 4, 99.

HIME, H. W. L., COL. (1). *The Origin of Artillery.* Longmans Green, London, 1915. Pts. 1 and 3 are the second and revised edition of Hime (2), pt. 2 was taken from Hime (3). Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (3).

HIME, H. W. L., COL. (2). *Gunpowder and Ammunition; their Origin and Progress.* Longmans Green, London, 1904.

HIME, H. W. L., COL. (3). 'Our Earliest Cannon, +1314 to +1346.' *JRA*, 1904–5, 31, 489.

HIME, H. W. L., COL. (4). 'Roger Bacon and Gunpowder.' Art. in *Roger Bacon: Essays*, ed. A. G. Little (2), 1914, p. 321. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

HISAMATSU SEIICHI (1). *Biographical Dictionary of Japanese Literature.* Kodansha International, Tokyo and New York, 1976.

HO PING-YÜ (1) (tr.). *Astronomy in the 'Chin Shu' and the 'Sui Shu'.* (Inaug. Diss. Singapore, 1955.) Paris, 1966.

HO PING YÜ & NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (1). 'Ancient Chinese Observations of Solar Haloes and Parhelia.' *W*, 1959, 14, 124.

HO PING-YÜ & WANG LING (1). 'On the *Karyūkyō* [*Huo Lung Ching*], the "Fire-Dragon Manual".' *PFEH*, 1977, 16, 147.

HO YUNG-CHI (1). 'Marco Polo—was he ever in China?' *ACSS*, 1953, 45.

HOEFER, F. (1). *Histoire de la Chimie.* 2 vols., Paris, 1842–3; 2nd ed. 2 vols., Paris, 1866–9.

HOKES, E. S. (1). 'Chinese Rocket Aircraft of the +16th Century.' Unpub. MS deposited in the East Asian History of Science Library, Sept. 1980.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (1). 'The Sector and Chain; a Historical Enquiry.' *HOT*, 1979, 4, 149.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (2). 'The Vocabulary of Technology.' *HOT*, 1977, 2, 125.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (3). 'Leads and Lags in Late +17th-Century English Technology.' *HOT*, 1976, 1, 159.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (4). 'The Civil Uses of Gunpowder.' MS, June 1982. 'The Use of Gunpowder in Mining; a Document of +1627.' *HOT*, 1983, 8, 111.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (5). 'Antecedents and Anticipations of the Newcomen Engine.' *TNS*, 1980, 52, 103.

HOLMESLAND, A., STØRMER, L., TVETERÅS, E. & VOGT, H. (1). *Aschehoug's Konversasjionslexikon.* 5th ed. Aschehoug, Oslo, 1974.

HOMMEL, R. P. (2). 'Notes on Chinese Sword Furniture.' *CJ*, 1928, 8, 3.

HOOVER, H. C. & HOOVER, L. H. (1) (tr.). *Georgius Agricola 'De Re Metallica' translated from the 1st Latin edition of 1556, with biographical introduction, annotations and appendices upon the development of mining methods, metallurgical processes, geology, mineralogy and mining law from the earliest times to the 16th century.* 1st ed. *Mining Magazine*, London, 1912; 2nd ed. Dover, New York, 1950.

HOPKINS, E. W. (1). 'The Social and Military Position of the Ruling Class in India, as represented by the Sanskrit Epic.' *JAOS*, 1889, 13, 57–372 (with index). Military techniques, pp. 181–329.

HOPKINS, E. W. (2). 'On Firearms in Ancient India.' *JAOS*, 1889, 13, cxciv (the thesis of Oppert exploded). Cf. 'The Princes and Peoples of the Epic Poems.' *CHI*, ch. 11, p. 271. Cf. Hopkins, E. W. (1), pp. 296 ff.

HORN, J. (1). *Ü. die ältesten Hufschutz d. Pferdes; ein Beitrag z. Gesch. d. Hufbeschlages.* Dresden, 1912.

HORNELL, J. (25). 'South Indian Blow-guns, Boomerangs and Crossbows.' *JRAI*, 1924, 54, 326.

HORVÁTH, ARPÁD (2). *Az Ágyú Históridja; Képek a Tüzértechnika Történeteböl* (A History of Firearms and Artillery). Zrínyi Katonai Kiadó, Budapest, 1966 (in Magyar).

HORWITZ, H. T. (6). 'Beiträge z. aussereuropäischen u. vorgeschichtlichen Technik.' *BGTI*, 1916, 7, 169.

HORWITZ, H. T. (8) (with a note by F. M. FELDHAUS). 'Zur Geschichte d. Wetterschiessens.' *GTIG*, 1915, 2, 122.

HORWITZ, H. T. (13) [with the assistance of Hsiao Yü-Mei & Chu Chia-Hua]. 'Die Armbrust in Ostasien.' *ZHWK*, 1916, 7, 155.

HORWITZ, H. T. (14). 'Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte d. Armbrust.' *ZHWK*, 1919, 8, 311. With two supplementary notes under the same title, *ZHWK*, 1921, 9, 73 & 114.

HORWITZ, H. T. (15). 'Über die Konstruktion von Fallen und Selbstschüssen.' *BGTI*, 1924, 14, 85. Rev. K. Himmelsbach, *ZHWK*, 1927, 11, 291.

HORWITZ, H. T. (16). 'Ein chinesisches Armbrustschloss in amerikanischem Besitz.' *ZHWK*, 1927, 11, 286.

HORWITZ, H. T. & SCHRAMM, E. (1). 'Schieber an antiken Geschützen.' *ZHWK*, 1921, 9, 139.

HOSEMANN, ABRAHAM (1). *De Tonitru.* Magdeburg, 1618.

HOSSMANN, ABRAHAM. *See* Hosemann, Abraham.

HOU, K. C. (perhaps HOU KUANG-CHAO or HOU KUANG-CHHIUNG) (1). 'Profile Descriptions of Soils of Hsü-chang Hsien, Honan.' Ref. in KOVDA (1), p. 122 but no exact details, nor whether the paper is in Chinese or English. Thorp (1), p. 515, lists two papers with this title as MSS in 1936.

HOUGH, W. (3). 'Primitive American Armour.' *ARUSNM*, 1893, 627.

HOWORTH, SIR HENRY H. (1). *History of the Mongols; from the 9th to the 19th Century.* 3 vols. Longmans Green, London, 1876–1927. Repr. in 5 vols. Chhêng Wên, Thaipei, 1970.

HSIAO CHHI-CHHING (1). *The Military Establishment of the Yuan Dynasty.* Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1978.

HSÜ HUI-LIN (1). 'Gunpowder and Ancient Rockets.' *CREC*, 1980, 29 (no. 10), 58.

HUANG JEN-YÜ (5). *1587, a Year of No Importance; the Ming Dynasty in Decline.* Yale Univ. Press, New Haven and London, 1981. Chinese tr.: *Wan-Li Shih-wu Nien*, Chung-Hua, Peking, 1981.

HUANG JEN-YÜ (6). 'The Liaotung Campaign of +1619.' *ORE*, 1981, 28, 30.

HUC, R. E., ABBÉ (2). *The Chinese Empire; forming a Sequel to 'Recollections of a Journey through Tartary and Thibet'.* 2 vols. Longmans, London, 1855, 1859.

HUCKER, C. O. (5). 'Hu Tsung-Hsien's Campaign against Hsü Hai, +1556.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 273.

HUCKER, C. O. (6). 'Governmental Organisation of the Ming Dynasty.' *HJAS*, 1958, 21, 1–66.

HUCKER, C. O. (7). 'An Index of Terms and Titles in "Governmental Organisation of the Ming Dynasty".' *HJAS*, 1961, 23, 127.

HULBERT, H. B. (2). *History of Korea.* Seoul, 1905. (Revised edition ed. C. N. Weems, 2 vols. Hilary House, New York, 1962.)

HULBERT, H. B. (3). 'Korean Inventions.' *HMM*, 1899, 102.

HUMPHRIES, J. (1). *Rockets and Guided Missiles.* Benn, London, 1956.

HUNTER, JOSEPH (1). 'Proofs of the Early Use of Gunpowder in the English Army.' *AAA*, 1802, 32, 379.

HÜTTEROTT, G. (1). 'Das japanische Schwert.' *MDGNVO*, 1885, 4, 33.

HUURI, K. (1). 'Zur Geschichte des mittelalterlichen Geschützwesens aus orientalischen Quellen.' *SOF*, 1941, 9, no. 3.

HUYGENS, CHRISTIAAN (2). *Oeuvres Complètes.* 22 vols. Nijhoff, The Hague, 1897–1950.

IMBAULT-HUART, C. (4). 'L'Introduction des Torpilles en Chine.' *LN*, 1884, 12 (pt. 1), 114.

IMBERT, H. (1). *Les Négritos de la Chine.* Impr. d'Extr. Orient, Hanoi, 1923.

INALCIK, HALIL (1). 'The Socio-Political Effects of the Diffusion of Fire-arms in the Middle East.' Art. in Parry & Yapp (1), *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, Oxford, 1975, p. 195. Repr. in Inalcik (2), no. XIV.

INALCIK, HALIL (2). *The Ottoman Empire; Conquest, Organisation and Economy—Collected Studies.* Variorum, London, 1978.

D'INCARVILLE, P. (1). 'Manière de faire les Fleurs dans les Feux d'Artifice Chinois.' *MAS/MPDS*, 1763, **4**, 66. Anon. Eng. abstr. with plate, *UM*, 1764, **34**, 21.

ITAKURA KIYONOBU (1). 'The First Ballistic Laws developed by a Japanese Mathematician, and their Origin.' *JSHS*, 1963, **2**, 136.

ITAKURA KIYONOBU & ITAKURA REIKO (1). 'Studies of Trajectory [Ballistics] in Japan before the Days of the Dutch Learning.' *JSHS*, 1962, **1**, 83.

IWAO SEIICHI (1). *Biographical Dictionary of Japanese History*. Tr. B. Watson. Kodansha International, Tokyo, 1978.

JACKSON, W. (1). 'Some Inquiries concerning the Salt-Springs and the Way of Salt-Making at Nantwich in Cheshire; Answer'd by the Learned and Observing William Jackson, Dr of Physick.' *PTRS*, 1669, **4** (no. 53), 1060; (no. 54), 1077.

JACOB, G. (2). *Der Einflüss d. Morgenlandes auf das Abendland, Vornehmlich während des Mittelalters*. Hanover, 1924.

JACOB, G. (3). *Östliche Kulturelemente im Abendland*. Berlin, 1902.

JACOB, G. (4). 'Ostasiens Kultureinfluss auf das Abendland.' *SA*, 1931, **6**, 146.

JAGNAUX, R. (1). *Histoire de la Chimie*. 2 vols. Paris, 1891.

JÄHNS, M. (1). *Geschichte d. Kriegswissenschaften, vornehmlich in Deutschland*. Oldenbourg, München & Leipzig 1889.

Vol. 1. *Altertum, Mittelalter, 15. & 16. Jahrhundert*;
2. *17. & 18. Jahrh. bis zum Auftreten Friedrichs d. Grossen (+1740)*;
3. *Das 18. Jahrh. seit dem Auftr. Fr. d. Gross. (1740/1800)*.

JÄHNS, M. (2). *Handbuch eine Geschichte d. Kriegswesens von der Urzeit bis zu der Renaissance; technische Teil, Bewaffnung, Kampfweise, Befestigung, Belagerung*. 2 vols., Leipzig, 1880. Repr. Berlin, 1897.

JÄHNS, M. (3). *Entwicklungsgeschichte d. alten Trutzwaffen mit einem Anhang u. d. Feuerwaffen*. Berlin, 1899.

JAMES, MONTAGUE R. (2) (ed.). *The Treatise of Walter de Milamete, 'De Nobilitatibus, Sapientis et Prudentiis Regum', reproduced in facsimile from the unique MS. [1326–7] preserved at Christ Church, Oxford; together with a Selection of Pages from the Companion MS. of the Treatise 'De Secretum Secretorum Aristotelis', preserved in the Library of the Earl of Leicester at Holkham Hall [Norfolk], with an Introduction...* Roxburghe Club, London, 1913.

JAMESON, C. D. (1). 'Coal and Iron in Eastern China.' *EMJ*, 1898, **66**, 367.

JANSE, O. R. T. (1). 'Notes sur quelques Epées Anciennes trouvées en Chine.' *BMFEA*, 1930, **2**, 67.

JANSE, O. R. T. (4). 'Quelques Antiquités Chinoises d'un caractère Hallstattien.' *BMFEA*, 1930, **2**, 177.

JENKINS, RHYS (3). *Links in the History of Engineering and Technology from Tudor Times: Collected Papers of R.J.— comprising articles in the professional and technical press mainly prior to 1920, and a Catalogue of other published work*. (Newcomen Society), Cambridge, 1936.

JENKINS, RHYS (4). 'A Contribution to the History of the Steam Engine: (1) The Notebook of Roger North, (2) The Work of Sir Samuel Morland.' Repr. in (3), p. 40.

JENNER, W. J. F. (1) (tr.). *Memories of Loyang; Yang Hsüan-Chih and the Lost Capital (+493 to +534)*. [Translation of the *Loyang Chhieh-Lan Chi* with annotations.] Oxford, 1981.

JETT, S. C. (2). 'The Development and Distribution of the Blow-Gun.' *AAAG*, 1970, **60**, 662.

JOCELYN, R. LORD (1). *Six Months with the Chinese Expedition; Leaves from a Soldier's Notebook*. Murray, London, 1841.

JOHANNSEN, O. (3). 'Die Erfindung der Eisengusstechnik.' *SE*, 1919, **39**, 1457 & 1625.

JOHANNSEN, O. (4). 'Die Quellen zur Geschichte des Eisengusses im Mittelalter und in d. neueren Zeit bis zum Jahre 1530.' *AGNT*, 1911, **3**, 365; 1915, **5**, 127; 1918, **8**, 66.

JOHNSTON, R. F. (3). 'The Cult of Military Heroes in China.' *NCR*, 1921, **3**, 41 & 79.

JOINVILLE, JEAN (1). *Historie de Saint Loys*, 1309. Orig. old French version in Petitot's *Collection Complète des Mémoires relatifs à l'Histoire de France*. Paris, 1824, vol. 2. Mod. French version W. de Wailly (1). Eng. tr. by J. Evans (1). Cf. Sarton (1), vol. 4, p. 928.

JONES, ROBERT (1). *A New Treatise on Artificial Fire-Works*. London, 1765; 2nd ed. London, 1766.

JULIEN, STANISLAS (4). 'Notes sur l'Emploi Militaire des Cerfs-Volants, et sur les Bateaux et Vaisseaux en Fer et en Cuivre, tirées des Livres Chinois.' *CRAS*, 1847, **24**, 1070.

JULIEN, STANISLAS (8). Translations from *TCKM* relative to + 13th-century sieges in China (in Reinaud & Favé, 2). *JA*, 1849 (4e sér.), **14**, 284 ff.

KAHANE & TIETZE (1). *The Lingua Franca in the Levant*. Urbana, Ill., 1958.

KALMAR, J. (1). 'Die Raketentechnik im 17. Jahrhundert, auf Grund einschlägiger Materials im Grazer Zeughaus.' *ZHWK*, 1933, **13** (NF **4**), 102.

KAO LEI-SSU (1) (Aloysius Ko, S.J.). 'Remarques sur un Écrit de M. P[auw] intitulé "Recherches sur les Égyptiens et les Chinois" (1775).' *MCHSAMUC*, 1777, **2**, 365–574 (in some editions, 2nd pagination, 1–174).

KARLGREN, B. (13). 'Weapons and Tools of the Yin [Shang] Dynasty.' *BMFEA*, 1945, 17, 101.

KATAFIASZ, T. (1). 'Recherches sur les Acquisitions Polonais dans le Domaine de la Technique des Fusées de Guerre au 19e Siècle' (in Polish, with French summary). *KHNT*, 1982, 27 (no. 2), 379.

KEDESDY, E. (1). *Die Sprengstoffe; Darstellung und Untersuchung der Sprengstoffe und Schiesspulver.* Jänecke, Hannover, 1909.

KEEGAN, J. (1). *The Face of Battle.* Cape, London, 1976; Penguin, London, 1978.

KELLY, R. TARBOT (1). *Burma, the Land and the People.* Millet, Boston and Tokyo, 1910.

KEMP, PETER (1) (ed.). *The Oxford Companion to Ships and the Sea.* Oxford, 1976.

KENNEDY, SIR WM., ADMIRAL (1). *Hurrah for the Life of a Sailor; Fifty years in the Royal Navy.* Nash, London, 1910.

KIERMAN, F. A. (1) (tr.). *Ssuma Chhien's Historiographical Attitude as reflected in Four Late Warring States Biographies [in Shih Chi].* Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden, 1962. (Studies on Asia, Far Eastern and Russian Institute, Univ. of Washington, Seattle, no. 1.)

KIERMAN, F. A. (2). 'Phases and Modes of Combat in Early China' (Chou and Warring States periods). Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 27.

KIERMAN, F. A. & FAIRBANK, J. K. (1) (ed.). *Chinese Ways in Warfare.* Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1974.

KIKUOKA TADASHI (1) (tr.). *Teppō-ki*; the "Chronicle of the Arquebus".' *EAST*, 1981, 47.

KIMBROUGH, R. E. (1). 'Japanese Firearms.' *GUNC*, 1950, no. 33, 445.

KIRCHER, ATHANASIUS (1). *China Monumentis qua Sacris qua Profanis Illustrata.* Amsterdam, 1667. (French tr. Amsterdam, 1670.)

KIRCHER, ATHANASIUS (5). *Mundus Subterraneus, in XII Libros Digestus.* Jansson & Weyerstraten, Amsterdam, 1665. Cf. Thorndike (1), vol. 7, pp. 567 ff.

KLAEBER, F. (1). *Beowulf, and the Fight at Finnsburg, edited, with Introduction, Bibliography, Notes, Glossary and Appendices.* 3rd ed., with 1st and 2nd supplements. Heath, Boston, 1950.

KLAUSNER, W. J. (1). 'Popular Buddhism in Northeast Thailand.' Art. in *Cross-Cultural Understanding...*, ed. Northrop & Livingston (1), p. 69.

KLEMM, G. (1). *Werkzeuge und Waffen; ihre Entstefung und Ausbildung.* Sondershausen, 1858. Repr. Zentral-antiquariat, Leipzig, 1978.

KLOPSTEG, P. E. (1). *Turkish Archery and the Composite Bow.* Pr. pr. Evanston, Ill., 1947.

KÖCHLY, H. & RÜSTOW, W. (1) (tr.). *Griechische Kriegsschriftsteller.* 3 vols. Engelmann, Leipzig, 1853–5.

KÖHLER, G. (1). *Die Entwickelung des Kriegswesens und der Kriegführung in der Ritterzeit von Mitte des 11. Jahrh. bis zu den Huesitenkriegen.* Koebner, Berlin, 1886–90. 5 vols. (Vol. 3 pt. 1 contains his argument in favour of the view that the torsion catapult of antiquity remained in use till the end of the middle ages.) Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (3).

KÖHLER, G. (2). *Geschichte der Explosivstoffe.* 2 vols. 1895.

KOMROFF, M. (1) (ed.). *Contemporaries of Marco Polo; consisting of the 'Travel Records in the Eastern Parts of the World', of William of Rubruck (+1253 to +1255); the 'Journey' of John of Pian de Carpini (+1245 to +1247); the 'Journal' of Friar Odoric [of Pordenone] (+1318 to +1330); and the 'Oriental Travels' of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela (+1160 to +1173).* Cape, London, 1928. Boni & Liveright, New York, 1928.

KOSAMBI, D. D. (2). *An Introduction to the Study of Indian History.* Popular, Bombay, 1956.

KRÄTZ, O. (1). 'Elektrische Pistolen; eine Kuriosität der Gas-chemie des ausgehenden 18. Jahrhunderts.' *HBAS*, 1973, 23, 3. (Veröfftl d. Forschungsinst. d. Deutschen Museums, A, 130.)

KRAUS, P. (2). 'Jābir ibn Ḥayyān; Contributions à l'Histoire des Idées Scientifiques dans l'Islam; I, Le Corpus des Écrits Jābiriens.' *MIE*, 1943, 44, 1–214. Rev. M. Meyerhof, *ISIS*, 1944, 35, 213.

KRAUS, P. (3). 'Jābir ibn Ḥayyān; Contributions à l'Histoire des Idées Scientifiques dans l'Islam; II, Jābir et la Science Grecque.' *MIE*, 1942, 45, 1–406. Rev. M. Meyerhof, *ISIS*, 1944, 35, 213.

KRAUSE, F. (1). 'Fluss- und Seegefechte nach chinesischen Quellen aus der Zeit der Chou- und Han-Dynastie und der Drei Reiche.' *MSOS*, 1915, 18, 61.

KROEBER, A. L. (1). *Anthropology.* Harcourt Brace, New York, 1948.

KROEBER, A. L. (7). 'Arrow Release Distributions.' *UC/PAAA*, 1927, 23, 283.

KROMAYER, J. & VEITH, G. (1) (ed.). 'Heerwesen und Kriegsführung d. Griechen u. Römer.' (*Handbuch d. Altertumswissenschaft*, ed. I. v. Müller & W. Otto, Section IV, Pt. 3, vol. 2.). Beck, München, 1928.

KUHN, P. A. (1). 'The Taiping Rebellion.' Art. in *Cambridge History of China*, ed. D. Twitchett & J. K. Fairbank, Cambridge, 1978, vol. 10, p. 264.

KUO TING-YI & LIU KUANG-CHING (1). 'Self-strengthening; the Pursuit of Western Technology.' Art. in *Cambridge History of China*, ed. D. Twitchett & J. K. Fairbank, Cambridge, 1978, vol. 10, p. 491.

KYESER, KONRAD (1). *Bellifortis* (the earliest of the +15th-century illustrated handbooks of military engineering, begun +1396, completed +1410). MS Göttingen Cod. Phil. 63 and others. See Sarton (1) vol. 3, p. 1550; Berthelot (5), (6).

LACABANE, L. (1). 'De la Poudre à Canon et de son Introduction en France au 14ème Siècle.' *BEC*, 1844, 1 (2e sér.), 28. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

LACOSTE, E. (1) (tr.). 'La Poliorcétique d'Apollodore de Damas.' *REG*, 1890, **3**, 268.
LAFFIN, J. (1). *The Face of War*. London, 1963.
LAKING, SIR GUY, F. (1). *A Record of European Arms and Armour through Seven Centuries*. 3 vols. Bell, London, 1920.
LALANNE, L. (1). 'Essai sur le Feu Grégeois et sur l'Introduction de la Poudre à Canon en Europe, et principalement en France.' *MAI/NEM* 1843 (2e sér.), 1, 294–363. Sep. pub., 1841. 2nd ed. sep. pub. Paris, 1845, under title: *Recherches sur....*
LALANNE, L. (2). 'Controverse à propos du Feu Grégeois.' *BEC*, 1846, **3** (2e sér.), 338. Reply by J. T. Reinaud, pp. 427, 534 and rejoinder by Lalanne, p. 440.
[LALANNE, L.] (3). 'Greek Fire and Gunpowder' (a review of Reinaud & Favé's book). *BLM*, 1846, **59**, 749.
LAMB, HAROLD (1). *Tamerlane the Earth-Shaker*. Butterworth, London, 1929.
DE LANA, FRANCESCO TERTÙ (1). *Magisterium Naturae et Artis; Opus Physico-Mathematicum...* 3 vols. Ricciardus, Brescia, 1684–92.
LANCASTER, O. E. (1) (ed.). *Jet Propulsion Engines*. Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N.J., 1959. (High Speed Aerodynamics and Jet Propulsion, vol. 12.)
LANKTON, L. D. (1). 'The Machine under the Garden; Rock Drills arrive at the Lake Superior Copper Mines (1868 to 1883).' *TCULT*, 1983, **24**, 1.
LARCHEY, LOREDAN (1). *Les Origines de l'Artillerie française (+1324 à +1394)*. Paris, 1882.
LARSEN, E. (1). *A History of Invention*. Phoenix, London, 1961.
LASSEN, TAGE (1). 'From Hand-Cannon to Flint-Lock.' *GUND*, 1956, **10**, 33.
LATTIMORE, O. (10). *Nationalism and Revolution in Mongolia; with a Translation from the Mongol of S. Nachukdorji's Life of Sukebatur, by O. L. & U. Onon*. Brill, Leiden, 1955.
LAUFER, B. (47). Review of Diels (1), *Antike Technik*, 1914. *AAN*, 1917, **19**, 71.
LAVIN, J. (1). 'An Examination of some Early Documents regarding the Use of Gunpowder in Spain.' *JAAS*, 1964, **4**, 163.
LEBEAU, CHARLES (1). *Histoire du Bas-Empire*. 27 vols. Paris, 1757–1811. 2nd ed. (St. Martin & Brosset): 21 vols. Paris, 1824–36.
LECLERC, L. (1) (tr.). 'Le Traité des Simples par Ibn al-Beithar.' *MAI/NEM*, 1877, **23**, **25**; 1883, **26**.
LENZ, E. (1). 'Handgranaten oder Quecksilbergefässe?' *ZHWK*, 1913, **6**, 367.
LEPRINCE-RINGUET, LOUIS *et al.* (1). *Les Inventeurs Célèbres; Sciences Physiques et Applications*. Mazenod, Paris, 1950.
DE LETTENHOVE, KERVYN (1) (ed.). *Oeuvres de Froissart*. Brussels, 1867, 1868, 1873.
[LEURECHON, J., HENRIOT, F. & MYDORGE, C.] (1). *Récréations Mathématiques: composées de plusieurs Problèmes plaisans et facétieux d'Arithmétique, Géometrie, Astrologie, Optique, Perspective, Mechanique, Chymie et d'autres rares et curieux Secrets; plusieurs desquels n'ont jamais esté Imprimez*. Rouen, 1630. The third part is entitled 'Recueil de plusieurs plaisantes et récréatives inventions de Feux d'Artifice; Plus, la manière de faire toutes sortes de Fuzées...' Eng. tr. *Mathematicall Recreations; or, a Collection of sundrie Problemes, extracted out of the Ancient and Moderne Philosophers, as secrets in nature, and experiments in Arithmetique, Geometrie, Cosmographie, Horologographie, Astronomie, Navigation, Musicke, Opticks, Architecture, Staticke, Mechanicks, Chimestrie, Waterworkes, Fireworks, etc.* Cotes & Hawkins, London, 1633. The last section (p. 265) is entitled: 'Artificiall Fire-Workes: or the manner of making Rockets and Balls of Fire, as well for the Water, as for the Ayre: with the Composition of Stars, Golden-raine, Serpents, Lances, Wheeles of fire, and such like, pleasant and Recreative'. Repr. Leake, London, 1653, (with William Oughtred's 'Double Horizontall Dyall'.) 1674 (-do-), etc.
LEY, W. (1). *Rockets*. Viking, New York, 1944. Enlarged ed. *Rockets, Missiles, and Men in Space*. Viking, New York, 1968.
LEY, W. (2). *Rockets and Space Travel; the Future of Flight beyond the Stratosphere*. Chapman & Hall, London, 1948. Rev. R. A. Rankin, *N*, 1949, **163**, 820.
LEY, W. (3). 'Rockets.' *SAM*, 1949, **181**, 31.
LEY, W. (4). *Die Fahrt ins Weltall*. Hachmeister & Thal, Leipzig, 1926. Enlarged ed. *Die Möglichkeit der Weltraumfahrt*. Hachmeister & Thal, Leipzig, 1928.
LEY, W. & VON BRAUN, W. (1). *The Exploration of Mars*. Viking, New York, 1966.
LI CHHIAO-PHING (2) (ed. & tr., with 14 collaborators). *'Thien Kung Khai Wu' (The Exploitation of the Works of Nature); Chinese Agriculture and Technology in the Seventeenth Century, by Sung Ting-Hsing*. China Academy, Thaipei, 1980. (Chinese Culture Series II, no. 3.)
LI HSIEH (LI I-CHIH) (1). 'Die Geschichte des Wasserbaues in China.' *BGTI*, 1932, **21**, 59.
LI KUO-HAO, CHANG MÊNG-WÊN, TSHAO THIEN-CHHIN & HU TAO-CHING (1) (ed.). *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China; a Special Number of the 'Collections of Essays on Chinese Literature and History'* (compiled in honour of the eightieth birthday of Joseph Needham). Chinese Classics Publishing House, Shanghai, 1982.
LICHINE, ALEXIS, FIFIELD, W. *et al.* (1). *Encyclopaedia of Wines and Spirits*. Cassell, London, 1974.

LIDDELL-HART, B. H. *See* Hart, B. H. Liddell.

LINDSAY, M. (1). *One Hundred Great Guns; an Illustrated History of Firearms.* London, 1968.

LINDSAY, M. (2). 'Pistols Shed Light on Famed Duel.' *SMITH*, 1976, 7 (no. 8), 94. (The duel of 1804 between Aaron Burr, Vice-President of the United States under Jefferson, who survived, and Alexander Hamilton, former Secretary of the Treasury, who was killed. The pistols had hair-triggers, and Hamilton probably fired too soon.)

VON LIPPMANN, E. O. (9). *Beiträge z. Geschichte d. Naturwissenschaften u. d. Technik.* 2 vols. Vol. 1, Springer, Berlin, 1925. Vol. 2, Verlag Chemie, Weinheim, 1953 (posthumous, ed. R. von Lippmann). Both vols. photographically reproduced, Sändig, Niederwalluf, 1971.

VON LIPPMANN, E. O. (21). 'Zur Geschichte des Schiesspulvers und des Salpeters.' *CHZ*, 1928, 52, 2. Abstr. *CA*, 1928, 22, 894. Repr. v. Lippmann (9), p. 83.

VON LIPPMANN, E. O. (22). 'Zur Geschichte des Schiesspulvers und der älteren Feuerwaffen.' Lecture at Halle, 1898. Repr. in von Lippmann (3), vol. 1, p. 125.

LITTLE, A. G. (2) (ed.). *Roger Bacon. Essays.* Oxford, 1914.

LIU KUANG-CHING (1). 'The Chhing Restoration.' Art. in *Cambridge History of China*, ed. D. Twitchett & J. K. Fairbank, Cambridge, 1978, vol. 10, p. 409.

LO JUNG-PANG (10). *The Art of War in the Chhin and Han Periods; −221 to +220* (in the press).

LO JUNG-PANG (12). 'Missile Weapons in pre-modern China.' Contribution to the Meeting of the Association for Asian Studies, Chicago, 1967.

LOEHR, M. (1). 'The Earliest Chinese Swords and the [Scythian] *Akinakes*.' *ORA*, 1948, 1, 132.

LOEHR, M. (2). *Chinese Bronze Age Weapons; the Werner Jannings Collection in the Chinese National Palace Museum, Peking.* Univ. Michigan Press, Ann Arbor, 1956.

LOEWE, M. (11). 'The Campaigns of Han Wu Ti.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 67.

LONGMAN, C. J. (1). 'The Bows of the Ancient Assyrians and Egyptians.' *JRAI*, 1894, 24, 49.

LONGMAN, C. J., WALROND, H. *et al.* (1). *Archery.* Longmans Green, London, 1894.

LOPEZ, R. S. (3). 'Venezia e le grandi Linee dell'espanzione commerciale nel Secolo 13.' Art. in *La Civiltà Veneziana del Secolo di Marco Polo.* Sansoni, Florence, 1955, pp. 37–82.

LOPEZ, R. S. (5). 'Nuove Luci sugli Italiani in Estremo Oriente prima di Colombo.' *STC*, 1951, 3, 350.

LORRAIN, HANZELET. *See* Appier, Jean (Lorraine was his place of origin).

LOT, F. (1). *L'Art Militaire et les Armées au Moyen-Age en Europe et dans le Proche Orient.* 2 vols. Payot, Paris, 1946.

LOTZ, A. (1). *Das Feuerwerk, seine Geschichte und Bibliographie in sieben Jahrhunderten.* Leipzig, 1940.

LOUIS, H. (1). 'A Chinese System of Gold Milling [in Malaysia].' *EMJ*, 1891, 54, 640.

LOUIS, H. (2). 'A Chinese System of Gold Mining [in Malaysia].' *EMJ*, 1892, 55 629.

LOUIS-FRÉDÉRIC (ps.) (1) (FRÉDÉRIC, LOUIS). *Daily Life in Japan at the Time of the Samurai, +1185 to +1603.* Tr. from the French ed. of 1968 by E. M. Lowe, Allen & Unwin, London, 1972. (Daily life series, no. 17.)

LU MAU-DÊ. *See* Lu Mou-Tê.

LU MOU-TÊ (1). 'Untersuchung ü. d. Erfindung der Geschütze u. d. Schiesspulvers in China.' *SA*, 1938, 13, 25 and 99b. A translation of Lu Mou-Tê (*1*) by Liao Pao-Shêng.

LUCIAN OF SAMOSATA (1). *True History.* Bullen, London, 1902. *Certaine Select Dialogues of Lucian, Together with his True Historie, translated from the Greeke into English by Mr Francis Hickes, Whereunto is added the Life of Lucian gathered out of his own Writings, with briefe Notes and Illustrations upon each Dialogue and Booke.* Oxford, 1634.

LULHAM, R. (1). *An Introduction to Zoology.* Macmillan, London, 1913.

MCCRINDLE, J. W. (2). *Ancient India as described by Ktesias the Knidian; being a translation of the abridgement of his Indica by Photios, and of the fragments of that work preserved in other Writers, with notes, etc.* Thacker & Spink, Calcutta, 1882.

MCCULLOCH, J. (1). 'Conjectures respecting the Greek Fire of the Middle Ages.' *QJSLA*, 1823, 14, 29.

MCCURDY, E. (1). *The Notebooks of Leonardo da Vinci, Arranged, Rendered into English, and Introduced by ...* 2 vols. Cape, London, 1938.

MCGOWAN, D. J. (7). 'Blood-Sweating Horses in Ancient Turkestan.' *JPOS*, 1887, 1, 196.

MCGRATH, J. (1). 'Explosives [in the Late Nineteenth Century].' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, Oxford, 1958, vol. 4, p. 284.

MACHELL-COX, E. (1) (tr.). *The Principles of War, by Sun Tzu; a classic of the Military Art [Sun Tzu Ping Fa].* RAF Welfare Publications, Colombo, Ceylon, 1943.

MCLAGAN, GEN. R. (1). 'Early Asiatic Fire Weapons.' *JRAS/B*, 1876, 45, 30.

DE MAILLA, J. A. M. DE MOYRIAC (1) (tr.). *Histoire Générale de la Chine, ou Annales de cet Empire, traduites du 'Tong Kien Kang Mou' [Thung Chien Kang Mu].* 13 vols. Pierres & Clousier, Paris, 1777. (This translation was made from the edition of +1708; Hummel (2), p. 689.)

MAINWARING, SIR HENRY (1). *The Seaman's Dictionary.* London, 1644.

MAITRA, K. M. (1) (tr.). *A Persian Embassy to China; being an Extract from the 'Zubdatu't Tawārikh' of Hafīz-i Abrū*... Lahore. 1934 (with introduction by L. C. Goodrich). Paragon Reprint, New York, 1970.

MALCOM, HOWARD (1). *Travels in South-eastern Asia.* 2 vols. Gould, Kendall & Lincoln, Boston, 1839; London, 1839.

MALINA, F. J. (1). 'A Short History of the Development of Rockets and Jet Propulsion Engines down to 1945.' Art. in *High Speed Aerodynamics and Jet Propulsion*, ed. O. E. Lancaster (1). Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton N.J., 1953–9, vol. 12.

MALINA, F. J. (2). 'Memoir on the GALCIT Rocket Research Project, 1936–38.' *Proceedings of the 1st Internat. Symp. on History of Astronautics*, 1967 (Belgrade). Abridged version *ESCI*, 1968, **31**, 9. Russian tr. 1970.

MALINA, F. J. (3). 'Memoir on the U.S. Army Air Corps Jet Propulsion Research Project, GALCIT No. 1, 1939–46.' *Proceedings of the 3rd Internat. Symp. on History of Astronautics*, 1969.

MALINA, F. J. (4). 'America's First Long-Range Missile and Space Exploration Programme; the ORDCIT project of the Jet Propulsion Laboratory, 1943–46.' *SPFL*, 1973, **15**, 442.

MALINA, F. J. (5). 'The Jet Propulsion Laboratory; its Origins and First Decade of Work.' Art. in Emme (1). Also in *SPFL*, 1964, **6**, 160, 193.

MALTHUS, F. *See* de Malthe, François.

MANN, SIR JAMES G. (1). *European Arms and Armour* (Catalogue of the Wallace Collection). 3 vols. Clowes, London, 1945. (Contains a useful glossary of terms.)

MANSI, J. D. *et al.* (1). *Sacrorum Conciliorum Nova et Amplissima Collectio.* Florence, 1759–98.

MARSDEN, E. W. (1). *Greek and Roman Artillery; Historical Development.* Oxford, 1969.

MARSDEN, E. W. (2). *Greek and Roman Artillery; Technical Treatises.* Oxford, 1971.

MARSHALL, ARTHUR (1). *Explosives.* 2 vols. Churchill, London, 1917.
Vol. 1. *History and Manufacture.*
Vol. 2. *Properties and Tests.*

MARSHALL, A. M. & HURST, C. H. (1). *A Junior Course of Practical Zoology.* Smith Elder, London, 1916.

MARTIN, H. D. (1). 'The Mongol Wars with [the] Hsi-Hsia (+1205/+1227).' *JRAS*, 1942, 195.

MARTIN, H. D. (2). 'The Mongol Army.' *JRAS*, 1943, 46.

MARTIN, H. D. (3). 'Chingiz Khan's First Invasion of the Chin Empire (+1211/+1213).' *JRAS*, 1943, 182.

MARTIN, H. D. (4). *The Rise of Chinghiz Khan and his Conquest of North China.* Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, Baltimore, 1950. Repr. Octagon, New York, 1971.

MASON, B. J. (SIR JOHN) (1). 'The Growth of Snow Crystals.' *SAM*, 1961, **204** (no. 1), 120.

MASON, B. J. (SIR JOHN) (2). 'A Review of Three Long-Term Cloud-Seeding Experiments.' *MEM*, 1980, **109**, 335.

MASON, B. J. (SIR JOHN) & MAYBANK, J. (1). 'Ice-Nucleating Properties of Some Natural Mineral Dusts.' *QJRMS*, 1958, **84**, 235.

MATHENHEIMER, A. (1). *Die Rückladungs-Gewehr.* Darmstadt and Leipzig, 1876.

MATSCHOSS, C. (2) *Geschichte der Dampfmaschine, ihre Kulturelle Bedeutung, technische Entwicklung und ihre grossen Männer.* Springer, Berlin, 1901. Photolitho reproduction, Gesstenberg, Hildesheim, 1978.

MAVRODIN, V. (1). 'O Poyarlenii Ognestrel'nogo Oruzhiya na Rusi' (on the Origin of Firearms in Russia). *VH*, 1946 (no. 8/9), 98. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (*8*).

MAYERS, W. F. (6). 'On the Introduction and Use of Gunpowder and Firearms among the Chinese, with Notes on some Ancient Engines of Warfare, and Illustrations.' *JRAS/NCB*, 1870 (NS), **6**, 73. Comment by E. H. Parker, *CR*, 1887, **15**, 183.

MAYOW, JOHN (1). *Tractatus Quinque Medico-Physici*.... Sheldonian, Oxford, 1674. Repr. *Opera Omnia Medico-Physica Tractatibus Quinque comprehensa*... Leers, The Hague, 1681.

MÉAUTIS, G. (1). 'Les Romains connaissent-ils le Fer à Cheval?' *REA*, 1934, **36**, 88.

MELLOR, J. W. (1). *Modern Inorganic Chemistry.* Longmans Green, London, 1916; often reprinted.

MELLOR, J. W. (2). *Comprehensive Treatise on Inorganic and Theoretical Chemistry.* 15 vols. Longmans Green, London, 1923.

DE MENDOZA, JUAN GONZALES (1). *Historia de las Cosas mas notables, Ritos y Costumbres del Gran Reyno de la China, sabidas assi por los libros de los mesmos Chinas, como por relacion de religiosos y oltras personas que an estado en el dicho Reyno.* Rome, 1585 (in Spanish). Eng. tr. Robert Parke, *The Historie of the Great & Mightie Kingdome of China and the Situation thereof; Togither with the Great Riches, Huge Citties, Politike Gouvernement and Rare Inventions in the same* [undertaken 'at the earnest request and encouragement of my worshipfull friend Master Richard Hakluyt, late of Oxforde']. London, 1588 (1589). Reprinted in Spanish, Medina del Campo, 1595; Antwerp, 1596 and 1655; Ital. tr. Venice (3 editions), 1586; Fr. tr. Paris, 1588, 1589 and 1600; Germ. and Latin tr. Frankfurt, 1589. New ed. G. T. Staunton, London, 1853 (Hakluyt Soc. Pubs. 1st ser. nos 14, 15). Spanish text again Ed. P. F. García, Madrid, 1944 (España Misionera, no. 2.).

MERCER, H. C. (1). *Ancient Carpenter's Tools illustrated and explained, together with the Implements of the Lumberman, Joiner, and Cabinet-Maker, in use in the Eighteenth Century.* Bucks County Historical Society, Doylestown, Pennsylvania, 1929.

MERCIER, M. (1). *Le Feu Grégeois; Les Feux de Guerre depuis l'Antiquité; La Poudre à Canon.* Geuthner, Paris, 1952; Aubarel, Avignon, 1952.

METTLER, CECILIA C. (1). *History of Medicine; a Correlative Text arranged according to Subjects.* Blakiston, Philadelphia, 1947.

MICKLE, W. J. (1) (tr.). *The 'Lusiad', or the Discovery of India; an Epic Poem [by Luis de Camoëns], translated from the original Portuguese by W. J. M.* Jackson & Lister, Oxford, 1776; repr. 1778; 5th ed. London, 1877.

MIETH, MICHAEL (1). *'Artilleriae Recentior Praxis', oder neuere Geschütz-Beschreibung worinnen von allen vornehmsten Haupt-Puncten der Artillerie gründlich...gehandelt...mit vielen Kupffer-Stücken erkläret wird...* Pr. pr. Frankfurt a/Main & Leipzig, 1683. Re-issued 1684. 2nd ed. with new title, Dresden & Leipzig, 1736.

MILLS, J. V. (6). MS translation of part of ch. 13 of the *Chhou Hai Thu Pien* (on shipbuilding, etc.). Unpub. MS.

MILSKY, M. (1). 'Les Souscripteurs de "l'Histoire Générale de la Chine" du P. de Mailla; Aperçus du Milieu Sinophile Français.' Art. in *Les Rapports entre la Chine et l'Europe au Temps des Lumières* (Actes du 2e Colloque International de Sinologie, Chantilly), ed. J. Sainsaulieu. Cathasia, Paris, 1980, p. 101.

MINORSKY, V. F. (4) (ed. & tr.). *Sharaf al-Zamān Ṭāhir al-Marwazī on China, the Turks and India (c. +1120).* Royal Asiatic Soc., London, 1942. (Forlong Fund series, no. 22.)

MITRA, HARIDAS (1). *The Fire-works and Fire Festivals in Ancient India.* Abhedananda Academy, Calcutta, 1963.

MIYAKAWA HISAYUKI (1). 'The Legate Kao Phien [d. +887] and a Taoist Magician, Lü Yung-Chih, in the Time of Huang Chhao's Rebellion [+875 to +884].' *ACTAS*, 1974, no. 27, 75. (The Taoist entourage of the general who suppressed it, including alchemists, Chuko Yin, Tshai Thien and Shenthu Shêng=Pieh-Chia.)

MOLINARI, E. & QUARTIERI, F. (1). *Notizie sugli Esplodenti in Italia.* Milano, 1913.

MOLLER, W. A. (1). 'Mining in Manchuria.' *TIME*, 1903, 25, 144.

MONTANDON, G. (1). *l'Ologénèse Culturelle; Traité d'Ethnologie Cyclo-Culturelle et d'Ergologie Systématique.* Payot, Paris, 1934.

MONTANUS, ARNOLDUS (1). *'Atlas Japannensis'; being remarkable Addresses by way of Embassy from the East-India Company...to the Emperor of Japan...* English'd by John Ogilby, Esq. Johnson, London, 1670.

MONTEIL, V. (1) (tr.). *Ibn Khaldūn: Discours sur l'Histoire Universelle—'al-Muqaddimah'.* 4 vols. Unesco, Beirut, 1967.

MOOR, EDWARD (1). *Narrative of the Operations of Capt. Little's Detachment...during the late Confederacy in India, aginst the Nawab Tippas Sultan Bahadur.* London, 1794.

MORAY, SIR ROBERT (1). 'A Way to break easily and speedily the hardest Rocks, communicated by the same Person (Sir R. M.) as he received it from Monsieur du Son the Inventor.' *PTRS*, 1665, 1 (no. 5), 82.

MORGAN, C. (1). *The Shape of Futures Past; the Story of Prediction* (a history of science fiction). Webb & Bower, Exeter, 1980.

MORGAN, E. (1) (tr.). *Tao the Great Luminant; Essays from Huai Nan Tzu, with introductory articles, notes and analyses.* Kelly and Walsh, Shanghai, n.d. (1933?).

MORLAND, SIR SAMUEL (1). *Élevation des Eaux par toute sorte de Machines...* Paris, 1685.

MORRIS, WILLIAM & WYATT, A. J. (1). *The Tale of Beowulf, sometime King of the Folk of the Weder Geats.* Kelmscott, Hammersmith, 1895. Repr. London, 1898.

MOTE, F. W. (3). 'The Thu-mu Incident of +1449.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 243.

MOULE, A. C. (1). *Christians in China before the year 1550.* SPCK, London, 1930.

MOULE, A. C. (13). 'The Siege of Saianfu [Hsiang-yang] and the Murder of Achmach Bailo; two Chapters of Marco Polo.' *JRAS/NCB*, 1927, 58, 1, 1928, 59, 256. (Deals in detail with the Muslim trebuchet engineers and the alleged presence of Marco Polo at the siege of Hsiang-yang.)

MOULE, A. C. & PELLIOT, P. (1) (tr. & annot.). *Marco Polo (+1254 to +1325); The Description of the World.* 2 vols. Routledge, London, 1938. Repr. AMS Press. New York, 1976. Further notes by P. Pelliot (posthumously pub.). 2 vols. Impr. Nat. Paris, 1960.

MUIRHEAD, J. P. (1). *The Origin and Progress of the Mechanical Inventions of James Watt, illustrated by his Correspondence with his Friends and the Specifications of his Patents.* 3 vols. London, 1854.

MULLER, JOHN (1). *Treatise on Artillery; to which is prefixed, a Theory of Powder applied to Firearms...* Millan, London, 1757; repr. 1768.

MULTHAUF, R. P. (5). *The Origins of Chemistry.* Oldbourne, London, 1967.

MULTHAUF, R. P. (9). 'An Enquiry into Saltpetre Supply and the Early Use of Firearms.' *Abstracts of Scientific Section Papers 15th Internat. Congress Hist. of Sci.* Edinburgh, 1977, p. 37.

MUNDY, PETER (1). *Travels in Europe and Asia (+1608 to +1667).* 5 vols. in 6, Hakluyt Soc., Cambridge, 1907; London, 1914–36 (Hakluyt series, nos. 17, 35, 45, 46, 55, 78). Ed. Lt.-Col. Sir Richard Carnac Temple & L. M. Anstey. Repr. 3 vols. Kraus, Liechtenstein, 1957.

MUNSTER, SEBASTIAN (1). *Cosmographiae Universalis, Libri VI.* Petri, Basel, 1550, 1552, 1554, 1556, 1572.

MURATORI, L. A. (1) (ed.). *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores, ex Codicibus L.A.M. Collegit, Ordinavit et Praefationibus Auxit.* 25 vols. Milan, 1728–51. 2nd ed. Città di Castello, 1900– , ed. G. Carducci & V. Fiorini.

MURDOCH, JAMES (1) (with the collaboration of I. Yamagata). *A History of Japan.* First pub. Yokohama, 1910. 3 vols. ed. J. H. Longford, Kegan Paul, London, 1925.
MUS, P. (2). 'Les Ballistes du Bayon.' *BEFEO*, 1929, 29, 331 (Études Indiennes et Indochinoises, pt. 3).
MUTHESIUS, V. (1). *Zur Geschichte der Sprengstoffe und des Pulvers.* Pr. pr. Berlin, 1941.

NAMBO HEIZO (1) = (1). 'Who Invented Explosives?' *JSHS*, 1970, 9, 49–98. (This paper contains many errors, both sinological and historical; it should be used with caution.)
NAPOLEON III (EMPEROR OF FRANCE) & FAVÉ, I. CAPT. *See* Bonaparte & Favé (1).
NAUMANN, K. (1). 'Untersuchung eines Luristanischen Kurzschwertes.' *AEHW*, 1957, 28, 575.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (2). *A History of Embryology.* Cambridge Univ. Press, 1934. 2nd ed., revised with the assistance of A. Hughes. Cambridge, 1959; Abelard–Schuman, New York, 1959.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (27). 'Limiting Factors in the History of Science, as observed in the History of Embryology' (Carmalt Lecture at Yale University, 1935). *YJBM*, 1935, 8, 1. Reprinted in Needham (3).
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (32). *The Development of Iron and Steel Technology in China.* Newcomen Soc., London, 1958. (Second Biennial Dickinson Memorial Lecture, Newcomen Society.) Précis in *TNS*, 1960, 30, 141; rev. L. C. Goodrich, *ISIS*, 1960, 51, 108. Repr. Heffer, Cambridge, 1964, French tr. (unrevised, with some illustrations omitted and others added by the editors) *RHSID*, 1961, 2, 187, 235; 1962, 3, 1, 62.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (47). 'Science and China's Influence on the West.' Art. in *The Legacy of China*, ed. R. N. Dawson. Oxford, 1964, p. 234.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (48). 'The Prenatal History of the Steam-Engine.' (Newcomen Centenary Lecture.) *TNS*, 1963, 35, 3–58.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (59). 'The Roles of Europe and China in the Evolution of Oecumenical Science.' *JAHIST*, 1966, 1, 1. As Presidential Address to Section X, British Association, Leeds, 1967, *ADVS*, 1967, 24, 83.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (60). 'Chinese Priorities in Cast Iron Metallurgy.' *TCULT*, 1964, 5, 398.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (65). *The Grand Titration; Science and Society in China and the West* (Collected Addresses). Allen & Unwin, London, 1969.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (80). Notes on the Shansi Provincial Museum at Thaiyuan. Unpub.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (81). 'China's Trebuchets, Manned and Counterweighted.' Art. in Lynn White Festschrift *Humana Civilitas*, ed. Hall & West, 1976, p. 107.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (82). Notes of an Archaeological Study-Tour in China, 1958. Unpub.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (84). 'L'Alchimie en Chine; Pratique et Théorie.' *AHES/AESC*, 1975, no. 5, 1045.
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (85). *China and the Origins of Immunology.* Centre of Asian Studies, Univ. of Hongkong, Hongkong, 1980. (First S.T. Huang-Chan Memorial Lecture.)
NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (86). 'Science and Civilisation in China; State of the Project.' *IDSR*, 1980, 5 (no. 4), 263. Chinese tr. *Chung-Kuo Kho Chi Shih Liao*, 1981, no. 3, 5.
NEF, JOHN U. (1). *La Route de la Guerre Totale; Essai sur les Relations entre la Guerre et le Progrès Humain.* Colin, Paris, 1949. (Cahiers de la Fondation Nationale des Sciences Politiques, no. 11.) Eng. tr., enlarged and revised: *Western Civilisation since the Renaissance; Peace, War, Industry and the Arts* (small print edition), Harper, New York, 1963. Eng. tr. again enlarged and revised. *War and Human Progress; an Essay on the Rise of Industrial Civilisation.* Russell & Russell, New York, 1968.
NUBURGER, A. (1). *The Technical Arts and Sciences of the Ancients.* Methuen, London, 1930. Tr. by H. L. Brose from *Die Technik d. Altertums.* Voigtländer, Leipzig, 1919 (with a drastically abbreviated index and the total omission of the bibliographies appended to each chapter, the general bibliography, and the table of sources of the illustrations).
NICOLAS, SIR HARRIS (1). *History of the Royal Navy, from the Earliest Times to the Wars of the French Revolution.* 2 vols. London, 1847.
NICOLSON, M. H. (1). *Voyages to the Moon.* Macmillan, New York, 1948.
NICOLSON, M. H. (2). 'A World in the Moon; a Study of the Changing Attitude towards the Moon in the +17th and +18th Centuries.' *SCSML*, 1936, 17 (no. 2), 1–72.
NIELSEN, NIELS AGE (1). *Dansk Etymologisk Ordbog.* 2nd. ed. Copenhagen, 1966.
NORTHROP, F. S. C. & LIVINGSTON, H. H. (1) (ed.). *Cross-Cultural Understanding; Epistemology in Anthropology* (a Wenner-Gren Foundation Symposium). Harper & Row, New York, 1964.
NORTON, ROBERT (1). *The Gunner.* London, 1628.
NYE, NATHANIEL, MASTER-GUNNER (1). *The Art of Gunnery.* London, 1647.

O'NEILL, B. H. St J. (1). *Castles and Cannon; a Study of Early Artillery Fortifications in England.* Oxford, 1960. Rev. J. Beeler, *SP*, 1962, 37, 146.
O'NEILL, B. H. St J. (2). *Castles.* HMSO, London, 1953.
OBERTH, H. (1). *Die Rakete an den Planetenraümen.* Oldenbourg, München, 1923. Eng. tr. *The Rocket into Interplanetary Space.*

OBERTH, H. (2). *Wege zur Raumschifffahrt.* Oldenbourg, München, 1929. Eng. tr. *Ways to Spaceflight.* Agence Tunisienne des Relations Publiques, Tunis, 1972. NASA document TT/F 622. Photolitho reproduction, Edwards, Ann Arbor, 1945.

D'OHSSON, MOURADJA (1). *Histoire des Mongols depuis Tchinguiz Khan jusqu'à Timour Bey ou Tamerlan.* 4 vols., van Cleef, The Hague and Amsterdam, 1834–52.

OLSCHKI, L. (4). *Guillaume Boucher; a French Artist at the Court of the Khans.* Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, Baltimore, 1946. Rev. H. Franke, *OR*, 1950, **3**, 135.

OLSCHKI, L. (10). *L'Asia di Marco Polo.* Sansoni, Florence, 1957. Eng. tr. by J. A. Scott; '*Marco Polo's Asia; an Introduction to his "Description of the World", called "Il Milione"*.' Univ. Calif. Press, Berkeley & Los Angeles, 1960.

OLSHAUSEN, O. & HIRTH, F. (1). '(1) Ü. einen Grabfund von Hedehusum auf Föhr; (2) Zur Kenntnis d. Schnallen; (3) Beitrag z. Geschichte d. Reitersporns; (4) Bemerkungen ü. Steigbügel.' With comments by Hirth on Stirrups in China. *ZFE/VBGA*, 1890, **22**, (178) & (209).

OLSZEWSKI, EUGENIUSZ (1). 'An Outline of the Development of Polish Science.' *ORG*, 1965, no. 2, 249.

OLSZEWSKI, EUGENIUSZ (2). 'To Commemorate the Centenary of the Birth of Konstantin Tsiolkovsky.' *KHNT*, 1957–8, Special issue, 25 (on the occasion of the First Polish National Science Congress).

OMAN, C. W. C. (1). *A History of the Art of War in the Middle Ages.* 1st ed. 1 vol. 1898; 2nd ed. 2 vols. 1924 (much enlarged); vol. 1, +378 to +1278; vol. 2, +1278 to +1485. Methuen, London (the original publication had been a prize essay printed at Oxford in 1885; this was reprinted in 1953 by the Cornell University Press, Ithaca N.Y., with editorial notes and additions by J. H. Beeler). Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (*3*).

OPPERT, G. (1). *On the Weapons, Army Organisation, and Political Maxims of the Ancient Hindus, with special reference to Gunpowder and Firearms.* Madras, 1880.

OUCHTERLONY, J. (1). *The Chinese War; an Account of all the Operations of the British Forces from its Commencement to the Treaty of Nanking.* Saunders & Otley, London, 1844.

PAK HAE-ILL (1) = (*1*). 'Parallelisms between the Iron Cladding of Admiral Yi Sunsin's Combat Turtle-Ships and Extant Iron Armouring of Yi Dynasty [City Gates].' *HKH*, 1979, 1 (no. 1), 27.

PAK HAE-ILL (2). 'A Short Note on the Iron-clad Turtle-Ships of Admiral Yi Sunsin.' *KJ*, 1977, **17** (no. 1), 34.

PÁLOS, S. (1). *Chinesische Heilkunst; Rückbesinnung auf eine grosse Tradition*, tr. from the Hungarian by W. Kronfuss. Delp, München, 1963; 2nd ed. 1966. Eng. tr. *The Chinese Art of Healing.* Bantam, New York, 1972.

PANCIROLI, GUIDO (1). *Rerum Memorabilium sive Deperditarum pars prior (et secundus) Commentariis illustrata et locis prope innumeris postremum aucta ab Henrico Salmuth.*' Amberg, 1599 and 1607; Schonvetter Vid. et Haered. Frankfurt, 1617, 1646, 1660. Eng. tr. *The History of many Memorable Things lost, which were in Use among the Ancients; and an Account of many Excellent Things found, now in Use among the Moderns, both Natural and Artificial...now done into English....To this English edition is added, first, a Supplement to the Chapter of Printing, shewing the Time of its Beginning, and the first Book printed in each City before the Year 1500. Secondly, what the Moderns have found, the Ancients never knew; extracted from Dr Sprat's History of the Royal Society, the Writings of the Honourable Mr Boyle, The Royal-Academy at Paris, etc...* London, 1715, 1727. French tr. Lyon, 1608. Bibliography in John Ferguson (2).

PAPIN, DENIS (1). '*De Novo Pulveris Pyri Usu* (on a New Application of Gunpowder).' *AER*, 1688, 497.

PAPIN, DENIS (2). '*Nova Methodus ad vires Motrices validissimas Levi Pretio Comparendas* (Papin's New Method of obtaining very great Moving Powers at small cost).' *AER*, 1690, 410. Latin text reprinted in Muirhead (1), vol. 3, p. 139 with an English translation. French text, probably the original, in *Recueil de Diverses Pièces* (1695). Cf. Galloway (1), pp. 14 ff.

PAPIN, DENIS (3). In *Fasciculus Dissertationum de Novis Quibusdam Machinis...* Marburg, 1695.

PAPIN, DENIS (4). In *Recueil de Diverses Pièces touchant quelques Nouvelles Machines.* Cassel, 1695.

PAPIN, DENIS (5). In *Traité de plusieurs Nouvelles Machines et Inventions Extraordinaires sur différens Sujets.* Paris, 1698.

PAPINOT, E. (1). *Historical and Geographical Dictionary of Japan.* Overbeck, Ann Arbor, Mich., 1948. Lithoprinted from original edn. Kelly & Walsh, Yokohama, 1910. Eng. tr. of *Dictionnaire d'Histoire et de Géographie du Japon.* Sanseido, Tokyo, 1906; Kelly & Walsh, Yokohama, 1906.

PARKER, E. H. (6). 'Military Engines.' *CR*, 1887, **15**, 253.

PARKER, E. H. (7). 'The Invention of Firearms.' *CR*, 1890, **18** (no. 6), 379.

PARKER, E. H. (8). 'The Military Organisation of China prior to 1842 as described by Wei Yuan.' *JRAS/NCB*, 1887, **22**, 1.

PARKER, E. H. (9). 'Military Engineering.' *CR*, 1885, **14**, 217.

PARKER, E. H. (10). 'Greek Fire and Firearms.' *CR*, 1887, **15**, 183.

PARKER, W. G. S. (1). 'Fuels for Research Rockets and Space Vehicles.' *MBLB*, 1965, **6**, 41.

PARRY, V. J. (1). 'Materials of War in the Ottoman Empire.' Art. in Cook (1) (ed.), *Studies in the Economic History of the Middle East.* Oxford, 1970, p. 219.

PARRY, V. J. & YAPP, M. E. (1) (ed.). *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East.* Oxford, 1975.
PARTINGTON, J. R. (5). *A History of Greek Fire and Gunpowder.* Heffer, Cambridge, 1960.
PARTINGTON, J. R. (10). *General and Inorganic Chemistry...* 2nd ed. Macmillan, London, 1951.
PARTINGTON, J. R. (20). 'The Life and Work of John Mayow (+1641 to +1679).' *ISIS*, 1956, **47**, 217, 405.
DE PAUW, C. (1). *Recherches Philosophiques sur les Égyptiens et les Chinois...* (Vols. IV and V of *Oeuvres Philosophiques*) Cailler, Geneva, 1774. 2nd ed., Bastien, Paris, Rep. An. III, (1795). Crit. Kao Lei-Ssu [Aloysius Ko, S.J.], *MCHSAMUC*, 1777, **2**, 365 (2nd pagination), 1–174.
VON PAWLIKOWSKI-CHOLEWA, A. (1). *Die Heere des Morgenlandes.* de Gruyter, Berlin, 1940.
PAYNE-GALLWEY, SIR RALPH (1). *The Crossbow, Mediaeval and Modern, Military and Sporting; its Construction, History and Management, with a Treatise on the Balista and Catapult of the Ancients.* Longmans Green, London, 1903: repr. Holland, London, 1958.
PAYNE-GALLWEY, SIR RALPH (2). *A Summary of the History, Construction and Effects in Warfare of the Projectile-Throwing Engines of the Ancients; with a Treatise on the Structure, Power and Management of Turkish and other Oriental Bows of Mediaeval and Later Times.* Longmans Green, London, 1907 (separately paged, no index). Practically identical with: *Appendix to the Book of the Crossbow and Ancient Projectile Engines*, Longmans Green, London, 1907. The *Summary* is more richly illustrated and has a fuller text than the *Appendix* yet its preface is dated Dec. 1906 while that of the latter is dated Jan. 1907.
PEGGE, S. (1). 'On Shoeing of Horses among the Ancients.' *A*, 1775, **3**, 39.
PEGOLOTTI, FRANCESCO BALDUCCI (1). *La Pratica della Mercatura, c.* +1340. Ed. A. EVANS, Cambridge, Mass., 1936.
PELLIOT, P. (10). 'Les Mongols et la Papauté.' *ROC*, 1922 (3e sér.), **3**, 3; **4**, 225, 1923 (3e sér.), **8**, 3.
PELLIOT, P. (33 (tr.). *Mémoire sur les Coutumes de Cambodge de Tcheou Ta-Kouan [Chou Ta-Kuan]; Version Nouvelle, suivie d'un Commentaire inachevé.* Maisonneuve, Paris, 1951. (Oeuvres Posthumes, no. 3.)
PELLIOT, P. (49). Note on gunpowder and firearms in a review of C. A. S. Williams (1) q.v. *TP*, 1922, **21**, 432.
PELLIOT, P. (53). 'Le Ḥŏja et le Sayyid Ḥusain de l'Histoire des Ming.' *TP*, 1948, **38**, 81–292.
PELLIOT, P. (55). 'Henri Bosmans, S.J.' *TP*, 1928, **26**, 190. (Includes material on the *Huo Kung Chhieh Yao*, and similar books.)
PELLIOT, P. (56). Review of Cordier (12), *l'Imprimerie Sino-Européenne en Chine. BEFEO*, 1903, **3**, 108.
PELLIOT, P. (59). Review of G. Schlegel (12), *On the Invention and Use of Firearms and Gunpowder in China... BEFEO*, 1902, **2**, 407.
PEPYS, SAMUEL (1). *The Diary of Samuel Pepys.* Everyman ed. Ed. J. Warrington, 2 vols. Dent, London, 1953.
PERCY, THOMAS (Bishop of Dromore) (1). *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry.* First pub. 1765. 3 vols. Washbourne, London, 1847.
PERRIN, NOEL (1) (with the assistance of Kuroda Eishoku & Sato Kiyondo). *Giving up the Gun; Japan's Reversion to the Sword, 1543 to 1879.* Godine, Boston, 1979. Pre-pub. abstr. in *NYR*, 1965, 20 Nov., 211. Rev. J. R. Bartholomew, *SCIS*, 1979, **19** (no. 7), 25.
PERTUSI, A. (1). *La Caduta di Constantinopoli; le Testimonianze dei Contemporanei.* 2 vols. Verona, 1976.
PERTZ, G. H. (1) (ed.). 'Cafari et Continuatorum Annales Januae' in *Monumenta Germaniae Historica*, vol. 18. Hannover, 1863 [MSS Paris, nos. 773 and 10136].
PETECH, L. (5). 'Les Marchands Italiens dans l'Empire Mongol.' *JA*, 1962, 549.
PETERSON, C. A. (1). 'Regional Defence against the Central Power; the Huai-hei Campaign, +815 to +817.' Art. in Kierman & Fairbank (1) (ed.), *Chinese Ways in Warfare*, p. 123.
PETERSON, H. L. (1). *The Book of the Gun.* London, 1962.
PETERSON, MENDEL L. (1). 'Richest Treasure Trove; a Bermuda Skin-diver discovers Sunken Bonanza Three Hundred Years Old. The Significance of Edward Tucker's Undersea Finds.' *LIFE*, 1956, **20** (no. 5), 43.
PETERSON, W. J. (2). *Bitter Gourd; Fang I-Chih* [+1611 to +1671] *and the Impetus for Intellectual Change.* Yale Univ. Press, New Haven, Conn., 1979.
PETRI, W. (7). 'Die Zukunft des Raumfahrtzeitalters in Sowjetischer Sicht; Prognosen und wissenschaftlich-kosmischer Utopien.' *UZWKL*, 1972, **27**, 1173. (Veröfftl. d. Forschungsinst. d. Deutschen Museums, A, 128.)
PETROVIC, DJURDJICA (1). 'Fire-arms in the Balkans on the Eve of and after the Ottoman Conquests of the +14th and +15th Centuries.' Art. in Parry & Yapp (1), *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, Oxford, 1975, p. 164.
PFIZMAIER, A. (34) (tr.). 'Die Feldherren Han Sin, Pêng Yue, und King Pu' (Han Hsin, Phêng Yüeh & Ching Pu). *SWAW/PH*, 1860, **34**, 371, 411, 418. (Tr. chs. 90 (in part), 91, 92, *Shih Chi*, ch. 34; *Chhien Han Shu*; not in Chavannes (1).)
PFIZMAIER, A. (37) (tr). 'Die Gewaltherrschaft Hiang Yü's' (Hsiang Yü). *SWAW/PH*, 1860, **32**, 7. (Tr. ch. 31, *Chhien Han Shu.*)

PFIZMAIER, A. (42) (tr.). 'Die Heerführer Li Kuang und Li Ling.' *SWAW/PH*, 1863, **44**, 511. (Tr. ch. 54, *Chhien Han Shu.*)

PFIZMAIER, A. (44) (tr.). 'Die Heerführer Wei Tsing und Ho Khiu-Ping' (Wei Chhing and Ho Chhü-Ping). *SWAW/PH*, 1864, **45**, 139. (Tr. ch. 55, *Chhien Han Shu.*)

PFIZMAIER, A. (98) (tr.). 'Die Anwendung und d. Zufälligkeiten des Feuers in d. alten China.' *SWAW/PH*, 1870, **65**, 767, 777, 786, 799. (Tr. chs. 868, 869 (fire and fire-wells), 870 (lamps, candles and torches), 871 (coal), of *Thai-Phing Yü Lan.*)

PFIZMAIER, A. (107) (tr.). 'Der Feldzug der Japaner gegen Corea im Jahre 1597' [translation of the *Chōsen Monogatari*]. Vienna, 1875.

PHILLIPS, T. R. (1) (ed.). *Roots of Strategy.* Lane, London, 1943. (A collection of classical Tactica, including Sun Tzu, Vegetius, de Saxe, Frederick the Great, and Napoleon.)

PITT-RIVERS, A. H. LANE-FOX (3). 'Primitive Warfare.' *JRUSI*, 1867, **11**; 1868, **12**, 399; 1869, **13**, 509. Reprinted in Pitt-Rivers (4).

PITT-RIVERS, A. H. LANE-FOX (4). *The Evolution of Culture, and other Essays.* OUP, Oxford, 1906. Ed. J. L. Myres with introdn. by H. Balfour. The title essay was first printed in *PRI*, 1875, **7**, 496.

PLATH, L. (2). 'Das Kriegswesen d. alten Chinesen.' *SBAW/PH*, 1873, **3**, 275.

PLOT, ROBERT (1). *The Natural History of Staffordshire.* Oxford, 1686.

POLE, W. (1). *A Treatise on the Cornish Pumping Engine.* London, 1844.

POLLARD, H. B. C. (1). *A History of Fire-arms.* Bles, London, 1926. Houghton Mifflin, Boston, 1936. Repr. Country Life, London, 1983, ed. Claud Blair, with three chapters by Howard Blackmore.

POPESCU, JULIAN (1). *Russian Space Exploration; the First Twenty-one Years.* Gothard, Henley-on-Thames, 1979.

DE LA PORTE DU THEIL, GABRIEL (1). *'Liber Ignium ad comburendos Hostes', auctore Marco Graeco; ou, Traité des Feux propre à détruire les Ennemies, composé par Marcus le Grec; publié d'après deux manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Nationale.* Delance & Lesueur, Paris, 1804.

PORTER, WHITWORTH, MAJ. (1). *A History of the Knights of Malta.* 2 vols. London, 1858.

POST, P. (1). 'Die frühste Geschützdarstellung von etwa +1330.' *ZHWK*, 1938, **15** (NF **6**), 137.

POWER, d'ARCY (1). 'The Lesser Writings of John Arderne (+1307 to *c.* +1380).' *Proc. XVIIth Internat. Congr. Med.* Sect. 23, p. 107. London, 1913.

PRATT, PETER (1). *History of Japan, compiled from Records of the English East India Company at the instance of the Court of Directors.* London, 1822. Ed. M. B. T. Paske-Smith, 2 vols. in 1, Thompson, Kobe, 1931. 2nd ed. Curzon, London, 1972; Barnes & Noble, New York, 1972.

PRAWDIN, M. (1). *The Mongol Empire, its Rise and Legacy.* Tr. from the German of 1938 by E. & C. Paul. Allen & Unwin, London, 1940 (twice repr. 1952).

PREOBRAZHENSKY, A. G. (1). *Etymological Dictionary of the Russian Language.* Repr. Columbia Univ. Press, New York, 1951.

PREVITÉ-ORTON, C. W. (1) (ed.). *The Shorter Cambridge Medieval History.* Vol. 1. *The Later Roman Empire to the +12th Century*; vol. 2. *The +12th Century to the Renaissance.* Cambridge, 1953.

PRŮSEK, J. (4). 'Quelques Remarques sur l'Emploi de la Poudre à Canon en Chine.' *ARO*, 1952, **20**, 250.

PULLEYBLANK, E. G. (5). 'A Geographical Text of the Eighth Century' [in ch. 3 (ch. 34) of the *Thai Pai Yin Ching*, +759]. Art. in Silver Jubilee Volume of the Zinbun Kagaku Kenkyusho, Kyoto University, 1954, p. 301 (*TG/K*, 1954, **25**, pt. 1).

QUATREMÈRE, E. M. (1) (tr.). *Histoire des Mongols de la Perse; écrite en Persan par Raschid-el-din* (part of the *Jami'al-Tawārikh* of Rashid al-Dīn). Imp. Roy., Paris, 1836. (Vol. 1; only one vol. published.)

QUATREMÈRE, E. M. (2). 'Observations sur le Feu Grégeois.' *JA*, 1850 (4e sér.), **15**, 214–74. (A polemic against Reinaud & Favé (1), whom he considered had attacked him.) Short reply by J. T. Reinaud, p. 371. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

QUATREMÈRE, E. M. (3) (tr.). 'Notice de l'Ouvrage Persan qui a pour Titre *Matla Assaadeïn ou-madjina-albahreïn* et qui contient l'Histoire des deux Sultans Schah-rokh et Abou-Saïd' (The account by Ghiyāth al-Dīn-i Naqqāsh of the embassy from Shāh Rukh to the Ming emperor). *MAI/NEM*, 1843, **14**, pt. 1, 1–514 (387).

RAFEQ, ABDUL KARIM (1). 'The Local Forces in Syria in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries.' Art. in *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*, ed. Parry & Yapp (1), p. 277.

RANDALL, J. T. & JACKSON, S. F. (ed.). *The Nature and Structure of Collagen.* Butterworth, London, 1953.

RATHGEN, B. (1). *Das Geschütz im Mittelalter; Quellenkritische Untersuchungen...* VDI Verlag, Berlin, 1928. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (3).

RATHGEN, B. (2). 'Der deutsche Büchsenmeister Merckln Gast, der erste urkundlich erwähnte Eisengiesser.' *SE*, 1920, **40**, 148.

RATHGEN, B. (3). 'Das Drehkraftgeschütz in Deutschland.' *ZHWK*, 1919, **8**, 54.

RATHGEN, B. (4). 'Eisenguss und Urkundenbuch der Waffengeschichte.' *ZHWK*, 1919, **8**, 343.

RATHGEN, B. (5). 'Die Pulverwaffen in Indien.' *OAZ*, 1925, **2**, 9, 196.

RAVERTY, H. G. (1) (tr.). *Ṭabaḳāt-i Nāṣirī; a general History of the Muhammedan Dynasties of Asia, including Hindustan from +810 to +1260, and the Irruption of the Infidel Mughals [Mongols] into Islam, by the Maulānā, Minhāj ud-Dīn, Abū 'Umar-i 'Uṣmān [al- Juzjānī]*. Gilbert & Rivington, London, 1881. (Bibliotheca Indica, for the Asiatic Society of Bengal.)

RAY, J. C. (1). 'Firearms in Ancient India.' *IHQ*, 1932, **8**, 268.

RAY, P. C. (1). *A History of Hindu Chemistry, from the Earliest Times to the middle of the 16th cent. A.D., with Sanskrit Texts, Variants, Translation and Illustrations*. 2 vols. Chuckerverty & Chatterjee, Calcutta, 1902, 1904, repr. 1925. New enlarged and revised edition in one volume, ed. P. Ray, retitled *History of Chemistry in Ancient and Medieval India*, Indian Chemical Society, Calcutta, 1956. Revs. J. Filliozat, *ISIS*, 1958, **49**, 362; A. Rahman, *VK*, 1957, 18.

READ, BERNARD E. (1) (with LIU JU-CHHIANG). *Chinese Medicinal Plants from the 'Pên Tshao Kang Mu' (+1596)...a Botanical, Chemical and Pharmacological Reference List.* (Publication of the Peking Nat. Hist. Bull.) French Bookstore, Peiping, 1936 (chs. 12–37 of *PTKM*). Rev. W. T. Swingle, *ARLC/DO*, 1937, 191. Originally published as *Flora Sinensis*, Ser. A, vol. 1, *Plantae Medicinalis Sinensis*, 2nd ed., *Bibliography of Chinese Medicinal Plants from the Pên Tshao Kang Mu*, +1596, by B. E. Read & Liu Ju-Chhiang. Dept. of Pharmacol. Peking Union Med. Coll. & Peking Lab. of Nat. Hist. Peking, 1927. First ed. Peking Union Med. Coll. 1923.

READ, J. (3). *Explosives*. Penguin, London, 1942.

READ, T. T. (4). 'The Early Casting of Iron; a Stage in Iron Age Civilisation.' *GR*, 1934, **24**, 544.

READ, T. T. (14). 'Coal-Mining in Manchuria.' *MIMG*, 1909, **1**, 217.

Reconstructions of Chinese Gunpowder Weapons. *See* Chiang Chêng-Lin (1) and Anon. (209).

REES, D. MORGAN (1). *The North Wales Quarrying Museum*, [Llanberis] *Gwynneth*. H.M.S.O. Cardiff, 1975, several times repr. (Welsh Office Official Handbook.)

REHATSEK, E. (1) (tr.). 'An Embassy to Khatā or China, A.D. 1419; from the Appendix to the *Ruzat al-Safā* of Muḥammed Khāvend Shāh, or Mirkhond, translated from the Persian....' *IAQ*, 1873, 75. (The embassy from Shāh Rukh, son of Tīmūr, to the Ming emperor; narrative written by Ghiyāth al-Dīn-i Naqqāsh.)

REID, W. (1). *The Lore of Arms*. Beazley, London, 1976.

REID, W. (2). 'Samuel Johannes Pauly, Gun Designer.' *JAAS*, 1957, **2**, 181.

REIFFERSCHEID, M. (1) (ed.). *Annae Comnenae Porphyrogenitae 'Alexias'*. 2 vols. Leipzig, 1884.

REILLY, JOSEPH (1). *Explosives, Matches and Fireworks*. Gurney & Jackson, London, 1938.

REINAUD, J. T. (3). 'De l'Art Militaire chez les Arabes au Moyen Age.' *JA*, 1848, (4e sér.), **12**, 193.

REINAUD, J. T. (4). *Extraits des Histoires Arabes relatifs aux Guerres des Croisades*. Paris, 1829. In J. F. Michaud's *Bibliothèque des Croisades*, 4 vols.

REINAUD, J. T. & FAVÉ, I. (1). 'Histoire de l'Artillerie, pt. 1; *Du Feu Grégeois, des Feux de Guerre, et des Origines de la Poudre à Canon, d'après des Textes Nouveaux*.' Dumaine, Paris, 1845. Crit. rev. by D[efrémer]y, *JA*, 1846 (4e sér.), **7**, 572; E. Chevreul, *JS*, 1847, 87, 140, 209.

REINAUD, J. T. & FAVÉ, I. (2). 'Du Feu Grégeois, des Feux de Guerre, et des Origines de la Poudre à Canon chez les Arabes, les Persans et les Chinois.' *JA*, 1849 (4e sér.), **14**, 257–327. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (3) and (8).

REINAUD, J. T. & FAVÉ, I. (3). 'Controverse à propos du Feu Grégeois; Réponse aux Objections de M. Ludovic Lalanne.' *BEC*, 1847 (2e sér.), **3**, 427.

REINAUD, J. T., QUATREMÈRE, E. M., BEUGNOT, DE SACY, S. *et al.* (1) (ed.). *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades*. 17 vols. (5 vols. Occidentaux, 5 vols. Orientaux, 2 vols. Grecs, 2 vols. Arméniens). Acad. des Inscriptions, Paris, 1841–1906.

RÉMUSAT, J. P. A. (12). *Nouveaux Mélanges Asiatiques; ou, Recueil de Morceaux de Critique et de Mémoires relatifs aux Religions, aux Sciences, aux Coutumes, à l'Histoire et à la Géographie des Nations Orientales*. 2 vols. Schubart & Heideloff and Dondey-Dupré, Paris, 1829.

RENN, L. (1). *Warfare and the Relation of War to Society*. Faber, London, 1939.

RETI, LADISLAO (2). 'Leonardo da Vinci nella Storia della Macchina a Vapore.' *RDI*, 1957, 21.

RETI, LADISLAO & DIBNER, BERN (1). *Leonardo da Vinci, Technologist; Three Essays on some Designs and Projects of the Florentine Master in adapting Machinery and Technology to Problems in Art, Industry and War*. Burndy Library, Norwalk, Conn., 1969.

REYNIERS, COL. (1). 'Vues Anciennes et Nouvelles sur les Origines de l'Artillerie et de la Balistique.' *MAF*, 1956, **30** (no. 2), 511.

RICHARDSON, J. C. (1). 'On the ignition of petroleum by the heat of quicklime in contact with water; one of the proposed explanations of Greek fire—an experimental demonstration.' *N*, 1927, **120**, 165.

RIDGEWAY, SIR WILLIAM (2). *Origin and Influence of the Thoroughbred Horse*. CUP, Cambridge, 1905.

RITTER, H. (4). '"La Parure des Cavaliers" und die Literatur über die ritterliche Künste [the Arabic *furūsīya* literature].' *DI*, 1929, **19**, 116.

ROBINS, BENJAMIN (1). *New Principles of Gunnery*. London, 1742.

ROBINSON, H. R. (1). *Oriental Armour*. Jenkins, London, 1967.

DE ROCHEMONTEUX, C. (1). *Joseph Amiot et les Derniers Survivants de la Mission Française à Pékin (1750 à 1795); Nombreux Documents inédits, avec Carte.* Picard, Paris, 1915.

ROCK, JOSEPH F. (2). 'Konka Risumgongba, Holy Mountain of the Outlaws.' *NGM*, 1931, **60** (no. 1), 1.

ROCKHILL, W. W. (5) (tr. & ed.). *The Journey of William of Rubruck to the Eastern Parts of the World* (+1253 to +1255) *as narrated by himself; with Two Accounts of the earlier Journey of John of Pian de Carpine.* Hakluyt Soc., London, 1900 (second series, no. 4).

RODRIGUES, JOAO (1) (RODRIGUES TÇUZZU). *This Island of Japon; Joao Rodrigues' Account of 16th-century Japan* (+1577 to +1610). Tr. & ed. M. Cooper. Kodansha, Tokyo, 1973.

ROGERS, S. (1). 'On the Antiquity of Horse-shoes; a Letter to the Rev. J. Milles.' *A*, 1775, **3**, 35.

ROGERS, S. L. (1). 'The Aboriginal Bow and Arrow in North America and East Asia.' *AAN*, 1940, **42**, 255.

ROHDE, F. (2). 'Die Abzugsvorrichtung der frühen Armbrust und ihre Entwicklung.' *ZHWK*, 1933, **13** (NF **4**), 100.

ROLT, L. T. C. (1). *Thomas Newcomen; the Prehistory of the Steam Engine.* David & Charles, Dawlish, 1963; Macdonald, London, 1963.

ROLT, L. T. C. & ALLEN, J. S. (1). *The Steam Engine of Thomas Newcomen.* Moorland, Hartington, 1977; Neale Watson, New York, 1977.

VON ROMOCKI, S. J. (1). *Geschichte d. Explosivstoffe.* 2 vols. (usually bound in one). Oppenheim (Schmidt), Berlin, 1895, repr. Jannecke, Hannover, 1896. Vol. 1. *Geschichte der Sprengstoffchemie, der Sprengtechnik und des Torpedowesens bis zum Beginn der neuesten Zeit* (with introduction by M. Jähns). Vol. 2. *Die rauchschwachen Pulver in ihrer Entwickelung bis zur Gegenwart.* Two vols. Photolitho repr. Gerstenberg, Hildesheim, 1976. Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (3).

RONDOT, NATALIS (2). 'Lettre de M. Natalis Rondot à M. Reinaud sur le Feu Grégeois, etc.' *JA*, 1850, (4e sér.), **16**, 100. Also sep. pub. *Lettre à M. Reinaud; la Fabrication de la Poudre à Canon et de l'Acide Azotique en Chine.* Paris, 1850.

ROSE, W. (1). 'Anna Comnena über die Bewaffnung der Kreuzfahrer.' *ZHWK*, 1921, **9**, 1.

ROSENTHAL, ALFRED (1) *et al. The Early Years; the Goddard Space Flight Center—Historical Origins and Activities through December 1962.* Nat. Aeronautics & Space Admin., Washington, D.C., 1964. 2nd, enlarged, edition, retitled: *Venture into Space; Early Years of the Goddard Space Flight Center.* Nat. Aeronautics & Space Admin., Washington, D.C., 1968.

ROSENTHAL, F. (1) (tr.). '*The "Muqaddimah" [of Ibn Khaldūn]; an Introduction to History* [+1377].' Bollingen, New York, 1958. Abridgement by N. J. Dawood, Routledge & Kegan Paul, London, 1967.

ROSZAK, T. (1). *The Making of a Counter-Culture; Reflections on the Technocratic Society and its Youthful Opposition.* New York, 1968, repr. 1969; Faber & Faber, London, 1970, repr. 1971.

ROSZAK, T. (2). *Where the Wasteland Ends; Politics and Transcendence in Post-Industrial Society.* New York and London, 1972–3.

ROULEAU, F. A. (1). 'The Yangchow Latin Tombstone as a Landmark of Mediaeval Christianity in China.' *HJAS*, 1954, **17**, 346.

ROUSE, H. & INCE, S. (1). *A History of Hydraulics.* Iowa Univ. Press, Iowa City, 1957.

RUDOLPH, R. C. (12). 'A Second Fourteenth-Century Italian Tombstone in Yangchow' [+1344]. *JOS*, 1975, **13**, 133.

RUGGIERI, CLAUDE FORTUNÉ (1). *Élémens de Pyrotechnie...* Paris 1801; repr. 1821.

RUGGIERI, CLAUDE-FORTUNÉ (2). *Pyrotechnie Militaire...* Paris, 1812.

RUNCIMAN, STEVEN (3). *The Fall of Constantinople, +1453.* Cambridge, 1965; paperback ed. Cambridge, 1969.

RÜSTOW, W. & KÖCHLY, H. (1). *Geschichte d. griechischen Kriegswesens von der ältesten Zeit bis auf Pyrrhos.* Aarau, 1852.

RUSKA, J. (14). 'Übersetzung und Bearbeitungen von al-Rāzī's Buch "Geheimnis der Geheimnisse" [*Kitāb Sirr al-Asrār*].' *QSGNM*, 1935, **4**, 153–238; 1937, **6**, 1–246.

RUSKA, J. (24). *Das Steinbuch aus der 'Kosmographie' des Zakariya ibn Mahmūd al-Qazwīnī* [*c.* +1250] *übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen versehen...* Schmersow (Zahn & Baendel), Kirchhain N-L, 1897. (Beilage zum Jahresbericht 1895–6 der prov. Oberrealschule Heidelberg.)

DE ST. MAURICE, DE ST. LEU, COL. & DE PUY-SÉGUR, MARQUIS, LT. GEN. (1). *État Actuel de la Science Militaire à la Chine, dans lequel se trouve une analyse critique de 'l'Art Militaire des Chinois'.* Nyon, Paris, 1773. Cf. Milsky (1), pp. 104–5.

DE ST. REMY, SURIREY (1). *Mémoires d'Artillerie.* 2 vols. Paris, 1697; repr. Amsterdam, 1702. 2nd. ed. The Hague, 1741. 3rd ed., 3 vols., Paris, 1745.

SADLER, A. L. (1). *The Maker of Modern Japan; the Life of Tokugawa Ieyasu.* Allen & Unwin, London, 1937.

SALAMAN, R. A. (2). *A Dictionary of Tools used in the Wood-working and Allied Trades, +1790 to 1970.* Allen & Unwin, London, 1975.

SANDERMANN, W. (1). *Das erste Eisen fiel vom Himmel; die grossen Erfindungen der frühen Kulturen.* Bertelsmann, München, 1978.

SÄNGER, E. (1). *Raketen-Flugtechnik*. Oldenbourg, München, 1933.
SARTON, GEORGE (1). *Introduction to the History of Science*. Vol. 1, 1927; vol. 2, 1931 (2 parts); vol. 3, 1947 (2 parts). Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore (Carnegie Institution Publ. no. 376).
SARTON, G. (14). 'A Chinese Gun of +1378?' *ISIS*, 1944, **35**, 177.
SAUNDERS, J. J. (1). *The History of the Mongol Conquests*. Routledge & Kegan Paul, London, 1971.
SAVERY, THOMAS (1). *The Miner's Friend; or, an Engine to raise Water by Fire describ'd, and the Manner of fixing it in Mines, with an Account of the severall other Uses it is applicable unto; and an Answer to the Objections made against it*. London, 1702. Also *PTRS*, 1699, **21** (no. 253), 189, 228.
SCHAFER, E. H. (13). *The Golden Peaches of Samarkand; a Study of Thang Exotics*. Univ. of Calif. Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, 1963. Rev. J. Chmielewski, *OLZ*, 1966, **61**, 497.
SCHAFER, E. H. (25). *The Empire of Min*. Tuttle, Rutland, Vt. and Tokyo, 1954 (Harvard-Yenching Institute).
SCHAFER, E. H. (26). *Pacing the Void; Thang Approaches to the Stars*. Univ. California Press, Berkeley, etc., 1977.
SCHAFER, E. H. (27). 'A Trip to the Moon.' *JAOS*, 1976, **96** (n. 1), 27. Repr. *PAR*, 1983, *8* (no. 4), 68.
SCHALL VON BELL, JOHN ADAM (1). *Historica Relatio de Initio et Progessu Missionis Societatis Jesu apud Sinenses, ac praesertim in Regia Pekinensi, ex Litteris R. P. Adami Schall, ex eadem Societate, supremi ac regii Mathematum Tribunalis ibidem Praesidiis*. Vienna, 1665; Hauckwitz, Ratisbon, 1672.
SCHLEGEL, G. (12). 'On the Invention and Use of Firearms and Gunpowder in China, prior to the arrival of Europeans.' *TP*, 1902, **3**, 1. Rev. P. Pelliot, *BEFEO*, 1902, **2**, 407.
SCHMIDLAP, J. (1). *Künstliche und rechtschaffene Feuerwerk*... Nürnberg, 1561. Repr. 1590, 1591, 1608.
SCHMIDLIN, F. J., DUKE, J. R., IVANOVSKY, A. I. & CHERNYSHENKO, Y. M. (1). *Results of the August 1977 Soviet and American Meteorological Rocketsonde Intercomparison held at Wallops Island, Virginia* [Feb. 1980]. NASA Reference Pubs. no. 1053.
SCHMIDT, I. J. (1). *Geschichte der Ostmongolen*. St Petersburg, 1829. Eng. tr. by J. R. Krueger, *The Story of the Eastern Mongols* in Occasional Papers no. 2, Pubs. of the Mongolia Society, Univ. Indiana Press, Bloomington, Ind., 1964.
SCHNEIDER, RUDOLF (1). *Die Artillerie des Mittelalters, nach den Angaben der Zeitgenossen dargestellt*. Weidmann, Berlin, 1910.
SCHNEIDER, RUDOLF (2). *Geschütze nach handschriftlichen Bildern*. Metz, 1907.
SCHNEIDER, R. (3). *Anonymi 'De Rebus Bellicis' Liber; Text und Erläuterungen*. Weidmann, Berlin, 1908.
SCHNEIDER, RUDOLF (4). 'Griechischer Poliorketiker.' *AGWG/PH*, 1908 (NF), **10**, no. 1; 1908, **11**, no. 1; 1912, **12**, no. 5. *JGLG*, 1905, **17**, 284.
SCHNEIDER, RUDOLF (5). 'Geschütze.' Art. in Pauly-Wissowa, *Realenzyklopädie d. Klass. Altertumswissenschaft*. Vol. 7 (1), pp. 1298 ff.
SCHNEIDER, RUDOLF (6). 'Anfang und Ende der Torsionsgeschütze.' *NJKA*, 1909, **23**, 133.
SCHOONMAKER, FRANK (1). *Encyclopaedia of Wine*. Black, London, 1975; 2nd. ed. 1977.
SCHOTT, CASPAR (2). *Mechanica Hydraulico-Pneumatica*. 1657. The first published account of Otto von Guericke's experiments, and the work which stimulated Robert Boyle to construct his new and improved air-pump.
SCHRAMM, E. (2). 'Poliorketik [d. Griechen u. Römer].' Art. in Kromayer & Veith, *Heerwesen und Kriegsführung d. G. u. R.* (q.v.), pp. 209–47.
SCHULTZ, ALWIN (1). *Das höfische Leben zur Zeit der Minnesinger* [*12th & 13th cents.*]. 2 vols. 2nd ed. Hirzel, Leipzig, 1889.
SCHUMPETER, J. A. (1). *Theory of Economic Development*. 1912.
SCHUMPETER, J. A. (2). *Business Cycles*. 1939.
SCOFFERN, J. (1). *Projectile Weapons of War and Explosive Compounds*. Cook & Whitley, London, 1852.
VON SENFFTENBERG, WULFF (1). 'Von allerlei Kriegsgewehr und Geschütz.' MS in the Dépot Général de la Guerre *c.* +1580. Cf. Partington (5), pp. 170, 183; Bonaparte & Favé (1), vol. 1, p. 166. vol. 3. pp. 265 ff.; v. Romocki (1), vol. 1, pp. 263 ff.
SERRUYS, H. (2). 'Towers in the Northern Frontier Defences of the Ming.' *MINGS*, 1982, **14**, 8.
SETTON, K. M. (1) (ed.). *A History of the Crusades*. 3 vols. Madison, Wisconsin, 1975.
SHAMASASTRY, R. (1) (tr.). *Kautilya's 'Arthasāstra*. With introdn. by J. F. Fleet. Wesleyan Mission Press, Mysore, 1929.
SHARPE, MITCHELL R. (1). 'Non-Military Applications of the Rocket between the +17th and 20th Centuries [in Europe].' Paper presented at the 4th History Symposium of the International Academy of Astronautics, Constance, Germany, 1970. Abbreviated version in F. Cargill Hall (1), vol. 1, p. 51.
SHAW, PETER (1) (tr.). 'A New Method of Chemistry; including the History, Theory and Practice of the Art.' From Hermann Boerhaave's *Elementa Chemiae*... (1732), 2 vols. Longman, London, 1741, 1753.
SHERLOCK, T. P. (1). 'The Chemical Work of Paracelsus.' *AX*, 1948, **3**, 33.
SHIPLEY, A. E. & MCBRIDE, E. W. (1). *Zoology, an Elementary Textbook*. 1st ed. Cambridge, 1901; 4th ed. Cambridge, 1920.

SHKOLYAR, S. A. *See* Školjar, S. A.

SIEMIENOWICZ, KAZIMIERZ (1). *Ars Magna Artilleriae, Pars Prima.* Amsterdam, 1650. French tr. by P. Noizet: 'Grand Art d'Artillerie, par le Sieur Casimir Siemienowicz, Chevalier litvanien; jadis Lieutenant-General de l'Artillerie dans le Royaume de Pologne.' Jansson, Amsterdam, 1651.

SIGERIST, HENRY E. (1). *A History of Medicine.* 2 vols. Oxford (New York), 1951, 1961. Vol. 1 'Primitive and Archaic Medicine'; vol. 2 'Early Greek, Hindu and Persian Medicine'. (Yale Medical Library Pubs. no. 27 and no. 38.)

SIMMS, D. L. (3). 'Archimedes and the Invention of Artillery and Gunpowder.' *TCULT*, in the press.

SINGER, C., HOLMYARD, E. J., HALL, A. R. & WILLIAMS, T. I. (1) (ed.). *A History of Technology.* 5 vols. Oxford, 1954–8.

SINGER, D. W. (5). 'On a +16th-Century Cartoon concerning the Devilish Weapon of Gunpowder; some Mediaeval Reactions to Guns and Gunpowder.' *AX*, 1959, 7 (no. 1), 25.

SINGER, E. (1). *Raketenflugtechnik.* Oldenbourg, München, 1933.

SINHA, B. P. (1). 'The Art of War in Ancient India, −600 to +300.' *JWH*, 1957, 4, 123.

SINOR, DENIS (3). 'Les Relations entre les Mongols et l'Europe jusqu'à la Mort d'Arghoun et de Bela IV.' *JWH*, 1956, 3 (no. 1), 39. Repr. in Sinor (9), no. x.

SINOR, DENIS (7). 'The Mongols and Western Europe.' Art. in *A History of the Crusades*, ed. K. M. Setton, vol. 3, p. 513. Repr. in Sinor (9), no. ix.

SINOR, DENIS (8). 'Un Voyageur du Treizième Siècle; le Dominicain Julien de Hongrie.' *BLSOS*, 1952, 14 (no. 3), 589. Repr. in Sinor (9), no. xi.

SINOR, DENIS, (9). *Inner Asia and its Contacts with Mediaeval Europe.* Variorum, London, 1977.

SISCO, A. G. & SMITH, C. S. (2) (tr.). *Lazarus Ercker's Treatise on Ores and Assaying (Prague, 1574), translated from the German edition of 1580.* Univ. Chicago Press, Chicago, 1951.

ŠKOLJAR, S. A. (1). 'L'Artillerie de Jet à l'Époque Sung.' Art. in Balazs Festschrift, ed. Aubin, F. *Études Song in Memoriam Étienne Balazs.* Sér. 1, Histoire et Institutions, no. 2, p. 119.

ŠKOLJAR, S. A. (2). *Kitaiskaia Doogniestrelvnaia Artilleriя* [Chinese Pre-Gunpowder Artillery], in Russian. Isdatelstvo Nauka (Glavnaia Redakshnia Vostochnoi Literatury), Moscow, 1980.

DE SLANE, BARON MCGUCKIN (3) (tr.). *Ibn Khaldūn: 'Histoire des Berbères' et les Dynasties Musulmanes de l'Afrique Septentrionale* [*c.* +1382]. Govt. Printing House, Algiers, 1852–3. 2nd ed., with P. Casanova and indexes by H. Pérès. Geuthner, Paris, 1956.

SMITH, ALEXANDER (1). *Introduction to Inorganic Chemistry.* Bell, London, 1912.

SMITH, C. S. & GNUDI, M. T. (1) (tr. & ed.). *Biringuccio's 'De La Pirotechnia' of +1540, translated with an introduction and notes.* Amer. Inst. of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers, New York, 1942, repr. 1943. Reissued, with new introductory material. Basic Books, New York, 1959.

SMITH, J. E. (1). *Small Arms of the World.* London, 1960. 10th ed. London, 1973.

SMITH, V. A. (1). *Oxford History of India, from the earliest times to 1911.* 2nd ed. Ed. S. M. Edwardes. Oxford, 1923.

SNODGRASS, A. M. (1). *Arms and Armour of the Greeks.* London, 1967.

SOKOLSKY, V. N. (1) (ed.). *Research Work on the History of Rocketry and Astronautics, 1972–3.* Moscow, 1974. (International Academy of Astronautics; Committee on the History of the Development of Rockets and Astronautics, Information Bulletin, no. 1.)

VON SOMOGYI, JOSEPH (1). 'Ein arabischer Bericht über die Tataren im *Ta'rīkh al-Islām* von al-Dhahabī.' *ISL*, 1937, 24, 105.

SOWERBY, A. DE C. (2). 'The Horse and other Beasts of Burden in China.' *CJ*, 1937, 26, 282.

SPAK, F. A. (1). *Öfversigt öfver Artilleriets Uppkomst.* Stockholm, 1878.

SPENCE, J. D. (1). *Emperor of China; the Self-Portrait of Khang-Hsi* [r. +1661 to +1722]. Cape, London, 1974. Penguin (Peregrine), London, 1974.

SPENCE, J. D. & WILLS, J. F. (1) (ed.). *From Ming to Chhing; Conquest, Region and Continuity in Seventeenth-century China.* Yale Univ. Press, New Haven and London, 1979.

SPENCER, J. (1). *On the Similarity of Form observed in Snow Crystals as compared with Campher.* London, 1856.

SPRAT, THOMAS (1). *The History of the Royal Society of London, for the Improving of Natural Knowledge.* London, 1667. 3rd ed. Knapton *et al.* London, 1722.

STEELE, R. (4). 'Luru Vopo Vir Can Utriet' (the cipher attributed to Roger Bacon on gunpowder, in late versions of the *De Secretis Operibus...*). *N*, 1928, 121, 208.

STERNE, LAURENCE (1). *The Life and Opinions of Tristram Shandy, Gentleman.* (First pub. vols. i and ii, 1760, vols. iii to vi, 1762, vols. vii and viii, 1765, vol. ix, 1767.) Oxford, 1903. Often reprinted.

STONE, G. C. (1). *A Glossary of the Construction, Decoration and Use of Arms and Armour in all Countries and all Times, together with some closely related Subjects.* New York, 1931; Southworth, Portland, Maine, 1934. Repr. Brussel, New York, 1961.

STRUBELL, W. (1). 'Die Geschichte der Rakete im alten China.' *NTM*, 1965, 2, 84.

STRUVE, L. A. (1). 'Ambivalence and Action; some Frustrated Scholars of the Khang-Hsi Period.' Art. in Spence & Wills (1), *From Ming to Chhing...* 1979, p. 321.

STUART, G. A. (1). *Chinese Materia Medica; Vegetable Kingdom, extensively revised from Dr F. Porter Smith's work.* Amer. Presbyt. Mission Press, Shanghai, 1911. An expansion of Smith, F. P. (1)

SUBOTOWICZ, M. (1). 'K. Haas (1529–1569), V. Buringuccio (1540), J. Schmidlap (1561), K. Siemienowicz (1650); Rakiety Wielostopniowe, Baterie Rakietowe, Stabilizatory Lotu Typu Delta (Multi-Stage Rockets, Rocket Batteries and Delta-shaped Flight Stabilisers).' *KHNT*, 1968, 13 (no. 4), 805. In Polish, with English summary.

SUBOTOWICZ, M. (2). 'Kazimierz Siemienowicz (+1650) and his Contributions to Rocket Science.' *KHNT*, 1957–8, Special issue, 5. (On the occasion of the First Polish National Science Congress.)

SUBOTOWICZ, M. (3). 'Remarks on Some Important Polish Contributions to the Development of the Rocket and Space Research.' In booklet circulated at the 13th International Congress of History of Science, Moscow, 1971.

SUBOTOWICZ, M. (4). 'The Development of the Technology of Rocketry and Space Research in Poland.' Paper presented at the 23rd International Astronautical Federation Congress, Vienna, 1972.

SUGIMOTO MASAYOSHI & SWAIN, D. L. (1). *Science and Culture in Traditional Japan, A.D. 600–1854.* M.I.T. Press, Cambridge, Mass. 1978. (M.I.T. East Asian Science Series, no. 6.)

SUN FANG-TO (1). 'Rockets and Rocket Propulsion Devices in Ancient China.' *Proc. XXXIst Congress of the International Astronautical Federation, Tokyo*, Sept. 1980. Revised version, *JANS*, 1981. 29 (no. 3), 289.

SUN FANG TO (2). 'On Gunpowder, Rockets, and Related Firearms and Peaceful Devices in Ancient China.' Typed abstract 12 Mar. 82.

SUN JEN I-TU & SUN HSÜEH-CHUAN (1) (tr.). '*Thien Kung Khai Wu*', *Chinese Technology in the Seventeenth Century, by Sung Ying-Hsing.* Pennsylvania State Univ. Press; University Park and London, Penn. 1966.

SUVIN, DARKO (1). *Metamorphoses of Science Fiction; On the Poetics and History of a Literary Genre.* Yale Univ, Press, New Haven, Conn., etc. 1979.

SWINFORD, C. B. (1) (tr.). 'Than Tan-Chhiung's "An Investigation of the Bow and Arrow Industry in Chhêngtu, Szechuan".' Unpub. MS.

SWORYKIN, A. A., OSMOWA, N. I., TSCHERNYSCHEV, W. I. & SUCHARDIN, S. W. *See* Zworykin, Osmova, Chernychev & Suchardin.

TANG, M. *See* Thang Mei-Chün (*1*).

TAVERNIER, J. B. (1). *Les Six Voyages de J-B. T....* Paris, 1676. Eng. tr. (current) *Collection of Travels through Turkey into Persia and the East Indies...being the Travels of Monsieur Tavernier, Monsieur Bornier, and other Great Men.* London, 1884. But the first English translation appeared in 1678 with the following title: *The Six Voyages of John Baptist Tavernier, a Noble Man of France now living, through Turky into Persia and the East-Indies, finished in the year 1670, giving an Account of the State of those Countries, illustrated with Sculptures; together with a New Relation of the Present Grand Seignor's Seraglio, by the same Author; made English by J. P. – to which is added A Description of all the Kingdoms which Encompass the Euxine and Caspian Seas, by an English Traveller, never before printed.* R. L. & M. P., Starkey and Pitt, London, 1678.

TAYLOR F. SHERWOOD (4). *A History of Industrial Chemistry.* Heinemann, London, 1957.

TAYLOR, J. W. R. (1). *Rockets and Missiles.* Hamlyn, London, 1970; Sun, Melbourne, Australia, 1970.

TÊNG SSU-YÜ (3). *The Nien Army and their Guerilla Warfare, 1851 to 1868.* Mouton, The Hague, 1961. (Le Monde d'Outre-Mer Passé et Présent, 1st series, Études, no. 13.)

TÊNG SSU-YÜ & FAIRBANK, J. K. (1), with Sun Chhen I-Tu (E-tu Zen Sun), Fang Chao-Ying *et al. China's Response to the West; a Documentary Survey, 1839 to 1923.* (Medium 8vo) Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1954. Sep. pub. *Research Guide for 'China's Response to the West; a Documentary Survey...* (Small Demy 4to). Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1954.

TERWIEL, B. J. (1). *Monks and Magic; an Analysis of Religious Ceremonies in Central Thailand.* Copenhagen, 1978. (Scandinavian Institute of Asian Studies Monographs, no. 24.)

TESSIER, M. (1). *Chimie Pyrotechnique, ou Traité Pratique des Feux Colorés.* Paris, 1859.

THAN TAN-CHHIUNG (1)=(*2*). 'Investigative Report on Bow and Arrow Manufacture in Chhêngtu, Szechuan.' *SUJCAH*, 1981, 11, 143–216. Tr. by C. B. Swinford.

THOMPSON, A. H. (1). *Military Architecture in England during the Middle Ages.* OUP, Oxford, 1912.

T[HOR], I. (1). 'Bibliographical Notes.' *KHNT*, 1964, 9 (no. 2), 322–3.

THOR, I. (2). 'Tłumaczenia "Artis Magnae Artilleriae" K. Siemienowicza.' *KHNT*, 1968, 13 (no. 1), 91. English summary in Thor (3).

THOR, J. (3). 'Casimir Siemienowicz's Contribution to the Development of +17th- and +18th-century Rockets.' *Proc. XIth International Congress of the History of Science, Warsaw*, 1965, p. 507.

THORNDIKE, LYNN (12). 'An Unidentified Work by Giovanni da' Fontana, *Liber De Omnibus Rebus Naturalibus* [+1454].' *ISIS*, 1931, 15, 31. (No MS known, but pr. Venice, 1544, and ascribed wrongly to one Pompilius Azalus.)

THUDICHUM, J. L. W. (1). *The Spirit of Cookery; a Popular Treatise on the History, Science, Practice and Ethical and Medical Import of Culinary Art—with a Dictionary of Culinary Terms.* Baillière, Tindall & Cox, London, 1895.

THURSTON, R. H. (1). *A History of the Growth of the Steam-Engine* (1878). Centennial edition, with a supplementary chapter by W. N. Barnard. Cornell Univ. Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1939.

TISSANDIER, G. (7). 'La Chimie dans l'Extrême-Orient; Feux d'Artifices [Chinois et] Japonais.' *LN*, 1884, 12 (pt. 1), 267.

TODERICIU, DORU (1). *Preistoria Rachetei Moderne; Manuscrisul de la Sibiu* (+*1400 à* +*1569*]. Ed. Acad. Rep. Soc. Rumania, Bucarest, 1969.

TODERICIU, DORU (2). 'Raketentechnik im 16. Jahrhundert; Bemerkungen zu einer in Sibiu (Hermannstadt) vorhandenen Handschrift des Conrad Haas.' *BGTI/TG*, 1967, 34, 97.

TODERICIU, DORU (3). 'Niezany Mechanik z 16 Wieku Prekursorem Novoczesnej Rakiety.' *KHNT*, 1969, 14 (no. 3), 475.

TODERICIU, DORU (4). 'The Sibiu Manuscript.' *RRH*, 1967 (no. 3), 333.

TODERICIU, DORU (5). 'Racheta in Trepte, creata in Tara Nostra in Secolui al 16-lea.' *RTPT*, 1964, 8, 376.

TOMKINSON, L. (1). *Studies in the Theory and Practice of Peace and War in Chinese History and Literature.* Friends' Centre, Shanghai, 1940.

TOPPING, A. & NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (1). 'Clay Soldiers; the Army of Emperor Chhin.' *HORIZ*, 1977, 19 (no. 1), 4.

TORGASHEV, B. P. (1). *The Mineral Industry of the Far East.* Chali, Shanghai, 1930.

TORRANCE, T. (2). 'The Origin and History of the Irrigation Work of the Chêngtu Plain.' *JRAS/NCB*, 1924, 55, 60. With addendum: 'The History of [the State of] Shu; a free translation of [part of] the *Shu Chih* [ch. 3 of *Hua Yang Kuo Chih*].'

TOUT, T. F. (1). 'Firearms in England in the Fourteenth Century.' *EHR*, 1911, 26, 666. Repr. in *Collected Papers*, vol. 2, p. 233 (Manchester, 1934). Crit. Fêng Chia-Shêng (8).

TOY, S. (1). *Castles; a Short History of Fortifications,* −*1600 to* +*1600.* Heinemann, London, 1939.

TRENCH, C. CHEVENIX (1). *A History of Marksmanship.* London, 1972.

TROLLOPE, M. N. Bp. of Seoul (1). 'Korean Books and their Authors; with 'A Catalogue of Some Korean Books in the Chosen Christian College Library.' *JRAS/KB*, 1932, 21, 1 & 59–104.

TSIEN HSUE-SHEN. *See* Chhien Hsüeh-Sên.

TSIOLKOVSKY, KONSTANTIN E. (1). *Sobranie Sochinenie* (*Collected Works*). Izd. Akad. Nauk USSR, Moscow, 1951, 1954, 1959. Eng. tr. by NASA (Washington, D.C.) 1965: Technical Translations F 236, 237, 238. Eng. tr. of articles of 1903, 1911 and 1926 (2, 3, 4): Technical Translations F 243.

TSIOLKOVSKY, KONSTANTIN E. (2). *A Rocket into Cosmic Space.* 1903.

TSIOLKOVSKY, KONSTANTIN E. (3). *The Investigation of Universal Space by means of Reactive Devices.* 1911.

TSIOLKOVSKY, KONSTANTIN E. (4). *The Investigation of Universal Space by Reactive Devices.* 1926.

TSIOLKOVSKY, KONSTANTIN E. (5). 'Vne Zemli.' MS of 1896. 1st ed. (incomplete) 1916; 2nd ed. Moscow, 1920; repr. 1958. German tr. by W. Petri: *Ausserhalb der Erde.* Heyne, München, 1977.

TSUNODA RYUSAKU (1). *Japan in the Chinese Dynastic Histories* (Later Han to and including Ming). Ed. L. C. Goodrich. Perkins, South Pasadena, 1951. (Perkins Asiatic Monographs, no. 2.)

TSUNODA RYUSAKU (2) (ed.) (with the collaboration of W. T. de Bary & D. Keene). *Sources of the Japanese Tradition,* Columbia Univ. Press. New York, 1958. (Columbia Univ. History Dept. Records of Civilisation Sources and Studies, no. 54.)

TUGE, HIDESMI (1). *The Historical Development of Science and Technology in Japan.* Kokusai Bunka Shinkokai (Society for International Cultural Relations). Tokyo, 1961. (Series on Japanese Life and Culture, no. 5.) Rev. Watanabe Masas, *ISIS*, 1964, 55, 233.

TURNBULL, S. R. (1). *The Samurai; a Military History.* Macmillan, New York, 1977.

TURNER, SIR J. (1). *Pallas Armata.* London, 1670.

TWITCHETT, D. & FAIRBANK, J. K. (1) (ed.). *The Cambridge History of China.* 10 or more vols. Cambridge, 1978–

UBBELOHDE, A. R. J. P. (1). 'The Beginnings of the Change from Craft Mystery to Science as a Basis for Technology.' Art. in *A History of Technology*, ed. C. Singer *et al.*, Oxford, 1958, vol. 4, p. 663.

UCCELLI, A. (1) (ed.) (with the collaboration of G. Somigli, G. Strobino, E. Clausetti, G. Albenga, I. Gismondi, G. Canestrini, E. Gianni & R. Giacomell). *Storia della Tecnica dal Medio Evo ai nostri Giorni.* Hoeppli, Milan, 1945.

UFANO, DIEGO (1). *Tratado de la Artilleria y uso del Practicado.* Antwerp, 1613. French tr. *Artillerie; c'est à dire: Vraye Instruction de l'Artillerie de toutes ses Appartenances···le tout recueilly de l'Experience es Guerres du Pays bas et publié en langue Espagnolle...* Emmel, Frankfurt, 1614.

ULMEN, G. L. (1) (ed.). *Society and History* (Wittfögel Festschrift). Mouton, The Hague, 1978.

UNDERWOOD, LEON (1). '"Le Bâton de Commandement" [on throwing-sticks, *atlatl*].' *MA*, 1965, no. 142/143, 140.

UNKOVSKY, J. (1). 'Summary of an ambassador's diary of 1723 concerning finds of golden stirrups and other objects in grave-mounds of the Irtysh steppe.' *ZFE/VBGA*, 1895, 27, (267).

URBANSKI, TADEUSZ (1). *The Chemistry and Technology of Explosives.* Tr. from the Polish by I. Jeczalikove, W. Ornaf & S. Laverton. 2 vols. Pergamon, Oxford, 1964, 1965.

URE, A. (1). *A Dictionary of Arts, Manufactures and Mines.* 1st American ed. Philadelphia, 1821; 1st ed., 2 vols. London, 1839. 5th ed., 3 vols., ed. R. Hunt. Longmans Green, Longman & Roberts, London, 1860.

USHER, A. P. (1). *A History of Mechanical Inventions.* McGraw-Hill, New York, 1929; 2nd ed. revised Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1954. Rev. Lynn White, *ISIS*, 1955, **46**, 290.

VACCA, G. (9). *Origini della Scienza, 1. Perchè non si é Sviluppata la Scienza in Cina...* Quaderni di Sintesi (ed. A. C. Blanc), no. 1. Partenia, Rome, 1946. (With contributions to a discussion by A. C. Blanc, G. Bonarelli, P. Mingazzini & G. Rabbeno.)

VARAGNAC, A. (1). *La Conquête des Énergies; les Sept Révolutions Énergétiques.* Hachette, Paris, 1972. Rev. A. Herlea, *TCULT*, 1975, **16**, 79.

VÄTH, A. (1) (with the collaboration of L. van Hée). *Johann Adam Schall von Bell, S. J., Missionar in China, Kaiserlicher Astronom und Ratgeber am Hofe von Peking; ein Lebens- und Zeitbild.* Bachem, Köln, 1933. (Veröffentlichungen des Rheinischen Museums in Köln, no. 2.) Crit. P. Pelliot, *TP*, 1934, 178.

VENTURI, G. B. (1). *Recherches expérimentales sur le Principe de Communication latérale du Mouvement dans les Fluides, appliqué à l'Explication de différens Phénomènes Hydrauliques.* Paris, 1797.

VERGANI, RAFFAELLO (1). 'Gli Inizi dell'Uso della Polvere da Sparo nell'Attività Mineraria; il Caso Veneziano.' *SV*, 1979 (Ser. Nuovo), **3**, 97.

VERGANI, RAFFAELLO (2). 'Lavoro e Creatività Operaia; una "Invenzione" Mineraria di Fine Seicento.' Art. in *Studi in Memoria di Luigi dal Pane.* Bologna, 1982, p. 487.

VERGIL, POLYDORE. *De Rerum Inventoribus.* Chr. de Pensis, Venice, 1499; and many later editions. Eng. tr. by T. Langley, *An Abridgement of the notable Worke of Polidore Vergile, conteygnyng the Devisers and first finders out as well of Arts and Mysteries as of kites and ceremonies, commonly used in the Churche.* Grafton, London, 1546. Repr. 1551.

VERGNAUD, A. D. & VERGNAUD, P. (1). *Nouveau Manuel Complet de l'Artificier; Pyrotechnie Civile.* Roret, Paris, 1906.

VIDEIRA-PIRES, B. (1). 'Os Três Heróis do IV Centenario.' *BEDM*, 1964, **62**, 687.

VIEILLEFOND, J. R. (1). *Jules l'Africain; Fragments des 'Cestes' provenant de la Collection des Tacticiens Grecs.* Paris, 1932.

VILINBAKHOV, V. B. (1). 'A Contribution to the History of Fire-Weapons in Ancient Russia' (in Russian). *SARCH*, 1960, **25** (no. 1).

VILINBAKHOV, V. B. & KHOLMOVSKAIA, T. N. (1). 'The Fire-Weapons of Mediaeval China.' *SINT*, 1960, pt. 1.

VIOLLET-LE-DUC, E. E. (1). *Dictionnaire Raisonné de l'Architecture française du 11ème au 16ème Siècles.* 10 vols. Bance, Paris, 1861.

DE VISDELOU, C. (1). 'Histoire Abrégée de la Grande Tartarie.' Supplement to d'Herbelot's *Bibliothèque Orientale*, 1779, vol. 4, 42–296 (q.v.).

VOZÁR, J. (1). 'Der erste Gebrauch von Schiesspulver im Bergbau; Die Legende von Freiberg, die Wirklichkeit von Banská Štiavnica.' *SHS*, 1978, **10**, 257.

DE WAARD, C. (1). 'L'Expérience Barométrique; ses Antécédents et ses Explications.' Imp. Nouv. Thouars, 1936. Rev. G. Sarton *ISIS*, 1939, **26**, 212.

DE WAILLY, W. (1). *Jean, Sieur de Joinville: 'Histoire de St. Louis'* [1309]. Paris, 1874.

WAKEMAN, F. (2). 'The Canton Trade and the Opium War.' Art. in *Cambridge History of China*, ed. D. Twitchett & J. K. Fairbank, vol. 10, p. 163. Cambridge, 1978.

WALES, H. G. QUARITCH (3). *Ancient South-East Asian Warfare.* Quaritch, London, 1952.

WALEY, A. (28). *The Secret History of the Mongols, and Other Pieces.* Allen & Unwin, London, 1963; Barnes & Noble, New York, 1964.

WALEY, A. (31). *Ballads and Stories from Tunhuang.* Allen & Unwin, London, 1960.

WANG CHUNG-SHU (1). *Han Civilisation.* Tr. by Chang Kuang-Chih *et al.* Yale Univ. Press, New Haven, 1982.

WANG LING (1). 'On the Invention and Use of Gunpowder and Firearms in China.' *ISIS*, 1947, **37**, 160.

WANG ZHONGSHU. *See* Wang Chung-Shu.

WARD, G. (1). *ANTJ*, 1941, **21**, 9.

WARD, ROBERT (1). *Animadversions of Warre; or, a Militarie Magazine of...Rules and...Instructions for the Managing of Warre...* London, 1639.

WATERHOUSE, D. B. (1). 'Fire-arms in Japanese History; with Notes on a Japanese Wall-Gun.' *BMQ*, 1963, **27**, 94.

WATSON, R., Bishop of Llandaff (1). *Chemical Essays.* 2 vols. Cambridge, 1781; vol. 3, 1782; vol. 4, 1786; vol. 5, 1787. 2nd ed. 3 vols. Dublin, 1783. 3rd ed. Evans, London, 1788. 5th ed. 5 vols. Evans, London, 1789. 6th ed. London, 1793–6.

WATTENDORF, F. L. & MALINA, F. J. (1). 'Theodore von Kármán, 1881 to 1963.' *ASTRA*, 1964, **10** (no. 2), 81.

WEBB, H. J. (1). 'The Science of Gunnery in Elizabethan England.' *ISIS*, 1954, **45**, 10.

WEI CHOU-YUAN (VEI CHOW JUAN) (1). 'The Mineral Resources of China.' *EG*, 1946, **41**, 399–474.

WEIG, J. (1). *The Chinese Calendar of Festivals*. Catholic Mission Press, Tsingtao, 1929.

WEINGART, G. W. (1). *Dictionary and Manual of Pyrotechny*... Pr. pr., New Orleans [1937]. Re-issued as *Pyrotechnics, Civil and Military*, Chem. Pub. Co. Brooklyn, 1943. 2nd ed. rev. and enlarged: *Pyrotechnics*, Chem. Pub. Co., Brooklyn, 1947.

WELBORN, M. C. (1). '"The Errors of the Physicians" [De Erroribus Medicorum], according to Friar Roger Bacon of the Minor Order.' *ISIS*, 1932, **18**, 26.

WERHAHN-MEES, K. (1). *Chhi Chi-Kuang; Praxis der Chinesischen Kriegsführung*. Bernard & Graefe, München, 1980.

WERNER, E. T. C. (3). *Chinese Weapons*. Royal Asiatic Society (North China Branch), Shanghai, 1932.

WERNER, E. T. C. (4). *A Dictionary of Chinese Mythology*. Kelly & Walsh, Shanghai, 1932.

WERTIME, T. A. & MUHLY, J. D. (1) (ed.). *The Coming of the Age of Iron*. Yale Univ. Press, New Haven, 1980. (Cyril Stanley Smith Presentation Volume.)

WESCHER, C. (1) (ed.). *Poliorcétique des Grecs*. (Texts only.) Imp. Imp. Paris, 1867.

WHINYATES, F. A. (1). 'Captain Bogue and the Rocket Brigade.' *PRAI*, 1897, **24**, 131.

WHITE, JOHN H. (1). 'Safety with a Bang; the Railway Torpedo [Fog Signal].' *TCULT*, 1982, **23**, 195.

WHITE, LYNN (7). *Mediaeval Technology and Social Change*. Oxford, 1962. Revs. A. R. Bridbury, *EHR*, 1962, **15**, 371; R. H. Hilton & P. H. Sawyer, *PP*, 1963 (no. 24), 90; J. Needham, *ISIS*, 1963, **54** (no. 4).

WHITE, LYNN (20). 'The Eurasian Context of Mediaeval Europe.' *Proc. XIIth Congress of the International Musicological Society, Berkeley, Calif.* 1977. Ed. D. Heartey & B. Wade. Kossel, Bärenreiter, 1982, p. 1.

WHITEHORNE, PETER (1). *Certain Waies for the Orderyng of Souldiers in Battelray...and moreover, howe to make Saltpeter, Gunpowder and divers sortes of Fireworkes or wilde Fyre*. Kingston & Englande, London, 1562. The first edition of 1560 does not include the powder compositions.

WIEDEMANN, E. (7). 'Beiträge z. Gesch. d. Naturwiss.; VI, Zur Mechanik und Technik bei d. Arabern.' *SPMSE*, 1906, **38**, 1. Repr. in (23), vol. 1, p. 173.

WIEDEMANN, E. (23). *Aufsätze zur arabischen Wissenschaftsgeschichte* (a reprint of his 79 contributions in the series 'Beiträge z. Gesch. d. Naturwissenschaften' in *SPMSE*), ed. W. Fischer, with full indexes, 2 vols. Olm, Hildesheim and New York, 1970.

WIEDEMANN, E. (28). 'Beiträge z. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. XL; Über Verfälschungen von Drogen usw. nach Ibn Bassām und al-Nabarāwī.' *SPMSE*, 1914, **46**, 172. Repr. in (23), vol. 2, p. 102.

WIEDEMANN, E. & GROHMANN, A. (1). 'Beiträge z. Gesch. d. Naturwiss. XLIX; Über von den Arabern benutzte Drogen.' *SPMSE*, 1917, **48/49**, 16. Repr. in Wiedemann (23), vol. 2, p. 230.

WILBUR, C. M. (2). 'The History of the Crossbow.' *ARSI*, 1936, 427. (Smithsonian Institution Pub. no. 3438).

WILLIAMS, A. (1). 'Some Firing Tests with Simulated Fifteenth-century Hand-Guns.' *JAAS*, 1974, **8**, 114.

WILLIAMS, A. R. (1). 'The Production of Saltpetre in the Middle Ages.' *AX*, 1975, **22**, 125.

WILLIAMS, S. WELLS (1). *The Middle Kingdom; a Survey of the Geography, Government, Literature [or Education], Social Life, Arts, [Religion] and History, [etc.] of the Chinese Empire and its Inhabitants*. 2 vols. Wiley, New York, 1848; later eds. 1861, 1900; London, 1883.

WINTER, FRANK H. (1). 'On the Origins and Development of the Rocket in India.' *TCULT* (1977). 'Rocketry in India from the Earliest Times to the Nineteenth Century.' *Proc. XIVth Internat. Congr. Hist. of Science, Tokyo*, 1975. Vol. 3, p. 360.

WINTER, FRANK H. (2). 'William Hale; a Forgotten British Rocket Pioneer.' *SPFL*, 1973, **15** (no. 1), 31. Abstract in *The History of the Science and Technology of Aeronautics, Rockets and Space-flight*. Booklet circulated at the 13th International Congress of History of Science, Moscow, 1971, p. 63.

WINTER, FRANK H. (3). 'Sir William Congreve; a Bicentennial Memorial.' *SPFL*, 1972, **14** (no. 9), 333.

WINTER, FRANK H. (4). 'On the Origin of Rockets.' *CHEM*, 1976, **49** (no. 2), 8.

WINTER, FRANK H. (5). 'The Genesis of the Rocket in China, and its Spread to the East and West.' *Proc. XXXth Congress of the International Astronautical Federation, München*, 1979.

WINTER, FRANK H. (6). 'A History of Italian Rocketry during the Nineteenth Century.' *ARMA*, 1965, 181.

WINTER, FRANK H. & SHARPE, MITCHELL R. (1). 'William Moore; Pioneer in Rocket Ballistics.' *SPFL*, 1976, **18**, 180.

WINTRINGHAM, T. (1). *Weapons and Tactics*. Faber & Faber, London, 1943.

WOLF, A. (1) (with the co-operation of F. Dannemann & A. Armitage). *A History of Science, Technology and Philosophy in the 16th and 17th Centuries*. Allen & Unwin, London, 1935; 2nd ed., revised by D. McKie, London, 1950. Rev. G. Sarton, *ISIS*, 1935, **24**, 164.

WOLF, A. (2). *A History of Science, Technology and Philosophy in the 18th Century*. Allen & Unwin, London, 1938; 2nd ed., revised by D. McKie, London, 1952.

WOLFF, ELDON, G. (1). *Air Guns*. Milwaukee Public Museum, Milwaukee, 1958. (Museum Pubs. in History, no. 1.)

[WONG, K. C.] (1). 'Ancient Jade Sword and Scabbard Parts.' *CJ*, 1927, **6**, 295.
WOO, Y. T. *See* Wu Yang-Tsang.
WOODCROFT, B. (1) (tr.). *The 'Pneumatics' of Heron of Alexandria.* Whittingham, London, 1851.
WU YANG-TSANG (1). 'Silver Mining and Smelting in Mongolia' [Jehol]. *TAIME*, 1903, **33**, 755. With discussion by B. S. Lyman on p. 1038. *EMJ*, 1903, **75**, 147 (abridged version).
WÜSTENFELD, F. (1) (tr.). 'Calcaschandi's (al-Qalquashandi) Geographie und Verwaltung von Ägypten.' *AGWG/PH*, 1879, **25**, 1.
WUTTKE, A. (1). *Der Deutsche Volksaberglaube der Gegenwart.* Wiegand & Grüben, Berlin, 1869, repr. 1900.
VAN DER WYNGAERT, ANASTASIUS (1). *Jean de Monte Corvin, O.F.M., premier Évêque de Khanbalig (+1247 à +1328).* Lille, 1924.
WYNNE-JONES, I. (1). *The Llechwedd Slate Caverns.* Llechwedd, Blaenau Ffestiniog, Gwynedd, 1980.

YADIN, YIGAEL (1). *The Art of Warfare in Biblical Lands.* London, 1963.
YAMODA, NAKABA (1). *Ghenkō; the Mongol Invasion of Japan.* Smith Elder, London, 1916; Dutton, New York, 1916.
YANG LIEN-SHÊNG (14). 'The Form of the Paper Note [Money] Hui-tzu of the Southern Sung Dynasty.' *HJAS*, 1957, **16**, 365. Repr. in (9), p. 216.
YATES, ROBIN D. S. (2). 'Towards a Reconstruction of the Tactical Chapters of *Mo Tzu* (ch. 14).' Inaug. Diss. (M.A.), Univ. of California, Berkeley, 1975.
YATES, ROBIN D. S. (3). 'Siege Engines and Late Chou Military Technology.' Art. in *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China*, ed. Li Kuo-Hao, Chang Mêng-Wên, Tshao Thiën-Chhin & Hu Tao-Ching, p. 409. Shanghai, 1982.
YATES, ROBIN D. S. (4). 'The Mohists on Warfare; Technology, Technique, and Justification.' *JAAR*, 1979, **47** (no. 35, Thematic Issue), 549.
YETTS, W. P. (13). 'The Horse; a Factor in Early Chinese History.' *ESA*, 1934, **9**, 231.
YONEDA, S. (1). 'A Study of Saltpetre and Soda produced in the Saline and Alkali Soils of Northern Honan.' *SRFAOU*, 1953, **3**, 52.
YOSHISKA, SHIN-ICHI (1). *Collection of Ancient Guns.* Tokyo, 1965.
YULE, SIR HENRY (1) (ed.). *The Book of Ser Marco Polo the Venetian, concerning the Kingdoms and Marvels of the East, translated and edited, with Notes, by H. Y....*, 1st ed. 1871, repr. 1875. 3rd ed., 2 vols. ed. H. Cordier; Murray, London, 1903 (reprinted 1921), 3rd ed. also issued Scribner, New York, 1929. With a third Volume, *Notes and Addenda to Sir Henry Yule's Edition of Sir Marco Polo*, by H. Cordier. Murray, London, 1920. Photolitho offset reprint in 2 vols., Armorica, St Helier and Philo, Amsterdam, 1975.
YULE, SIR HENRY (2). *Cathay and the Way Thither; being a Collection of Mediaeval Notices of China.* 2 vols. Hakluyt Society Pubs. (2nd ser.) London, 1913–15 (1st ed. 1866). Revised by H. Cordier, 4 vols. Vol. 1, (no. 38), *Introduction; Preliminary Essay on the Intercourse between China and the Western Nations previous to the Discovery of the Cape Route.* Vol. 2, (no. 33), *Odoric of Pordenone.* Vol. 3, (no. 37), *John of Monte Corvino and others.* Vol. 4, (no. 41), *Ibn Baṭṭuṭah and Benedict of Goes.* Photolitho reprint, Peiping, 1942.

ZAHN, JOHANN (1). *Oculus Artificialis Teledioptricus...* 1702.
ZENGHELIS, C. (1). 'Le Feu Grégeois et les Armes à Feu des Byzantins' (on the 'Strepta' or Byzantine Gun). *BYZ*, 1932, **7**, 265.
ZIM, H. S. (1). *Rockets and Jets.* Harcourt, New York, 1945.
ZIMMERMANN, SAMUEL (1). 'Dialogus oder Gespräch zweier Personen, nämlich einer Büchsenmeisters mit einem Feuerwerkskünstler, von der wahren Kunst und rechten Gebrauch des Büchsengeschosses und Feuerwerks.' MSS of 1574, 1575 and 1577.
ZIOLKOVSKY. *See* Tsiolkovsky.
ZWORYKIN, A. A., OSMOVA, N. I., CHERNYCHEV, W. I. & SUCHARDIN, S. V. (1). *Geschichte der Technik.* Fachbuchverlag, Leipzig, 1964. Tr. from the Russian *Istoria Techniki*, Acad. Sci. Moscow, 1962 by P. Hüter, G. Hoppe & M. Brandt under the editorship of R. Ludloff and the advisory collaboration of A. Kraus & W. Lohse. Rev. J. Payen, *DHT*, 1965 (no. 5), 319.

SUPPLEMENT TO BIBLIOGRAPHY C

ALLEY, REWI (9). 'A Visit to Hsishuangbana and the Thai Folk of Yunnan.' *EHOR*, 1966, 5 (no. 5), 6.

ALLOM, T. & WRIGHT, G. N. (1). *China, in a Series of Views, displaying the Scenery, Architecture and Social Habits of that Ancient Empire, drawn from original and authentic Sketches by T. A— Esq., with historical and descriptive Notices by Rev. G. N. W—*. Fisher, 4 vols. London & Paris, 1843.

ANON. (15). *Mittelälterliches Hausbuch*. Album of an arquebus-maker, containing various engineering drawings. MS Wolfsee Castle. Ed. A. von Essenwein, Frankfurt 1887; H. T. Bossent & W. F. Storck, Leipzig, 1912. See Sarton (1), vol. 3, p. 1553.

ANON (198). 'Early Inventions of the Chinese.' *HMM*, 1869, 39 (no. 234), 909.

BABINGTON, JOHN (1). *Pyrotechnia; or a Discourse of Artificiall Fire-works...; whereunto is annexed a Short Treatise of Geometrie*. Harper and Mab, London, 1635. Facsimile reproduction, 2 vols. Theatrum Orbis Terrarum Ltd., Amsterdam, 1971. (English Experience, nos. 295, 296.)

BELLEW, H. W. (1). *A Narrative of the Journey of the Embassy to Kashgar in 1873-4*. London, 1875.

BOSSERT, H. T. & STORCK, W. F. (1). *Das mittelälterliches Hausbuch...* (Anon. 15). Seemann, Leipzig, 1912.

BOWDEN, F. P. & YOFFE, A. D. (1). *Initiation and Growth of Explosion in Liquids and Solids*. Cambridge, 1952, repr. with new preface, 1985.

BOWDEN, F. P. & YOFFE, A. D. (2). *Fast Reactions in Solids*. Butterworth, London, 1958.

BRUNT, P. A. (1) (tr.). *Arrian; 'Anabasis Alexandri' and 'Indica'*. 2 vols. Harvard Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1983; Heinemann, London, 1983. (Loeb Classics, no. 269.)

BURKILL, I. H. (1). *A Dictionary of the Economic Products of the Malay Peninsula* (with contributions by W. Birtwhistle, F. W. Foxworthy, J. B. Scrivenor & J. G. Watson). 2 vols. Crown Agents for the Colonies, London, 1935.

BURSTALL, A. F. (1). *A History of Mechanical Engineering*. Faber & Faber, London, 1963.

CASTIGLIONI, ARTURO (1). *A History of Medicine*, tr. and ed. E. B. Krumbhaar. 2nd ed. revised and enlarged. Knopf, New York, 1947.

CHANG YÜN-MING (1). 'Ancient Chinese Sulphur Manufacturing Processes.' *Proc. XVIIth International Congress of the History of Sciences*, Berkeley, 1985. Abstracts, vol. 2, p. Tb 3a.

CHAVANNES, E. (2). 'Le Royaume de Wou et de Yue.' *TP*, 1916, 17, 129.

COUVREUR, F. S. (1) (tr.). *Tch'ouen Ts'iou* [Chhun Chhiu] et *Tso Tchouan; Texte Chinois avec Traduction Française*. 3 vols. Mission Press, Hochienfu, 1914.

VON ESSENWEIN, A. (1). *Mittelälterliches Hausbuch; Bilderhandschrift des 15 Jahrh...* (Anon. 15). Keller, Frankfurt-am-Main, 1887.

FINÓ, J. F. (1). 'Le Feu et ses Usages Militaires.' *GLAD*, 1970, 9, 15.

FLEMING, H. F. (1). *Der Volkommene Teutsche Jäger*. Leipzig, 1724.

GAIT, E. A. (1). *A History of Assam*. Govt. Printing Superintendency, Calcutta, 1906.

GRANET, M. (1). *Danses et Légendes de la Chine Ancienne*. 2 vols. Alcan, Paris, 1926.

HALL, BERT S. (2). *The Technological Illustrations of the So-called 'Anonymus of the Hussite Wars.'* Reichert, Wiesbaden, 1979. Rev. A. Keller, *TCULT*, 1984, 25, 109.

HAWKES, D. (1) (tr.). *Chhu Tzhu; the Songs of the South – an Ancient Chinese Anthology*. Oxford, 1959. rev. J. Needham, *NSN*, 18 July 1959.

HILL, DONALD R. (2) (tr.). "'The Book of Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical Devices' [*Kitāb fī Ma'rifat al-Hiyal al-Handasiya*, by Ibn al-Razzāz al-Jazarī, +1206], with a Foreword by Lynn White." Reidel, Dordrecht, 1974.

HO PING-YU & NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (2). *Theories of Categories in Early Mediaeval Chinese Alchemy* (with transl. of the *Tshan Thung Chhi Wu Hsiang Lei Pi Yao*, *c.* +6th to +8th century). *JWCI*, 1959, 22, 173.

HOFF, A. (1). *Air-guns and Other Pneumatic Arms*. London, 1972.

DE HOFFMEYER, ADA BRUHN (4). 'Military Equipment in the Byzantine Manuscript of Scylitzes in the Biblioteca Nacional of Madrid.' *GLAD*, 1966, 5, 1-160, with 51 pll.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (6). 'Early Gunpowder Testers.' *ANTC*, 1984, 55 (no. 11), 104.

HOLLISTER-SHORT, G. (7). 'The Use of Gunpowder in Mining; a Document of +1627.' *HOT*, 1983, 8, 111.

HUANG HSING-TSUNG (1). 'Peregrinations with Joseph Needham in China, 1943-4', in *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China*, ed. Li Kuottao *et al.* (1), p. 39.

HUGHES, B. P. (1). *British Smooth-bore Artillery*. London, 1969.

JIH YÜEH & CHUNG YUNG-HO (1) = (1). '"Rocket Hives" in Yen-shui [Thaiwan]; a Peculiar Tradition.' *SINRA*, 1984, 9 (no. 3), 106.

KEENE, DONALD (1). *The Japanese Discovery of Europe; Honda Tosheki and other Discoverers, +1720 to +1798*. Grove, New York, 1954.

LAWRENCE, G. H. M. (1). *Taxonomy of Vascular Plants*. Macmillan, New York, 1951.

LI KUO-HAO, CHANG MÊNG-WÊN, TSHAO THIEN-CHHIN & HU TAO-CHING (1) (ed.). *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China*; a special number of the *Collections of Essays on Chinese Literature and History* (compiled in honour of the eightieth birthday of Joseph Needham). Chinese Classics Publishing House, Shanghai, 1982.

VAN LINSCHOTEN, JAN HUYGHEN (1). *Itinerario, Voyage ofte Schipvaert van J. H. van L. naer oost ofte Portugaels Indien* (+1579 to +1592), Amsterdam, 1596, 1598; ed. H. Kern, 's Gravenhage, 1910. Repr. C. E. Warnsinck-Delprat, 5 vols., 1955. Eng. tr. by W. Phillips, *John Huighen Van Linschoten his discours of voyages into ye Easte and West Indies*, Wolfe, London, 1598. (Hakluyt Soc. Pub., 1st ser., nos. 70, 71. London, 1885. Ed. A. C. Burnell & P. A. Tiele. (Information about the Chinese coast dating from *c.* +1550 to +1588 collected at Goa *c.* +1583 to +1589).)

VON LIPPMANN, E. O. (3). *Abhandlungen und Vorträge zur Geschichte d. Naturwissenschaften*, 2 vols. Vol. 1, Veit, Leipzig, 1906. Vol. 2, Veit, Leipzig, 1913.

LO CHÊ-WÊN (1). 'The Great Wall; a New Survey.' *CREC*, 1985, **34** (no. 3), 8.

LU GWEI-DJEN (4). 'The First Half-life of Joseph Needham.' In *Explorations in the History of Science and Technology in China*, ed. Li Kuo-Hao *et al.* (1), p. 1.

LUO ZHEWEN (1). *See* LO CHÊ-WÊN.

MALLEOLUS, FELIX, *See* HEMMERLIN, FELIX.

MAYER, K. P. (1). 'On Variations in the Shapes of the Components of the Chinese *me chi*' (crossbar 'latch' [trigger mechanism]).' *TP*, 1965, **52**, 7, with correction in *TP*, 1967, **53**, 293.

MEHREN, A. F. M. (1). Tr. *Manuel de la Cosmographie du Moyen Age*, traduit de l'Arabe 'Nokhbet ed dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr, wal-bah'r de Shems ed-din abou- 'Abdallah Mohammed de Damas. Copenhagen, 1874.

MELCHETT, LORD; MANN, J. G. *et al.* (1).

Correspondence in the *Times*, 1947, on the origin and historical significance of stirrups.

24 Feb. Melchett on the role of the stirrup in the transformation of the Roman legionary into the mounted knight.

26 Feb. J. G. Mann (Master of the Armouries, Tower of London) on the couching of the lance.

14 Mar. Lord Mersey on the battle of Adrianople.

20 Mar. R. W. Moore on the date and place of the invention.

27 Mar. Publication of a photograph of the Wei dynasty statuette presented by Sir William Ridgeway to the Cambridge University Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology.

31 Mar. Sir John Marshall on the thong stirrups of the Sanchi carvings in India.

14 Apr. Leading article.

MILLER, MARTIN (1). *The Collector's Illustrated Guide to Firearms*. Barrie & Jenkins, London, 1978.

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (32). *The Development of Iron and Steel Technology in China*. Newcomen Soc. London, 1958. (Second Biennial Dickinson Memorial Lecture, Newcomen Society.) Précis in *TNS*, 1960, **30**, 141. Rev. L. C. Goodrich, *ISIS*, 1960, **51**, 108. Repr. Heffer, Cambridge, 1964. French tr. (unrevised, with some illustrations omitted and others added by the editors) *RHSID*, 1961, **2**, 187, 235; 1962, **3**, 1, 62.

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (66). *Within the Four Seas; the Dialogue of East and West* (Collected Addresses). Allen and Unwin, London, 1969.

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH (12). *Biochemistry and Morphogenesis*. Cambridge, 1942; Repr. 1950; repr. 1966, with historical survey as Foreword. Cf. Porkert (1); Needham & Lu (9).

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH & NEEDHAM, DOROTHY M. (1) (ed.). *Science Outpost*. Pilot Press, London, 1948.

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH & LU GWEI-DJEN (5). 'The Earliest Snow Crystal Observations.' *W*, 1961, **16**, 319.

NEEDHAM, JOSEPH & NEEDHAM, DOROTHY M. (1) (ed.). *Science Outpost*, Pilot Press, London, 1948.

NOWAK, T. M. (1). 'O Wplywie Walk z Turcja i Tatarami na Rozwój Polskiej Techniki Wojskowej 16–17 W. (The Influence of the Wars with the Turks and Tartars on Polish Military Technology of the 16th and 17th Centuries).' *KHNT*, 1983, **28** (no. 3–4), 589.

PAUER, E. (1). 'Japans Industrielle Lehrzeit; Die Bedeutung des Flammofeus in der wirtschaftlichen und technischen Entwicklung Japans für den Beginn der industriellen Revolution.' *BZJ*, 1983, **4** (no. 1), 1–254; (no. 2), 257–576. Eng. Summary, pp. 494–506.

PERKIN, W. H. & KIPPING, F. S. (1). *Organic Chemistry*, rev. ed. Chambers, London and Edinburgh, 1917.

PRIGOGINE, ILYA & STENGERS, I. (1). *Order out of Chaos; Man's New Dialogue with Nature*. Heinemann, London, 1984.

SCHUKKING, W. H. (1) (ed.). *The Principal Works of Simon Stevin*. Vol. 4. 'The Art of War.' Swets & Zeitlinger, Amsterdam, 1964.

SO KWAN-WAI (1). *Japanese Piracy in Ming China during the +16th Century*. Michigan State Univ. Press, East Lansing, Mich., 1975.

STARIKOV, V. S. (1). 'Larion Rossochin and the Beginning of the Study of Chinese Pyrotechnics in Russia.' [With reproduction of a text of +1756 mainly on rockets] (in Russian). Art. in *Iz Istorii Nauki i Techniki v Strana Vostoka*. Vol. 2, p. 100. Academy of Sciences, Moscow, 1961.

SWIFT, JONATHAN (2). *Gulliver's Travels* [+1726]. Encyclopaedia Britannica, Chicago, 1952.

TARN, W. W. (4). *Hellenistic Military and Naval Developments.* Cambridge, 1930.

TEMPLE, ROBERT K. G. (1). 'Discovery of a MS. eye-witness Account of the Battle of Maidstone [+ 1648].' *ACANT*, 1981, **97**, 209.

TSOU I-JEN (1). 'Historical Examples of China's Quality Control of Weapons, starting from the *Khao Kung Chi* chapter of the *Chou Li*.' MS. in English and Chinese, held by the East Asian History of Science Library, Cambridge.

TYLECOTE, R. F. (1). 'The Early History of the Iron Blast-Furnace in Europe [Scandinavia]; a Case of East–West Contact?'. Paper for the symposium 'Mediaeval Iron in Society', Norberg, 1985.

WAGNER, D. B. (1). 'The Transmission of the Blast-Furnace from China to Europe; Some Notes to complement Prof. Tylecote's Paper.' Paper for the symposium 'Mediaeval Iron in Society'. Norberg, 1985.

WERNER, E. T. C. (1). *Myths and Legends of China.* Harrap, London, 1922.

WILLIAMSON, H. R. (1). *Wang An-Shih, A Chinese Statesman and Educationialist of the Sung Dynasty.* 2 vols. Arthur Probsthain, London, 1935.

YANG WU-MIN (1). 'China's First Communications Satellite.' *CREC*, 1984, **33** (no. 7), 24.

ZAKY, ABDEL RAHMAN (4). 'Gunpowder and Arab Firearms in the Middle Ages.' *GLAD*, 1967, **6**, 45.